

JOHN DEE'S FIVE BOOKS OF MYSTERY

ORIGINAL SOURCEBOOK OF
ENOCHIAN MAGIC



JOSEPH H. PETERSON, EDITOR

FROM THE COLLECTED WORKS
KNOWN AS MYSTERIORUM LIBRI QUINQUE

John Dee's Five Books of Mystery

Original Sourcebook
of Enochian Magic

From the collected works known as
MYSTERIORUM LIBRI QUINQUE

Joseph H. Peterson, Editor



WEISER BOOKS

Boston, MA/York Beach, ME

First published in 2003 by
Red Wheel/Weiser, LLC
York Beach, ME
With offices at:
368 Congress Street
Boston, MA 02210
www.redwheelweiser.com

Copyright © 2003 Joseph H. Peterson

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from Red Wheel/Weiser, LLC. Reviewers may quote brief passages. Previously published as *The Five Books of Mystical Exercises of John Dee* as part of the Magnum Opus Hermetic Sourceworks series in a handbound edition by Adam McLean, 1985.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Dee, John, 1527–1608

John Dee's five books of mystery : original sourcebook of Enochian magic : from the collected works known as *Mysteriorum libri quinque* / Joseph H. Peterson, editor.

p. cm.

Originally published: The five books of mystical experience. [S.I.] : A. Megan, 1985, in the series: Magnum Opus Hermetic Sourceworks. Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 1-57863-178-5 (alk. paper)

1. Enochian magic. I. Title: Five books of mystery. II. Peterson, Joseph H. III. Title.

BF1623.E55 D45 2003

133—dc21

2002151947

The image of Dee's wax *Sigillum Dei Aemeth* Copyright © The British Museum used with permission.

Typeset in Sabon

Printed in the United States of America
VG

10 09 08 07 06 05

8 7 6 5 4 3 2

The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of the American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials Z39.48-1992 (R1997).

Dedication

For my wife, Candy. You have supported me in so many ways, especially by helping me sort out and keep track of all the piles of obscure dead guy stuff. Without your help, so many things would have been impossible.

For Kerry, Sarah, Lisa, and Karl. You are the best kids a parent could ever hope for. Thanks for all the times you shared your precious computer time.

For my close friend, Paul Deneka, who introduced me to John Dee's writings and continues to share my enthusiasm for obscure dead guys.

For the Board of Trustees of the British Museum who granted me special permission to study manuscripts while I was under their age requirements, helped me during the many years that have passed since then, and gave me permission to publish this unique material from their collections.

For my friend, Roger Williamson, at Magus Books for his encouragement and support over the years.

For Jill Rogers at Red Wheel/Weiser, who has been great to work with. Thanks for helping to make this a better book.

Finally, for Betty Lundsted, who is sincerely missed.

Contents

Preface to the Revised Edition	xiii
Abbreviations	xv
Introduction	1
Preface by Elias Ashmole	47
 LIBER I — The manner of working	 51
Latin Oration	53
John Dee his note	56
Preliminary invocation	58
Prologue (Actio Saulina) 22 Dec 1581. Annael foretells the coming Actions.	61
1. First Action. 10 March 1582. Edward Talbot (Edward Kelley) arrives and invokes Anchor. Uriel appears. Dee inquires about the <i>Book of Soyga</i> . A false revelation of the gold sigil.	66
2. Second Action. 10 Mar. later. Dee inquires again about <i>Soyga</i> . Uriel refers him to Michael. Sigillum Dei described. The holy table shown. Lundrumguffa, a wicked spirit, to be discharged.	69
3. Third Action. 11 Mar. Uriel and Michael expel Lundrumguffa.	73
4. Fourth Action. 14 Mar. Uriel and Michael appear. A host with letters. The Angel of a man's profession resembling John Dee. The ring of Solomon revealed. Advice regarding the sigil ÆMETH.	76
5. Fifth Action. 15 Mar. Salamian, Raphael, Fortitudo Dei, and	

Uriel appear. Mammon and his servants expelled. Magical instructions given.	81
LIBER II — The Mysteries most marvelous of Sigillum DEI, otherwise called Sigillum ÆMETH,	87
6. Sixth Action. 19 Mar 1582. Michael, Uriel, and Semiel appear. The form of the Sigil described. Forty angels appear and reveal 40 letters for the sigil's border.	89
7. Seventh Action. Later, same day. Michael corrects several errors. The interpretation of the 40 letters given.	107
8. Eighth Action. Later, same day. Michael appears. More instruction concerning the 40 letters. <i>Adam's Treatise from Paradise</i> to be revealed.	110
9. Ninth Action. 20 Mar. Uriel appears and defers the action until later.	113
10. Tenth Action. 20 Mar., later. Michael and Uriel appear. Seven names extracted from the 40 letters. These are corrected. Symbols for the 7 angles of the sigil are revealed. A table of 49 letters is revealed, from which are extracted the names of 7 angels. E. Talbot to fetch Lord Mowntegle's books.	114
11. Eleventh Action. 21 Mar. Michael and Uriel appear. Phanael, an angelic trumpeter. Seven companies of pillars. A table of 49 letters is revealed, from which four series of seven names are extracted.	125
The Form of the Sigillum DEI ÆMETH	148
LIBER III — Of the 7 Ensigns of Creation	149
12. Twelfth Action. 28 Apr., 1582. Michael appears. The first of seven talismans revealed.	151
13. Thirteenth Action. 28 Apr., later. Michael appears. The other six talismans revealed.	155
14. Fourteenth Action. 29 Apr. Michael and Uriel appear. The seven tables of the mystical heptarchy are revealed. Offices of the angels described. The seven tables. A list of the 49 angels extracted from the tables. A circular diagram of the 49 names.	165
15. Fifteenth Action. 4 May. Michael and Uriel appear. A parable of two birds is seen as a vision. Magical instruction.	174

LIBER IV — The offices of the angels of the Mystical Heptarchy: “Post reconciliationem Kellianam”	181
16. Sixteenth Action. 15 Nov., 1582. Seven angels appear. Carmara appears. His office. Balanced and unbalanced kings. True and impure noblemen. Scholars of light and scholars of confusion. Hagonel appears. His instruction.	183
17. Seventeenth Action. 16 Nov. An angel with a triple crown appears with seven angels. Bornogo and Befafes.	193
18. Eighteenth Action. 16 Nov., later. Offices of angels Butmono, Bralgés, Blisdon. The 7 characters of the kings.	196
19. Nineteenth Action. 17 Nov. Carmara appears. A company of 42 angels reveal a table of 42 letters.	202
20. Twentieth Action. 17 Nov., later. Carmara appears. Magical instruction.	209
21. Twenty-first Action. 19 Nov. Carmara, Bobogel, and Babalel appear. A company of 42 angels reveal 42 letters. Magical instruction.	221
22. Twenty-second Action. 20 Nov. Carmara, Babalel, and Befafes appear. Their offices revealed. 42 angels and 42 letters.	233
23. Twenty-third Action. 20 Nov., later. Carmara, Bnapsen, and Brorges appear. Magical instruction from Michael, Uriel, and Raphael.	238
24. Twenty-fourth Action. 21 Nov. Carmara appears. He reveals himself as Baligon. Magical instruction. Explanations of the letters of the tables. The shewstone miraculously appears.	245
LIBER V — Of the Holy Book	255
25. Twenty-fifth Action. 23 Mar., 1583. Edward Kelley and John Husey return with the Book, the scroll, and the powder. Medicina Dei invoked for instruction.	257
26. Twenty-sixth Action. 24 Mar. Me. appears and shows the Holy Book.	261
27. Twenty-seventh Action. 26 Mar. Me. appears and shows the Holy Book again. A sermon. The Adamical alphabet is revealed.	265
28. Twenty-eighth Action. 26 Mar., later. A vision of a great battle. Me. appears. Instruction regarding the mission of Adrian Gilbert.	271

29. Twenty-ninth Action. 28 Mar. Gargat, a wicked spirit, intrudes while Dee is away. Dee returns and asks the angels for help. Gargat confronted. A counterfeit scroll. Gargat punished. More advice for Adrian Gilbert. Advice for John Davis refused. 275
30. Thirtieth Action. 28 Mar., later. Dee complains that the Queen will not reform the calendar. Me. appears. Advice for Adrian Gilbert. Magical instruction. 282
31. Thirty-first Action. 29 Mar. (Good Friday). Me. appears. A fire enters EK's head. The first line of the Holy Book revealed. 286
32. Thirty-second Action. 31 Mar. (Easter). Me. appears. The second line revealed. Dee requests an abridgement of the transmittal process. Dee rebuked. Me. not to come again until the book is finished. Prophecies of doom. 292
33. Thirty-third Action. 2 Apr. Lines 3–8 revealed. 299
34. Thirty-fourth Action. 3 Apr. Lines 9–20. 303
35. Thirty-fifth Action. 3 Apr., later. Lines 21–26. Further instruction on the transmission of the Holy Book. 309
36. Thirty-sixth Action. 4 Apr. Lines 27–35. 314
37. Thirty-seventh Action. 5 Apr. Charles Sled and EK rebuked for quarreling. A vision: A headless people to be restored. Lines 36–42. 318
38. Thirty-eighth Action. 6 Apr. Lines 43–48. The Holy Book titled *Amzes naghezes Hardeh*. 322
39. Thirty-ninth Action. 6 Apr. Uriel appears to answer questions. Great misery predicted. Book to be completed in 40 days. The Book is referred to as “a Book of Secrets and Key of this World.” EK begins to write the book down directly. Advice regarding Mistress Haward. The last line of leaf 1. The beginning of leaf 2. 325
- A note of 5 doubts concerning the Holy Book. 333
40. Fortieth Action. 10 Apr. The Macedonian and Mr. Sanford's letters. The ten seals showing the location of treasures. 344
- 11 Apr. John Dee deciphers the manuscript. 346
41. Forty-first Action. 15 Apr. An earth spirit bites EK. 348
42. Forty-second Action. 18 Apr. A sentence of 21 letters. 349
43. Forty-third Action. 18 Apr., later. Il introduced. Instruction and a sermon. Inquiry concerning *Soyga*. The language infused

into Adam in paradise. Dee asks about the lost *Book of Enoch* mentioned in *Jude*, and also about the lost writings of Esdras. Il sings a song. Instructions for obtaining the treasures. EK upset about the diaries hidden in Dee's chimney. 350

QUINTI LIBRI MYSTERIORUM APPENDIX 361

44. Forty-fourth Action. 20 Apr. 1583. Il gives advice and reconciles Dee and Kelly. 363

45. Forty-fifth Action. 23 Apr. Dee and Kelley pray that the angels' silence be ended. Uriel invoked. A strong rebuke for their impatience. 368

26 Apr. EK pacified by Dee and Adrian Gilbert. 372

46. Forty-sixth Action. 28 Apr. Il appears. A lesson on the transposition of letters. The Adamical alphabet. Instructions regarding the painting of the furniture. The Holy Table revealed. 373

47. Forty-seventh Action. 28 Apr., later. Il appears and gives magical instruction. 377

48. Forty-eighth Action. 29 Apr. Il appears. The *Book of Soyga* or *Aldaraia* discussed. Magical instruction. The gold lamine, an instrument of dignification. 379

29 Apr., later. An evil spirit attempts to pass off a counterfeit character. 386

49. Forty-ninth Action. 29 Apr., later. Help sought to banish the evil spirit. A sermon. 389

50. Fiftieth Action. 5 May. Uriel appears to answer questions. Magical instruction. 393

51. Fifty-first Action. 5 May, later. Uriel appears. Magical instruction. The treasure discussed. The book, the scroll, and powder. Advice regarding Al Lasky. Visions of the beheading of Mary Queen of Scots and the Spanish Armada. 402

The completion of the tables by EK. The correct form of the holy alphabet given. 405

52. Fifty-second Action. 8 May. Visions. A spirit appears and denounces the actions. Uriel banishes him. Money sought from the angels. Uriel issues a strong rebuke. Apparition of a disembodied tongue. 406

53. Fifty-third Action. 9 May. Mercy sought for their impatience. Uriel responds. Magical instruction. EK buys a horse to travel to gather the earths of the treasures.	410
54. Fifty-fourth Action. 23 May. EK returns with the eleven earths. Proceeds received from the Royal Mines. Michael, Uriel, and Raphael appear. Instructions. Advice regarding Al Lasky.	412
APPENDIX 1. Description of Sigillum Dei Aemeth from <i>Liber Juratus</i> .	421
APPENDIX 2. Athanasius Kircher's description of Aemeth, from <i>Oedipus Aegyptiacus</i> .	433
APPENDIX 3. Conjuring spirits into a stone, from <i>Theurgia Goetia</i> .	437
APPENDIX 4. <i>Art Pauline</i> .	441
APPENDIX 5. <i>Art Almadel</i> .	445
APPENDIX 6. Manner of proceeding in order to discover in the crystal.	453
Bibliography	459
Index	463

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

Dr. John Dee (1527 to 1608 or 1609) has been the subject of much interest in several fields. Several good book-length studies of him have appeared,¹ as well as numerous articles.² My intent in presenting this text is not to recap Dee's life or present a new perspective, but to fill in an important gap that has been generally neglected. The manuscript presented adds considerable detail for the years 1581–1583, by most accounts the climax of his career. It sheds light on Dee's politics, science, and occultism.

For the first edition of this text, I had the simple goal of eliminating two major barriers to the study of John Dee and Edward Kelley. These barriers are availability and legibility of the material. With this new edition, I hope to address two other problems as well. First, the English of Dee's day was somewhat different from that spoken today, so I have added many footnotes to clarify obscurities in the language. I have also translated the frequent Latin passages. Second, the subject matter of the

¹ I. R. F. Calder, "John Dee Studied as an English Neoplatonist," 2 vols. Ph. D. diss. (The Warberg Institute, London University, 1952); Peter J. French, *John Dee: The World of an Elizabethan Magus* (London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1972); Nicholas H. Clulee, *John Dee's Natural Philosophy—between science and religion*. (London and New York: Routledge, 1988); William H. Sherman, *John Dee, the Politics of Reading and Writing in the English Renaissance* (Amherst: University of Massachusetts Press, 1995).

² See list in Peter French, *John Dee: The World of an Elizabethan Magus*, pp. 216–29.

text, medieval and Renaissance magic, assumes a view of the universe not commonly held today. To further clarify the text in this context, I have expanded the introduction and index and explained otherwise obscure references in the footnotes. I have also added supplementary material from Dee's diary and other manuscripts.

J. Peterson, 1999

ABBREVIATIONS

- Calder I. R. F. Calder, *John Dee studied as an English neoplatonist*, Ph. D. thesis, 2 vols. (London, University of London, 1952.)
- CHM John Dee, *Compendium Heptarchiæ Mysticæ*, British Library, additional manuscript 36674, fol. 167r ff.
- GRM John Dee, *General and rare memorials pertayning to the perfect art of navigation* (London, 1577).
- HM John Dee, *De Heptarchia Mystica*, British Library, Sloane manuscript 3191.
- MLQ *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque*, British Library, Sloane manuscript 3188.
- Monas *Monas Hieroglyphica*; tr. C. H. Josten, in the journal *AMBIX*, XII (1964), 84–221.
- R&W R. J. Roberts and A. G. Watson, *John Dee's Library Catalogue* (London: The Bibliographical Society, 1990).
- TFR *A True & Faithful Relation of what passed for many Yeers Between Dr. John Dee . . . and Some Spirits*, ed. Meric Casaubon (London, 1659).

INTRODUCTION

These secret writings of John Dee, one of the leading scientists and occultists in Elizabethan England, record in minute detail his researches into the occult. They were discovered in a hidden compartment of an old chest along with various magical implements. Although the angels made him swear never to reveal these doctrines to anyone not sanctioned by them, he complained, “If no man, by no means, shall perceive anything hereof by me, I would think that I should not do well.” Nevertheless, these pages were carefully concealed, and nearly lost forever. Although this present work is concerned primarily with his occult experiments, through it, we catch many glimpses of Elizabethan life and politics.

Dr. Dee represents the true Renaissance man—a master of many areas of learning. He was born in 1527 and lived at the height of the English Renaissance. Dee’s knowledge included astronomy, mathematics, navigation, medicine, geography, history, music, painting, astrology, and the occult sciences.

In many ways, Dee lived at the center of conflicting forces and ideas—tradition vs. reformation, science vs. magic, Christianity vs. paganism (that is, Judaism, Hermeticism, and even studies of Arabic traditions). By studying Dee, we can gain insight into all these subjects

and into the Renaissance as a whole. We can even throw light on our own struggle to reconcile our own conflicts.¹

Dee had many famous and powerful friends and was heavily involved in politics. He became scientific advisor and astrologer to Queen Elizabeth, who occasionally visited him at his home at Mortlake. He was instrumental in planning the expansion of the British Empire, exploring the New World, and, with the help of angelic agents, ushering in the new age as well. One of the main objectives of his life's work was to bring about religious and social reform. It has been suggested² that in this endeavor he was, to some extent, successful.

Dee began his “mystical experiments” with a solid foundation in medieval and Renaissance science, magic, Kabbalah, and the Hermetic arts. Further mysteries were revealed by the “angels” who manifested themselves, ultimately resulting in a new, unified occult system.³ This occult system is perhaps closer to a face-lift than a new system. Most of it would have been familiar to occultists of the day, but with a veneer of new names and symbols.

Aside from the mechanical details of Dee's system for communicating with angels, these records reveal that the angels were interested in and involved with the exploration and colonization of the New World, and in heralding in a new age or new world order. The one aspect of these writings that has fascinated most, however, is that the angels

¹ Many of these apparent conflicts are still with us today. Charles Tart, *Body Mind Spirit* (Charlottesville: Hampton Roads, 1997), observes that Scientism, a belief that scoffs at anything that doesn't fit our supposedly scientific beliefs, has become “the world's most powerful (and negative) religion.” It is interesting to note that most modern religious studies carefully avoid Scientism.

² Frances A. Yates, *The Rosicrucian Enlightenment* (Boulder: Shambhala, 1978), p. xii.

³ Some have argued there are actually two systems: the Heptarchic system (represented by this manuscript and Dee's *Heptarchia Mystica*), and the Enochian system, represented by later records, especially TFR.

delivered a complete book in an otherwise unknown language. They claimed this book, named *Loagaeth*, to be of utmost importance. Its language is the true language of creation so sought after by Kabbalists and by Dee himself.⁴ This “angelic book” was later used to extract a long series of messages (or “calls”) in yet another unknown language, called Enochian.

Interest in John Dee and his occult activities has increased tremendously in recent years. One reason for this is the growing debate over the importance of Dee’s role in history by such eminent scholars as Francis Yates,⁵ Wayne Shumaker, and, more recently, William Sherman. Another reason for Dee’s popularity is undoubtedly the fact that his system was used and adapted by the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn, and, subsequently, by Aleister Crowley. If one examines the Golden Dawn material, its appeal soon becomes clear: It draws together various occult methods into a highly coherent system. In adapting Dee’s system, various additions, omissions, and mistakes were made. This departure was compounded by uncritical, although imaginative, treatments of the Golden Dawn and Crowley material by some authors. The net result is a maze of misinformation.⁶ The material presented here provides us with the keys necessary for understanding Dee’s original system as a whole. Since its previous

⁴ See C. H. Josten’s translation of Dee’s *Monas Hieroglyphica* (AMBIX, XII, 1964, 84–221), and Nicholas Clulee’s analysis in *John Dee’s Natural Philosophy* (London: Routledge, 1988), p. 77 ff.

⁵ Although there has been some criticism of Dr. Yates’ work in recent years, I have found the views of Roberts and Watson to be the most balanced: “The influence of the later work of Yates herself will be widely apparent for although that often seems hasty and over-enthusiastic, our own research has frequently confirmed rather than contradicted hers. . . .” Julian Roberts and Andrew Watson, *John Dee’s Library Catalogue* (London: The Bibliographical Society, 1990), p. 26.

⁶ R. Turner writes, “Mistakes abound in both the Crowley and Regardie printed Enochian texts. I counted 91 in the first Call alone when comparing these with Dee’s original manuscript (see Sloane 3191, British Museum).” Cited by Colin Wilson, “Introduction to the Necronomicon,” *Gnostica*, 48, Nov. 1978, p. 62.

editions were very limited in availability,⁷ it has largely been ignored, in spite of its importance.

Dee studies have created two radically different pictures of Dee—one as Magus, and the other as scientist-politician. I hope this volume will help bridge the gap. This polarization is partly caused by the lack of availability of Dee's writings. Those interested only in the occult have largely ignored Dee's published output, and those who focus on his published output will find very little evidence of occult influences. Placing the focus on Dee's public writings, however, can give the modern reader the mistaken impression that occultism was not central to his thinking. This is simply because, in Dee's day, the occult was a dangerous pastime, placing you at risk, not just from hostile spirits, but from the frightened public. We would do well to keep in mind the fate of the less cautious magus Giordano Bruno, who was burned alive at the stake by the Inquisition only a few years after Dee recorded these accounts. Dee's childhood idols, Roger Bacon, Trithemius, Agrippa, Paracelsus, and others, all had suffered greatly because of their reputations as magi. Dee himself was imprisoned early in life, an experience he was careful to avoid thereafter. His thoughts and motivations, however, centered around his "mystical experiments." In addition, there is an "anti-manuscript" bias to overcome. Although many of Dee's books were widely circulated, they were not intended for publication, but rather were "directed inward, to an extremely restricted circle" for private political aims.⁸

Another goal in presenting this text is to help elucidate the tradition in which Dee's occult endeavors took place. Although it has repeatedly been observed that Henry Cornelius Agrippa was a major

⁷ The first edition was limited to 500 copies. Another version was produced by Christopher Whitby as his doctoral thesis. This had a small reprinting as *John Dee's Actions with Spirits*, 2 vols. (New York: Garland, 1991).

⁸ William Sherman, *John Dee*, p. 149.

influence on Dee, most have concluded that Dee's system is highly nontraditional. This view is distorted by the fact that most attention has centered around an isolated set of records that describe a system that, on the surface at least, appears to be highly original.⁹ I hope to show that Dee and his spirit medium, Edward Kelley, were following traditional methods, especially during their earlier efforts, and that his later methods are adaptations of traditional ones, used within a traditional framework.

Dee's writings also are of interest in that they are a record of the most educated English of Shakespeare's age. To some extent, Dee is even said to have influenced the English language.¹⁰

Dee's Early Period

John Dee was born in London on July 13, 1527. His father, Rowland Dee, was an official at the court of Henry VIII. John was born shortly after Luther's break with Rome, and immediately after England's, during a period of radical reform. The resurgence of classical Greek studies combined with new interest in Hebrew studies to create Renaissance Neoplatonism. Renaissance philosophers sought to integrate Greek and Hebrew traditions in an attempt to unify the rapidly disintegrating religious factions and end the constant political strife. They were thus the forerunners or prophets of the Rosicrucian and Illuminati movements.

By the age of 23, Dee had already established a brilliant reputation, lecturing in Paris on Euclid. At age 31 (1558), he published his first

⁹ These records were published in 1659 by Meric Casaubon as *A True & Faithful Relation . . . Between Dr. John Dee . . . and Some Spirits* (TFR). Casaubon's main intent in publishing this material was to discredit Dee's reputation.

¹⁰ For example, he is credited with coining the word "unit," which he used to translate the Greek "monas." He also coined the word "Britannia."

major work, *Aphoristic Introduction* (Propædeumata Aphoristica), and at age 37 (1564), his *Monas Hieroglyphica*. The *Monas* is a highly esoteric work. In it, he claims to be in possession of the most secret mysteries. He wrote it in twelve days, while apparently in a peak (mystical) state: “[I am] the pen merely of [God] Whose Spirit, quickly writing these things through me, I wish and I hope to be.”¹¹ He claimed the work would revolutionize astronomy, alchemy, mathematics, linguistics, mechanics, music, optics, magic, and adeptship.¹²

Like the *Monas Hieroglyphica*, the angel magic in the *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque* seeks a higher wisdom than science, religion, or Jewish Kabbalah—one that will unite them all, convince atheists, convert Jews as well as pagans, and heal Christendom.

John Dee, the Politician

The Renaissance saw a giant leap in the evolution of the Information Age. Printed works, a recent innovation, were becoming more and more available, and manuscript collections were threatened with neglect. Dee was fascinated with books and spent vast amounts of energy and money collecting them. Eventually Dee’s library became “Elizabethan England’s greatest library,”¹³ attracting scholars and dignitaries alike. It is possible that Dee’s inspiration and model for his library came from Johannes Trithemius, one of the greatest scholars and occultists of the sixteenth century. While abbot of the monastery of Sponheim in Germany, Trithemius built a library of unparalleled importance, and turned one of the poorest monasteries in the

¹¹ *Monas*, Theorem 23.

¹² *Monas*, dedication to King Maximilian, passim, pp. 115 ff.

¹³ Peter J. French, *John Dee, The World of an Elizabethan Magus*, 1972, pp. 40 ff.

Palatinate into an “obligatory” place of pilgrimage for scholars.¹⁴ As William Sherman has noted, “Renaissance libraries were powerful sites of intellectual creativity, social status, and political influence.” As such, their owners “were at once empowered and endangered by their collections and skills.”¹⁵ This must have been a source of great anxiety to Dee.

Dee’s library was a bustle of activity, especially in 1583, with frequent planning sessions for nautical expeditions, visitors borrowing and lending books, dignitaries, including the queen, and others, such as Francis Bacon, who sought Dee’s advice and help.¹⁶

Plans for the New World and the New Age

Perhaps Dee’s greatest legacy is his seminal role in building Britain into a major maritime power.¹⁷ He is usually credited with coining the phrase “British Empire.” Dee played a prominent role in plans to colonize the New World (involving Lord Burghley, John Davis, Adrian Gilbert, and Sir Walter Raleigh), and consulted the angels quite often about the venture. His interest was not merely patriotic.¹⁸ He had a far-sighted plan for the new (or rather restored) British Empire to compete

¹⁴ Hans Ankwitz-Kleehoven observes, “Just as no distinguished foreigner at the beginning of the nineteenth century omitted to pay his respects to Goethe in Weimar, so it was good form in the Germany of circa 1500 to have called on Trithemius at Sponheim.” Cited in Ioan P. Couliano, *Eros and Magic in the Renaissance* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987), p. 166.

¹⁵ William Sherman, *John Dee*, p. 51.

¹⁶ William Sherman has given us an excellent sense of it in his book; see especially p. 40.

¹⁷ “Dee could hardly have held a more prominent place in . . . the genesis of the British Empire.” See William Sherman, *John Dee*, pp. 148 ff and passim.

¹⁸ A large element of Dee’s patriotism was his fascination with the Arthurian legends. He was largely responsible for reviving interest in them. Dee believed himself to be of royal descent.

with (or replace) the Hispano-Papal empire. Part of his justification was the same as Rome's—to "carry the name of Jesus among the infidells to the great glory of God."¹⁹ The magnitude of his vision is reflected in the vast extent of the empire that Britain went on to establish.

Dee associated the new empire and the New World with the new age. He was fascinated by the apocalyptic prophecies of his day, and tried his own hand at them based on his knowledge of astrology. He believed the new age would begin in a few years, perhaps in 1583 or 1584. He based this on astronomical models of world history published by Trithemius (*De Septem Secundeis*) and Cyprian Leowitz (*De coniunctionibus magnis*).²⁰ The fact that Dee dated two of his works²¹ using his calculation of the "world year" allows us to calculate where he thought the world was in the cycle. These works place the start of the cycles at 3763 B.C.²² Nevertheless, Dee felt the end of the world was immanent, largely based on astronomical observations.²³ The coming great conjunction was foreshadowed by the appearance of a supernova in 1572, a comet in 1577, and a solar eclipse in 1582.

¹⁹ British Library, Sloane manuscript 3188, fol. 65a. See also John Dee, *General and Rare Memorials pertayning to the Perfect Arte of NAVIGATION* (GRM) (London: John Daye, 1577).

²⁰ Johannes Trithemius in *De Septem Secundeis* (translation in William Lilly, *Worlds Catastrophe*, London, 1647), wrote that world history was governed by the rules of seven angels, each ruling 354 years and 4 months. The angels told Dee that "the 7 Governours have almost ended their Government" (TFR, p. 4). Dee's copy of Cyprian Leowitz, *De Coniunctionibus Magnis Insignioribus Superiorum Planetarum* (Leuening, 1564), has "underlinings and a few notes" (item 631, R&W).

²¹ GRM (1577) is dated 5540, and *A Playne Discourse . . . concerning the needful reformation of ye vulgar kallender* (Oxford: Bodleian Library, Ashmole MS 1789, article 3, 1582) is dated 5545.

²² The title page for Dee's *General and Rare Memorials* shows a timeline of history of something over 6,000 years. If 6,000 years is significant to him as it was to others, his calculations would put the end at A.D. 2037.

²³ See also I. R. F. Calder, "John Dee Studied as an English Neoplatonist," chapter 9, section 3.

In his scrying experiments,²⁴ the angels tell Dee and Kelley that “the tyme of God’s visitation” was “8.” Dee’s speculation that this might mean 1588 seemed to be confirmed in later scrying sessions.²⁵

Dee found political authority for the British Empire in the accounts of King Arthur and Owen Madoc, a legendary Welsh prince said to have discovered America in 1170.²⁶ To compete with the spiritual authority of Rome, however, Dee sought divine authority from the angels and God himself. The angels told him what he wanted to hear—that “the World begynnes with thy doings.”²⁷ Thus his scrying, publications, and political activities were all part of his grand scheme to unify the peoples, religions, and languages of the world through universal knowledge. An element of this plan was to convert the pagans of the New World, and the Jews.²⁸

The angels revealed details of the New World and new age on several occasions. For example: “What I speak hath not byn reuealed, no not in these last tymes, of the second last world. But I begynne new worldes, new people, new kings, & new knowledge of a new Gouernment.” “New worlds, shall spring of these. New manners: strange men:” “The old ways cease, the new begin.”²⁹

After the appearance of the Polish prince, Albrecht (or Albertus) Laski, Dee shifted his hope for a royal patron to Europe. In the end, Dee failed to convince any of his would-be royal patrons of the cosmic

²⁴ *Mysterium Libri Quinque* (MLQ), 16 November 1582.

²⁵ TFR, p. 43.

²⁶ I. R. F. Calder, “John Dee Studied as an English Neoplatonist,” chapter 8, section 8. See also William Sherman, *John Dee*, pp. 187, 188.

²⁷ The Archangel Uriel, 11 March 1582.

²⁸ See *Monas*, p. 133, “the Hebrew cabbalist . . . will own that, without regard to person, the same benevolent God is not only [the God] of the Jews, but of all peoples, nations, and languages.”

²⁹ Bynepor, 20 November 1582; Medicina Dei, 24 March 1583; Michael, 23 May 1583.

plan. He was also thwarted by the papal nuncio (ambassador) who managed to have him and Kelley expelled by Rudolf. Dee was wise enough to decline an “invitation” to Rome.³⁰

Renaissance Magic

By the Renaissance, magic had developed a complex theoretical and philosophical foundation. There was also a considerable amount of practical literature in circulation. Dee’s public and secret writings show the remarkable depth and breadth of his studies of magical literature. The classical philosophers, especially Plato and Aristotle, were the foundation on which the so-called Neoplatonic philosophers built. Plotinus, Porphyry, Proclus, Iamblicus, and the Christian Pseudo-Dionysius were all familiar to Dee, as were the Italian Neoplatonic revivalists Ficino, Pico, and others.

The practical literature largely relies on knowing the secret names of God (mostly from the Hebrew Old Testament)³¹ and of the angels or spirits themselves. The more cautious methods involve praying to God directly to send his angels.³² The less cautious methods involve appealing to the spirits directly. The use of consecrated tools in ceremonial magic reflects their use in religious ceremonies. Most of the literature also deals with the use of talismans or symbols of some kind, and often with squares of letters or numbers.³³

³⁰ A similar “invitation” led Giordano Bruno to his death at the stake in 1600.

³¹ For example, “AGLA” and “ARARITA” are acronyms derived from verses of scripture. See Cornelius Agrippa, *De occulta philosophia Libri Tres* (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1992), book 3, chapter xi, p. 428.

³² For example, Arbatel, *De Magia Veterum* (Basel, 1575), p. 21, Aphor. 14: “da mihi unum de spiritibus tuis, qui me doceat ea, quae vis nos discere & cognoscere, ad laudem & honorem tuum & utilitatem proximi.” (“Grant me therefore one of thy spirits, who may teach me those things which thou wouldest have me to know and learn, to thy praise and glory, and the profit of our neighbour.”)

³³ For example, Cornelius Agrippa, *De occulta philosophia*, book 2, chap. 22, pp. 314–18.

The object of these practices, often called “experiments,” is sometimes as sublime as the vision of God, but frequently as base as the recovery of stolen goods or the discovery of treasure. The mention of treasure during a scrying session with Barnabas Saul (22 December 1581) probably reflects the grimoire he is using more than a specific inquiry by Dee.

John Dee, The Magus

Dee’s reputation as a magus, or rather a conjurer, started fairly early in his life and has continued to this day.³⁴ While he was highly respected as a man of great learning within the scholarly community and court circles, the less educated came to fear him. He was even briefly imprisoned in 1555 on charges that he tried to enchant Queen Mary. He is said to have been the model for Prospero in Shakespeare’s play *The Tempest*.

In his explanatory note to the present work, Dee writes that his interest shifted more toward the occult after becoming convinced of the hopelessness of human endeavors as paths to wisdom. Sloane 3188 records his earliest occult experiments centered around scrying. These early methods were remarkably consistent with the occultism prevalent at the time, and Dee seems to be as widely read here as he was in science. He mentions the famous occultists Cornelius Agrippa and Johann Reuchlin. The widely known *Heptameron* of Peter de Abano and Arbatel’s *Of Magic* are also mentioned, even though he did not include them in his *externa bibliotheca*.

Dee’s interest in angelology is indicated by his heavy annotations of such works as Pseudo-Dionysius’ *Coelestis hierarchia*, Richard of St. Victor’s *De superdivina trinitate* (1510), Scalinger’s *Exotericarum*

³⁴ There have been a number of recent books and movies with the theme of Dee’s magic.

exercitationum liber decimus (1557), Pompilius Azalus' *De omnium rebus naturalibus* (1554), and J. Rivius' *Opera theologica* (1562).³⁵

Although Dee was careful not to catalog his more dangerous volumes, other sources can be identified or deduced. One of these is *Liber Juratus*, or the *Sworne Book of Honorius*. Sloane 313 (late fourteenth or early fifteenth century) is known to have been in his collection and contains marginal notes in his handwriting.³⁶ *Liber Juratus* contains detailed instructions for communicating with spirits, as well as obtaining the sight of God through the use of an elaborate sigil, named the *Sigillum Dei Aemeth*. Dee is directed by the angels to use this sigil "which is allready perfected in a boke of thyne." Dee is also promised the sight of God ("videbis Deum").³⁷ Another source that Dee mentions is the magical text *Aldaraia sive Soyga* (discussed below), which has squares of magical letters and heavy astrological elements.

In addition to these, I believe that two other magical texts can be identified as having been used by Dee. The first is Sloane 3849 article 1, "Manner of proceeding in order to discover in the crystall," in which the three angels Anchor, Anachor, and Anilos are central. This, or a similar text, seems to be behind Dee's first scrying session with Kelley, in which they try to call forth these three spirits.

Another magical text I believe may have been used is Sloane 3854. The first part includes article 4 ("Book of Consecrations")³⁸ and article 5 ("Experimenta de Speculo"). In the blank space between these two articles

³⁵ R&W, p. 29.

³⁶ R&W, p. 168. They catalog it as DM 70 and note, "On fol.9 (originally the first leaf, fol.1–8 having been misbound) is [Dee's ladder symbol] and, very faint, 'Fragmentum Magicum,' which may be in Dee's hand. At the foot is 'Sum Ben: Jonsonij liber.'"

³⁷ Sloane 3188 fol. 48r.

³⁸ A version of this text with discussion is included in Richard Kieckhefer's *Forbidden Rites: A Necromancer's Manual of the Fifteenth Century* (University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1997), pp. 8–10, p. 256 ff.

(folio 75r) a second hand, which I believe can be identified as Edward Kelley's, has written some notes. This manuscript is also bound with the most complete and correct manuscript of *Liber Juratus* that I have seen.

There are many examples of medieval and Renaissance magic texts with similar methods. I include some examples in the appendices.

Dee's system started with some Hebrew-centered Kabbalah like that he found in the writings of Reuchlin. Kabbalistic concepts abound, including his use of Hebrew etymology, traditional Hebrew names of God and angels, and extracting names from tables of letters à la Abulafia. Dee had a large Hebrew collection in his library, and took many of the volumes with him to the continent in 1583, showing sustained interest.

Nevertheless, in the end his *Sigillum Dei Aemeth* replaced the traditional Hebrew names with new names, and his angelic book was not in Hebrew, but a new (or unknown old) language. This may reflect Dee's (or Kelley's) mistrust of Jews,³⁹ or perhaps it may have been a way to compensate for Kelley's lack of knowledge of Hebrew and traditional Kabbalah. In any event, it is interesting to note that what Dee found in these actions is exactly what he expected to discover. Instead of the confusing maze of corruptions and variants found in the grimoires, he found an uncorrupted way of communicating with angels based on their own language, and on mathematics.

The first angels to make their appearance at the scrying sessions all belong to the Judeo-Christian tradition. They are later supplemented with otherwise unknown names, derived mathematically from letter squares. Dee is careful to catalog their jurisdictions, apparel, and symbols for future use. The revealed method of invoking their help is described in detail in the action of 17 November 1582.

³⁹ Judaism was outlawed in England and much of Europe at the time. Note Dee's comment "we can hardly trust anything in the Jews hands . . . they are a stiff-necked people and dispersed all the world over."

In addition to the seals of the spirits, the ritual apparatus included several other items: various scrying stones, sometimes set in a frame; a “holy table” on which was painted or engraved various symbols; wax seals called *Æmeth*; a ring and lamin to be worn by the practitioner; and the rod “el,” divided into three parts, the ends painted black, the middle red.

The Mysterious *Book of Soyga*

As mentioned above, Dee refers in several places to a magical text named *Aldaraia sive Soyga*. Since Roberts’ and Watson’s 1990 book, *John Dee’s Library Catalogue*,⁴⁰ two manuscripts of this work have been identified by Deborah E. Harkness. One is Sloane 8 in the British Library, and the other is Bodley 908 in the Bodleian library. It is possible that Sloane 8 was, in fact, the manuscript to which Dee refers in his records.⁴¹

In their very first scrying session with Kelley, Dee asks the angels, “Ys my book, of Soyga, of any excellency?” (10 March 1582). He laments at that time, “Oh, my great and long desyre hath byn to be hable to read those Tables of Soyga.” *Liber Loagaeth* (Sloane 3189) has several tables from *Aldaraia/Soyga* appended (in Dee’s handwriting—not Kelley’s, as in the rest of the manuscript). In addition, Dee’s statement, “Soyga: otherwise named ysoga, and Agyos, literis transpositis” is, in fact, a direct quote from the *Aldaraia*.⁴² The angel Il responds, “Soyga signifieth not Agyos,” in direct contradiction. This

⁴⁰ They list it as DM 166, pg 183.

⁴¹ See Jim Reeds, “John Dee and the Magic Tables in the *Book of Soyga*,” www.research.att.com/~reeds/soyga.html; to appear in a forthcoming book *John Dee: Interdisciplinary Essays in English Renaissance Thought*, Kluwer of Amsterdam.

⁴² Bodley MS 908, p. 4, line 3. See figure 2.

makes it probable that Kelley was not familiar with the text, and is possibly evidence that he was in fact carrying out a deception. I do not believe the *Book of Soyga* is the same as the “Arabick book” mentioned several times by Dee. The latter was apparently the same as that prized by Pontois and described as having “cost doctor dye £ 600 ready money as he the deponent did hear himself the said doctor afferme. . .”⁴³ There is nothing about either *Soyga* manuscript to justify such a vast sum.⁴⁴

Scrying and Dee’s Earliest Attempts

The premise behind Dee’s mystical experiments is the veracity of scrying, or visions seen in a crystal ball or other shining surface. Today, the crystal ball has become an icon for superstition, but scrying has been widely used and respected for divination throughout history. It even has biblical authority.⁴⁵

According to psychiatrist and researcher Raymond A. Moody, “That certain individuals do see visions—specifically, hypnagogic images—when gazing into a transparent or reflective surface is a well-established fact that can be regarded as an item of psychological knowledge.”⁴⁶ The real question is the value of these visions, or their interpretation.

⁴³ R&W, p. 183.

⁴⁴ It is not clear why Roberts and Watson make this identification. They note Francis Maddison’s theory that Aldaraia = Ar. Al Dirâya “knowledge, cognizance, acquaintance,” but that is only hypothetical. They also note that Dee sent a servant (20 October 1595) to recover his Arabic book from Mr Abbot (?) at Oxford and (19 November 1595) “my Arabik boke restored by gods favor.” James Orchard Halliwell, ed., *The Private Diary of Dr. John Dee* (New York: AMS Press, 1968), p. 54.

⁴⁵ Genesis 44:4–5.

⁴⁶ Raymond A. Moody, *Scrying—The Art of Female Divination* (Marietta: R. Bemis Publishing, Ltd., 1995), p. 7.

Scrying instructions can be found widely in occult literature, in particular in manuscripts that it was dangerous to possess.⁴⁷ The published sources, such as Agrippa, make scant mention of scrying. Scrying also appears in popular legends, such as the legends of Roger Bacon's scrying glass in which anyone could see anything they wished within fifty miles.

With few exceptions, Dee did not use scrying to see far-off happenings, or to divine the future. His aim was to see into the spiritual realms to receive wisdom from higher beings. The spiritual realms were thought to resemble, in many respects, the physical world.

It was common for scrying practices to be accompanied by religious and occult symbols and ceremonies. These served to ensure the spiritual purity of the practice, but also to focus concentration on the intent, much as techniques for lucid dreaming do. They also served to give form, context, and meaning to the images seen by the scryer. For example, surrounding the scrying table with the symbols of the seven planets provided a means of organizing and remembering the otherwise bewildering maze of images. This integration of magic with the art of memory was developed to a high degree in Renaissance occultism.⁴⁸

⁴⁷ For some examples, see Richard Kieckhefer, *Forbidden Rites*, experiments 18, 19, 20, 23, 24, 25, 27, 29, 33, 38, 39, and 40. Reginald Scot, *Discoverie of Witchcraft* (New York: Dover Publications, 1584/1973), published extracts from magic handbooks; many deal with scrying (e.g., pp. 148–9, 232–5, 238–9, 245–6, 249–50). Francis Barrett, *The Magus* (London, 1801; reprint: Secaucus: The Citadel Press, 1975) pp. 135bis ff, published scrying instructions from Trithemius (or pseudo-Trithemius). See also manuscripts Sloane 1317, 3846 (art 6), 3848, 3949 (arts. 1, 3), 3851, 3853 (art. 9), 3854 (art 5).

⁴⁸ According to Couliano, mnemonics, along with eroticism, is an essential component of magic, “to such an extent that it is impossible to understand [magic] without first having studied the principles and mechanisms of the first two” (*Eros and Magic in the Renaissance*, p. xviii). See also Frances A. Yates, *The Art of Memory*, and Giordano Bruno's *De magia in Jordani Bruni Nolani Opera latine conscripta* (Neapoli, 1879–91). English translation in Robert De Luca, Richard J. Blackwell, and Alfonso Ingegno, *Giordano Bruno, Cause, Principle and Unity: And Essays on Magic* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998).

Symbols and ceremonies also provided a means of controlling or manipulating the images (or, to use Couliano's term, "phantasms"). For example, the scryer might place a talisman of Venus under the stone when he wanted to focus on affairs of the heart. This is essentially an attempt to facilitate communication between body and soul: "body and soul speak two languages, which are not only different, even inconsistent, but also inaudible to each other. The inner sense alone is able to hear and comprehend them both, also having the role of translating one into the other."⁴⁹ The use of sacred symbols and ceremonies also helped the scryer summon courage to face the possible confrontation with demonic presences.

Dee's interest in scrying clearly goes back far earlier than the records of his scrying experiments.⁵⁰ Although he may have begun to experiment much earlier, the earliest records of Dee's scrying begin in 1581. On 8 March 1581, and several times during 1581, Dee records strange knocking and rapping in his chamber, and a voice like an owl's shriek. These events were clearly regarded as supernatural and may have been related to early experiments.

His private diary records: "May 25th, I had sight in χρυσταλλω [Crystallo] offerd me, and I saw." Generally, however, Dee relied on the scrying abilities of others, as prescribed by tradition. He mentions that he employed two seers around this time.⁵¹

Late in 1581, Dee began to employ Barnabas Saul as a scryer. Saul was a minister who was heavily involved with magic. Dee's diary records additional details regarding his dealings with Saul:

⁴⁹ I. P. Couliano, *Eros and Magic in the Renaissance*, p. 5.

⁵⁰ He mentions scrying in his *Monas Hieroglyphica* (1564).

⁵¹ See "The Scryers of John Dee," Chris Pickering, *Hermetic Journal* 32, pp. 9–14. Another example of Dee seeing angels may be TFR 25, where he writes "Thereupon I perceived the presence of some good spiritual Creature, and straight way appeared the good Angel. I.L."

Oct. 9th, Barnabas Saul, lying in the hall was strangely trubled by a spiritual creature abowt mydnight. [1582] Jan. 27th, Barnabas Sawl his brother cam. Feb. 12th, abowt 9 of the klok, Barnabas Saul and his brother Edward went homward from Mortlak: Saul his inditement being by law fownd insufficient at Westminster Hall: Mr. Serjeant Walmesley, Mr. Owen and Mr. Hyde, his lawyers at the bar for the matter, and Mr. Ive, the clerk of the Crown Office, favoring the other. Feb. 20th I receyved a letter from Barnabas Saul. Feb. 21st, Mr. Skullthorp rod toward Barnabas. Feb. 25th, Mr. Skulthorp cam home. March 6th, Barnabas Saul cam this day agayn abowt one of the klok and went to London the same afternone. He confessed that he neyther hard or saw any spirituall creature any more. March 8th, Mr. Clerkson and his frende⁵² cam to my howse. Barnabas went home agayne abowt 3 or 2 klok, he lay not at my howse now; he went, I say, on Thursday, with Mr. Clerkson. March 9th, Fryday at dynner tyme Mr. Clerkson and Mr. Talbot declared a great deale of Barnabas nowghty dealing toward me, as in telling Mr. Clerkson ill things of me that I should mak his frend, as that he was wery of me, that I wold so flatter his frende the lerned man that I wold borow him of him. But his frend told me, before my wife and Mr. Clerkson, that a spirituall creature told him that Barnabas had censured both Mr. Clerkson and me. The injuries which this Barnabas had done me diverse wayes were very great. July 19th, Barnabas Saul came to see me at Mortlak: I chyd hym for his manifold untrue reports.⁵³

⁵² This friend was Edward Kelley, a.k.a. Edward Talbot.

⁵³ Above this entry, someone wrote, "You that rede this underwritten assure yoursele that yt is a shamfull lye, for Talbot neither studied for any such thinge not shewed himselfe dishonest in any thinge." Dee added the comment, "This is Mr.

The experiments with Saul were not regarded as successful. His sessions were largely rejected as false. Dee records one of these sessions in the beginning of *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque*.

On 8 March 1582, Dee was visited by Edward Kelley, a.k.a. Edward Talbot. They were introduced by Dee's friend Mr. Clerkson. Kelley began to scry regularly with Dee two days later. From Dee's records, it is apparent that Kelley had a highly unstable personality. The relationship between the two men was often strained, and Kelley would storm off for months at a time. Aside from their conflicts, however, Dee regarded their sessions as highly successful.

Scrying Methods

Dee used various media for scrying—several crystal balls and the famous obsidian mirror are now preserved in the British Museum.⁵⁴ Dee drew a picture of one of them in the record of the first scrying session (see below). This shows an elaborate frame with a cross at the top. This is probably the stone that William Lilly described as the size of a large orange, “set in silver, with a cross on the top, and another on the handle; and round about engraved the names of these angels, Raphael,

Talbot or that lerned man, his own writing in my booke, very unduely as he cam by it.” There are also some additional notes by Talbot/Kelley that have been erased. Diary quotations are from James Orchard Halliwell, ed., *The Private Diary of Dr. John Dee* (New York: AMS Press, 1968) pp. 13–16.

⁵⁴ Although Christopher Whitby (*John Dee's Actions with Spirits*, pp. 138–141) questions whether the obsidian mirror was actually Dee's, it is commonly accepted. John Pontois, Dee's heir, was said to have “a certain round flat stone like Cristall which Pountis said was a stone which an Angell brought to doctor dye wherein he did worke and know many strange things . . .” See R&W, p. 61. See figure 8.1 in Nicholas Clulee, *John Dee's Natural Philosophy*. This probably was the scrying stone that the angels mysteriously delivered on 21 November 1582 out of “the uttermost part of the Roman Possession.” Dee describes it as being “half an inch thick” (5 May, 1583), although Dee's drawing of the former in Sloane 3191 clearly shows a sphere whereas the mirror is flat and has a handle.



Gabriel, Uriel.”⁵⁵ After intense prayer, the stone was placed in a frame and set on a specially prepared table. The angels were then called to appear in the stone to answer questions.

Nicholas Clulee has argued that Dee did not seem to consider these actions magical, but rather a variety of religious experience. He based this partly on the observation that they do not seem to invoke the angels directly, as directed by the magical books. Rather, they start off with prayers to God, and petitions that God send his angels.⁵⁶ This is consistent with the method found in the *Arbatel*, which Dee mentions by name in the text. In his first action with Kelley, Dee is very careful to distinguish between “spirituall practise” and what is “vulgarly accownted Magik.” On the other hand, Dee and Kelley immediately proceed to “call for the good Angel Anchor, to appere in that stone *to my owne sight*.” Dee states that he “make[s] motion to god, and his good Creatures.” Also, Dee’s synopsis of his instructions for communicating with angels (*Heptarchia Mystica* and *Tabula bonorum angelorum invocationes*, bound in Sloane 3191) contains numerous invocations or “invitations” addressed directly to individual angels. These were based on the records Dee kept in Sloane 3188.

It does not appear that God or the angels obliged Dee’s request that they appear to his own sight, but Kelley experiences vivid and detailed apparitions. As soon as the angels appear in the stone, they “give thanks to God, and Wellcome to the good Creature.” Then they

⁵⁵ Quoted in Christopher Whitby, *John Dee’s Actions with Spirits*, p. 92. Compare with the drawing and description found in (pseudo-) Trithemius. *The Art of Drawing Spirits in to Crystals* in Francis Barrett, *The Magus*, book 2, p. 128 (York Beach, ME: Samuel Weiser, 2000). In addition to Raphael, Gabriel, and Uriel, Trithemius includes Michael.

⁵⁶ Nicholas Clulee, *John Dee’s Natural Philosophy*, p. 206. See the first action, where, after “fervent prayers to God,” Saul is asked to look into the stone and see “yf God had sent his holy Angel Anael.”

demand the angel's name. These steps are all consistent with the texts of ritual magic. In the second action, Dee is told that the method of invoking the archangel Michael is by "the Seven psalmes." This is also consistent with the grimoires.⁵⁷ The apparitions do not always seem confined to the crystal.⁵⁸

Edward Kelley, the Magician

Edward Kelley was born on 1 August 1555. He was thus 28 years younger than Dee. He attended Oxford under the alias of Edward Talbot, but left after some trouble. He was later pilloried in Lancaster for forgery. He was 26 when he arrived at Dee's door on 10 March 1582.⁵⁹ By this time, Kelley was well versed in the occult arts, including Agrippa's works. He also possessed various texts on magic, at least some of which were regarded as "devilish." Kelley was also an alchemist. His only book is on alchemy, and his final months were occupied with alchemical experiments for Rudolph II. Elias Ashmole says, "Mr. Lilly told me that John Evans informed him that he was acquainted with Kelly's sister in Worchester, that she shewed him some

⁵⁷ As an example, British Library Sloane manuscript 3849 ("Manner of Proceeding in order to discover in the Crystall") starts out with the seven Psalms before proceeding to ask Jesus to send the three angels "ancor annasor anelose." Reginald Scot, in his 1584 edition of *The Discoverie of Witchcraft* (book 15, chapter 12), quotes from a magical text at length on how "to have a spirit inclosed into a christall stone or berill glasse, &c. First thou in the new of the moon being clothed with all new, and fresh, & cleane araie, and shaven, and that day to fast with bread and water, and being cleane confessed, saie the seaven psalmes, and the letanie, for the space of two daies, with this praier following . . ."

⁵⁸ For example, see TFR, p. 25: "There appeared to E.K. a round Globe of white smoke over my head" (a UFO?). MLQ, 10 April 1583: "there appeared in the corner of my study a blak shadow." Sometimes, the whole chamber appeared in the stone (e.g., MLQ, 15 March 1582).

⁵⁹ Peter French, *John Dee, The World of an Elizabethan Magus*, pp. 113, n. 2.

of the gold her brother had transmuted, and that Kelly was first an apothecary in Worcester.”⁶⁰ Kelley later married Jane Cooper. He also had a brother, Thomas.

The *Sigillum Aemeth* and Its Variations

The use of the *Sigillum Aemeth* (or Emeth) is central to Dee’s system, as well as to other forms of magic. The earliest examples of the *Sigillum Aemeth* are found in the *Liber Juratus* (see appendix 1). Most manuscripts describe the seal in great detail, but don’t actually draw it out. The versions that do exist vary, probably because they were based on the written description. *Liber Juratus* calls this seal the “seal of God . . . which is the beginning in this art.”⁶¹ Between the outer circles is to be written the 72-letter name of God, or *Schemhamphoras*. Both Agrippa and Reuchlin refer to a seal by this name, although I have been unable to find any descriptions or drawings of it in their writings. Dee was well aware of the fact that variations existed, since he asks the angels to provide a definitive version for his works. The version by Athanasius Kircher, which appears many years later in his monumental work *Oedipus Aegyptiacus*, is highly corrupt.⁶²

Dee was originally told by the angels to use a version found in one of his books. He thereupon consulted several sources and asked the angels to resolve the discrepancies. This prompted them to deliver a radically new version of the sigil.

An examination of Dee’s original wax sigil (see figure 1, page 42),

⁶⁰ Oxford: Bodleian Library MS Ashmole 1790, fol. 58.

⁶¹ British Library manuscript Royal 17 AxlII fol. 3v.

⁶² Athanasius Kircher, *Oedipus Aegyptiacus* (Rome, 1652–54). The most interesting part of Kircher’s discussion is his attempt to link the seal with Islamic mystical tradition. Since the use of this sigil is central to the present work, I include Kircher’s discussion of it in appendix 2.

now preserved in the British Museum, shows differences from that found in Sloane 3188.

The Holy Table and Its Variations

Dee's scrying was conducted on a specially constructed table, two versions of which were described to him by the angels. The first, whose design is now lost, was later declared by the angels to be false. The second design is apparently similar to the first. It consists of a large hexagram containing a square of letters. Surrounding the hexagram is a border containing additional letters. Although the original table does not appear to have survived, it was described in detail by Elias Ashmole, who saw it in John Cotton's library. It was "composed of 3 boards broad-waies besides the borderings; of a fine grained wood & very heavy, but the scent now lost." He described the Enochian letters as painted in red on a gold background, between two blue lines. The seven sigils, or "ensigns of Creation" were also painted with red letters and blue lines. The lines of the hexagon were gold, and the central square had gold letters and blue lines.⁶³ (The engraving found in Dee's *True and Faithful Relation* . . . does not correspond exactly with the description in Sloane 3188. See figure 3, page 43.)

As with the *Sigillum Aemeth* described above, this design is a variation of designs found in magic texts. It is likely that Dee employed one of the conventional designs in his early scrying before the angels revealed their version.

The instructions given in the grimoires concerning the holy table probably give a fairly accurate idea of how Dee proceeded in these experiments. In appendices 3, 4, and 5, I present excerpts from the *Theurgia Goetia*, *Art Pauline*, and *Ars Almadel*. The *Art Pauline* seems particularly close to Dee's method. The table contains a hexagram with

⁶³ Oxford: Bodleian Library, Ashmole MS 1790, fols. 55a–56a.

the seven planetary seals arranged around it (see figure 5, page 44). The spirit's seal is placed on the appropriate planetary seal. Dee was instructed that the seven seals could be constructed separately and arranged around the table, or they could be painted onto the table.

The third example is from the *Ars Almadel*. This gives a method for calling forth the spirits that govern the four directions, north, south, east, and west. Here, we also find a hexagram on the holy table, and the use of wax sigils. This time, there is a border around the table with holy names drawn around it. In the center of the hexagram is a small triangular seal with more names (see figures 6 and 7, pages 45–46). *Aldaraia sive Soyga* also contains diagrams reminiscent of Dee's (see figure 4, page 44).

Other Ritual Implements

According to the *Key of Solomon*,⁶⁴ *Heptameron*, *Lemegeton*,⁶⁵ and other magical texts, the master should wear on his chest a lamin with a hexagram. Dee is likewise told to prepare a lamin to be used for this purpose, but his was triangular, thus symbolizing his name (Δ = Dee). He is later given a new version, the original version having been declared false. The final version has Enochian lettering.

Dee is also instructed to prepare another ritual implement, the ring of Solomon. Solomon's magical ring appears in early magical literature. For example, in the *Testament of Solomon* (first to third century A.D.), Solomon is given the magical ring by the archangel Michael.⁶⁶ He uses it to call and control the demons. The archangel Michael likewise reveals Solomon's ring to Dee, stating that it was by it that

⁶⁴ Hermann Gollancz, *Sepher Maphteah Shelomoh* (London: Oxford University Press, 1914), fol. 38a.

⁶⁵ *Goetia* also enjoins the use of a second lamin that has a five-pointed star.

⁶⁶ Translation by D. C. Duling in James H. Charlesworth, *The Old Testament Pseudepigrapha*, vol. 1 (New York: Doubleday, 1983) pp. 935 ff.

Solomon worked all his wonders. The *Testament of Solomon* was known in medieval manuscripts and could have been known to Dee.⁶⁷

The Spirits

Five archangels are central to Dee’s actions: Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, Uriel, and Annael. This grouping is common in medieval and Renaissance occult works. In *Liber Juratus*, the first four are known as the “Angels of the 4 winds.” Agrippa calls them the “four angels ruling over the corners of the world.”⁶⁸ *The Magical Calendar* gives the same.⁶⁹ The names of the first four are also found written on the frame that holds the scrying crystal in Trithemius’ method of calling angels into a crystal.⁷⁰ Michael and Gabriel are the only two angels mentioned by name in the Old Testament. Raphael is mentioned in the Apocryphal *Book of Tobit*, and Uriel is well known in noncanonical lore. Annael is relatively unknown.

The meanings of the Hebrew names and their compass allocations are:

Michael	“who is as God”	East
Gabriel	“God is my strength”	North
Raphael	“God has healed”	West
Uriel	“Fire of God”	South
Annael	“Grace or glory of God”	

⁶⁷ For example, see British Library, Harley manuscript 5596, fifteenth century. Note the largest section of this manuscript is the *Clavicula Salomonis*.
⁶⁸ Cornelius Agrippa, *De occulta philosophia*, book 2, chap. 7, p. 266.
⁶⁹ *The Magical Calendar*, ed. Adam McLean (Grand Rapids, MI: Phanes Press, 1994), p. 32.
⁷⁰ Johannes Trithemius, *The Art of Drawing Spirits into Crystals* in Francis Barrett’s *The Magus*, book 2, (York Beach, ME: Samuel Weiser, 2000), p. 128.

During their first scrying session, Dee and Kelley called three angels: Anchor, Anachor, and Anilos. These names also occur in mainstream occult sources. In the *Heptameron or Magical Elements* of Peter de Abano, they are mentioned in the oration to be said when the vesture is put on.⁷¹ It is known that Dee made use of that book, but he must have been following another source here, since the names are not exactly the same. A likely source is Sloane 3849, article 1, “Manner of proceeding in order to discover in the crystall,” where these three angels are central.

It would be interesting to try to trace the development of this oration. The *Heptameron* version is as follows:

Ancor, Amacor, Amides, Theodonias, Anitor, by the merits of thy Angel, O Lord, I will put on the Garments of Salvation, that this which I desire I may bring to effect: through thee the most holy Adonay, whose kingdom endureth for ever and ever. Amen⁷²

The *Clavicula Salomonis* gives the following:

Amor, Amator, Amides, Ideodaniach, Pamor, Plaior, Anitor; through the merits of these holy Angels will I robe and indue myself with the vestments of Power, through which may I conduct unto the desired end those things which I ardently wish, through Thee, O most Holy ADONAI, whose Kingdom and Empire endureth forever. Amen.⁷³

⁷¹ (pseudo-) Henry Cornelius Agrippa, *Fourth Book of Occult Philosophy* (London, 1655, reprint London: Askini Publishers, 1978).

⁷² Agrippa.

⁷³ *The Key of Solomon the King (Clavicula Salomonis)*, first translated and edited from ancient manuscripts in the British Museum by S. Liddell MacGregor Mathers (London: George Redway, 1889; reissued, York Beach, ME: Samuel Weiser, 2000, p. 93). Mathers' reading most closely follows British Library manuscript Additional 10862, folio 116v (consecration of vestments): “Amor, Amator, Amides, Ideodaniach, Paucor, Playor, Anitor, per merita eorum sanc-

The *Lemegeton* gives:

By the figurative mystery of these holy vestures I will clothe me with the armour of salvation in the strength of the Most High, ANCHOR; AMACOR; AMIDES; THEODONIAS; ANITOR; that my desired end may be effected through Thy Strength, Adonai; unto whom the praise and glory will for ever and ever belong. Amen.⁷⁴

Liber Juratus contains the earliest version with which I am familiar. It is numbered oration 17:

torum Angelorum . . .” The same manuscript again invokes these angels during the consecration of the silk cloth on fol. 64v: “Adonay, Anosbias anereneton, agla, athanatos, agyos, ancor, anachor, anilos, Theodomos, agnefeton, Cedyon, Lamet, Cetelfares, cos, Tetragrammaton.” Strangely, Mathers omits this conjuration. Mathers’ other manuscript authorities read as follows: Sloane 3091, fol. 84v: “ancor, amacor, amade. Theodonia, Pancorpsagor, Anotor, paroles merites des Saints Anges, . . .” Harley 3981 fol. 112v: “Ancor, Amacor, Amade, Theodonia, Pancor = psagor, Anitor, par les merites des Saints Anges . . .” Kings 288 fol. 111v: “Anco, Amacor, Amade, Theodonia, Pancor, Psagor, Anitor, paroles merites, des Saints Anges . . .” Ancor, Amacor, Amides, Teodonia, Pancor, Amitor, par les merites des Saintes . . . Sloane 1307 (missing from chapter on vestments but includes the following for consecrating the parchment fol. 109v:) “Autor, Amaur, Theodomos, Phagar, Abacri, adestote ad custodiam istius carte.” Other manuscripts of the *Key of Solomon* in the British Library not used by Mathers preserve some valuable readings: Sloane 3847 fol. 46v (consecration of clothing): “Anchor, Anachor, anilos, theodonos, phagor, Ianitor, per merita Angelorum sanctorum . . .” fol. 60r (preparation of parchment): “Ancor, anacor, amlos, Theodomos, Phagor, adestote in custodia huius carte” fol. 60v: “Lazay, Salmay, Dalmay, Adonay, Saday, Tetragrammaton, anepheneton, Cedyon, Aryon, Anereneton, Athanatos, Theos, Theodomos, anilos, pes, kyros, abos, Theophilos, Onoy, Zoron, Largon, Lazaryon, Theophilon, Tisyon, Alyon, Occinomos, Zacharion, Sydion, Agla, Joth, heth, he, vau, el, emanuel, Ja · Ja, Vah, *ancor, anilos, Theodonas* angeli sancti dei . . .” Additional 36674 fol. 15v: “Antor, Anator, et Anabis, Theodomas, Ianitor [or Iamtor], by the desertes of the holy Anngells . . .” Sloane 2383 fol. 16r (preparation of parchment): “Anator, Amacor, phaidos, theodomos, plagar, abacar, adestote ad custodiam istius Cartae” fol. 25v (silk cloth): “Adonay, amatias, anaton priumaton, agla, Ensoph, Cadon, antor, amacor, anilor, [26r] Semanphorus, Samceuaia, tetaph, soned, saemonim. Eos bos, Elohim.”

⁷⁴ Joseph H. Peterson, *The Lesser Key of Solomon* (York Beach, ME, Weiser Books: 2001), p. 47.

O Jesu the sonne of the incomprehensible god,
 hancor hanacor hamylos iehorna theodonos heliothos
 phagor corphandonos norizane corithico hanosae helsezope
 phagora.

ELEMINATOR candones helos helee resphaga thep-
 hagayn theundyn thahonos micemyahe hortahonas nelos
 behebos belhores hacaphagan belethothol ortophagon cor-
 phandonos born in the shape of a man for us sinners and
 yow holy angells heliothos phagnoraherken and teche me
 and gouerne me [hic oic petitionem tuam sed p visione
 diuina dic ut sequitr] that I may come to obtayne the
 visyon of the deyte throwgh thee glorious and moste gen-
 tle and moste almightie creator oure lyuyng lorde holy
 infinite godely and euerlastinge to whome be prayse
 honor and glorye worlde withowt ende. Amen.⁷⁵

The *Ars Notoria* has a very similar oration, numbered 24 and called
 “The Oration of the Physical Art.” Its purpose is for determining the
 condition of a sick person:

Ihesus fili Dominus Incomprehensibilis:

Ancor, Anacor, Anylos, Zohorna, Theodonas, hely-
 otes Phagor, Norizane, Corichito, Anosae, Helse Tonope,
 Phagora

[another part of the same orison:]

⁷⁵ British Library manuscript Royal 17 AxlII fol. 37r. Another manuscript in the British Library, Sloane 3885 fol. 69r reads: “Ih’u dei filius incompraehensibilis hancor hanacor hanylos iehorna theodonas helyothos heliotheos phagor corphandonos norizane corithico hanosal helsezope phagora. [37v] Eleminator candones helas helee resphaga thephagagayn thetendyn thahanos mtemya heortahonos nelos behebos belhores hacaphagan \\\\\\ belohothoi ortophagon corphandonos humane natus . . .” Sloane 3854 fol 118v: “Ih’u dei filius incomprehensibil’ hancor hanacor hanylos iehorna theodonos helyothos heliotheos phagor corphandonos norizane corithico hanosae helsezope phagora. Eleminator candones helos orano: helee resphaga thephagagayn thetendyn thahanos uitemya heortalyonos uelos ue hebos uel hores hacaphagan ortophagon corphandonos humane natus . . .”

Elleminator, Cardones helosi, Tophagain, Tecendum, Thaones, Behelos, Belhoros, Hocho Phagan, Corphandonos, Humanae natus & vos Eloytus Phugora: Be present ye holy Angels, advertise and reach me, whether such a one shall recover, or dye of this infirmity.⁷⁶

The *Ars Notoria* reproduces most of the Orations found in the *Liber Juratus*, though in slightly altered forms.

In *Liber II*, two other conventional lists of angels are given. The first is: Zaphiel, Zadkiel, Cumael, Raphael, Haniel, Michael, and Gabriel. The second is: Zedekiel, Madimiel, Semiel, Nogahel, Corabiel, and Leuenael. Most of these names are identical to those given by Agrippa in his “Scale of the number seven.” The first list corresponds to the “seven angels which stand in the presence of God.” This also corresponds to the list of seven archangels according to Geonic lore, as well as that of Pseudo-Dionysius.⁷⁷ The second list corresponds to the Hebrew names for the seven planets, with the name of God, “EL,” added to each. It is also found in Agrippa, book 3.

Description of the Manuscript

One of the most remarkable things about Dee, as exemplified by these records, is his meticulous attention to detail. In fact, Dee’s are probably the most detailed records of the actual practice of ceremonial magic extant.

The title of the book is slightly ambiguous. “Mysteriorum,” as in *Mysteriorum Libri*, can mean either mysteries or secret rites. Both meanings seem fitting in this context.

The manuscript consists of 104 folios, mostly in Dee’s hand. It

⁷⁶ Peterson, p. 172.

⁷⁷ Gustav Davidson, *A Dictionary of Angels Including the Fallen Angels* (New York: The Free Press, 1967), pp. 338–9.

measures approximately 320mm by 205mm. It contains a short preface by Elias Ashmole, and is bound with notes by Ashmole, many of which are in his stenographic notation.⁷⁸

Synopsis of Dee's "Mystical Experiments" (1581–1583)

In his *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque*, Dee records prophetic visions (e.g., the Spanish Armada), visions of angels, magical instruction, and religious teachings. A few of the key messages of the angels include:

- Flesh is vile and corrupt (Gnostic or Neoplatonic attitude);
- Mercy for the repentant is necessary;
- Temptation of the faithful is necessary in order to show God's mercy;
- The immanent coming of the antichrist;
- The immanent fall of existing political and religious establishments as punishment for mankind's corruption, to be replaced by new, righteous ones.

Although a lot of material remains obscure, especially passages from the "holy book," I believe Christopher Whitby is correct in dismissing the theory of cryptographic messages hidden in these records.⁷⁹

There is surprisingly little discussion of alchemy in these records, especially in view of the fact that Dee pursued it actively during this period.⁸⁰ Perhaps Dee did not mention it here because he didn't want

⁷⁸ Christopher Whitby (*John Dee's Actions with Spirits*, p. 1) identified these as "notes in cipher by William Shippen (1635–1693)," but see C. H. Josten, *Elias Ashmole (1617–1692): his autobiographical and historical notes, his correspondence, and other contemporary sources relating to his life and work* (Oxford, 1966), V. 2, p. 10.

⁷⁹ Christopher Whitby, *John Dee's Actions with Spirits*, p. 105–6, p. 156.

⁸⁰ Nicholas Clulee, *John Dee's Natural Philosophy*, p. 178–9.

to reveal his alchemical work to Kelley, who probably came to Dee for that purpose. Perhaps this helps explain Kelley's bouts of anger at Dee. One might also wonder if Kelley brought the scroll, book, and red powder in order to entice Dee into letting him in on Dee's own secret alchemical work. The evidence that there was more to the visions than simply conscious deception from Kelley will be discussed later.

The Book of Angelic Wisdom

Dee seems to have had an almost obsessive fascination with the lost *Apocrypha*, especially the *Book of Enoch*, which is mentioned and even quoted in the Bible (Jude 14), and *Esdras*. He is told by the angels that the *Apocrypha* are not lost, but in the keeping of the Jews.⁸¹ Most of his mystical exercises are focused on recovery of the lost wisdom that these books represented to him.

The core of this book describes the revelation of a book of angelic wisdom, *Liber Loagaeth* (so named by Dee in *A True and Faithful Relation . . .*). It is reported to be in the tongue of the angels. Only a few angelic words are translated in these manuscripts. The first parts of this book were dictated by Kelley and recorded meticulously by Dee in Sloane 3188. Later parts were written by Kelley directly and are now found in Sloane 3189. The latter manuscript is incomplete in that it does not repeat the earlier material. It is also bound with four tables from the *Book of Soyga*, written in Dee's handwriting. Since the angels state that the angelic book contains forty-nine leaves (one of which cannot be revealed), it is clear that the four tables from *Soyga* do not belong to it.

⁸¹ Dee was apparently aware of the existence of the Ethiopic *Book of Enoch* from Guillaume Postel's *De originibus* (Basel: Ioannem Oporinum, 1553). See Nicholas Clulee, *John Dee's Natural Philosophy*, p. 209.

Dee was instructed to rewrite the book in the delivered script, but this does not seem to have been done. One copy was to be bound in blue. Another, “whose skin shall bear Silver,” was to be “in length; 8 [inches], in breadth 7.”⁸²

The importance of *Liber Loagaeth* cannot be overemphasized. From it would “be restored the holy bokes, which haue perished euen from the begynning, and from the first that liued.” The truths it contains will end religious disputes and restore religious unity. “Which when it hath spread a while, THEN COMMETH THE ENDE.”⁸³ In short, it will usher in the new age. Since the book is so central to these angelic communications, it is amazing that it has remained unpublished.

Synopsis of Dee’s *True & Faithful Relation*

The record of Dee’s experiments continues in later manuscripts. The bulk of the later material was published in 1659 by Meric Casaubon as *A True & Faithful Relation . . . Between Dr. John Dee . . . and some Spirits*. These records were published by Casaubon with the intent of discrediting Dee and Kelley. The Casaubon edition, it should be noted, is full of typographic errors. Reliance on it alone, without the manuscript sources, has sadly resulted in the perpetuation of many errors.

A True & Faithful Relation takes up where *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque* left off. It goes on to describe their six-year missionary journey to the continent. The revelations of the mystical heptarchy were followed by that of the 30 “Aethyrs,” the “48 Claves Angelicae,” and the four “Enochian Tables.” The later material included a second language popularly known as “Enochian.”

⁸² TFR, p. 159.

⁸³ Sloane 3188, fol. 101b.

Dee's mission to the court of Rudolph II in Prague cannot be considered a success. An occultist himself, Rudolph proved very unsupportive. In fact, Dee and Kelley narrowly escaped the papal nuncio and the possibility of facing the deadly Inquisition. Dee returned to England in 1589. Kelley remained behind and had limited success in alchemical experiments for Rudolph. He died trying to escape in 1595.

Dee's Later Life

The final period of Dee's life and career have been judged variously as one of disgrace and failure, or as one of continued success and renown. I think William Sherman has made a credible case for the latter view.⁸⁴ While it is clear that his mission to the continent cost him politically, Dee continued to maintain his contacts and influence, and even served in an official capacity to King James I when he succeeded Queen Elizabeth in 1603. He continued his scrying experiments, but never again achieved the dramatic results he had seen with Kelley. While the promised new age never materialized in the dramatic and apocalyptic way he had visualized, history has acknowledged Dee's vital role in shaping our modern world.

Adaptation of Dee's System by Later Occultists

Dee's activities and writings have made a deep impact on later occult movements. Among the fruits of his labor is a heavy influence on the German Rosicrucian movement, whose manifestos began to appear around 1610.⁸⁵

⁸⁴ William Sherman, *John Dee*, pp. 16–19.

⁸⁵ See Frances A. Yates, *The Rosicrucian Enlightenment*, 1978, pp. 41.

As mentioned above, Dee's experiments also had a great influence on the Golden Dawn. Unfortunately, the process of adapting and assimilating Dee's system was undertaken with uncritical methods and incomplete materials. In particular, these efforts have been based almost entirely on Casaubon's *True & Faithful Relation*, with all its typographic errors. In many particulars, the Casaubon edition is impossible to understand without the *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque*.

The Four Angelic Tablets

Four tables of letters were produced during the later conferences.⁸⁶ These tables served two different purposes: the production of ninety-one names that correspond to the ninety-one parts of the world (as catalogued by Agrippa in his *Occult Philosophy* I, chap. 31), and the production of invocations ("Tabula Bonorum") to be used with the names. The Golden Dawn adaptation of Dee's system places heavy emphasis of these tables.

Christian Wilby has written an excellent article on the four angelic tablets. There he states:

Unfortunately for later day occultists, the so-called synthetic genius—I prefer to call it rampant eclecticism—of McGregor Mathers has obscured the field of vision on this problem for too long. For some reason best known to himself, Mathers was content to use the originally received tablets and ALL of the emmendations of the "corrected" version. This has produced, to the detriment of everybody, one of the biggest mish-mashes ever to grace the Tradition.⁸⁷

⁸⁶ TFR I, p. 173; TFR III, p. 15.

⁸⁷ *Hermetic Journal*, 30, pp. 18–22.

Another inaccuracy in the Golden Dawn system is the compass allocations used for the four angelic tablets. The original allocations given to Dee were later corrected by the angels.⁸⁸ The correct allocations are also given by Dee in his synopsis of his magical system (see Sloane 3191). These errors have been perpetuated by more recent writers.

History of the Manuscript

In addition to the preface by Elias Ashmole, further history of the manuscript is found in the following notes written on the end sheets:

Ms A. 3188./XVI F

This volume is in Dr. Dee's own handwriting, as far as fol 108.

A fair copy of it by Elias Ashmole was purchased at Sir Joseph Jekyll's sale, Jan 1739/40 (lot 465) and is now Ms. Sloane 3677.

The original Mss. of the remaining Books are in the Cottonian Collection, Appendix XLVI but were formerly (erroneously) numbered as Add. Mss. No. 5007 A.B.C.

J.M. Jan 1856

Dr. John Dee's Conference with Angels from Dec 22 1581. to May 30 1583. being what preceeds the other Conferences printed by Dr. Meric Causabon [sic] Lond. 1659. in folio.

With a preface by Elias Ashmole An: 1672.

⁸⁸ TFR III, p. 15.

Notes on This Edition

This edition of John Dee's spiritual diaries was prepared from the original manuscript in Dee's own handwriting. The original manuscript is preserved in the British Library.⁸⁹ Dee prepared a synopsis of this material in a short manuscript, *De Heptarchia Mystica*.⁹⁰ This latter manuscript provides some material that has been lost from the original manuscript, along with additional explanatory notes. All material used by Dee in his synopsis are printed in bold font to indicate its special importance. Additional notes from *De Heptarchia Mystica* are marked -D (HM).

The text has been normalized in some particulars. The personal pronoun *thee* is sometimes written *thé* or *the* in the manuscript. These have all been resolved into *thee*. The tittle—or macron (~), usually indicating a missing “m” or “n”—has been expanded in nearly all cases. Except for these particulars, everything else has been preserved, including spelling, capitalization, punctuation, and underscores. Marginal notes are incorporated into the text as footnotes. Square brackets and parentheses are Dee's. All editor's notes are denoted by -Ed.

Ashmole's notes are denoted by -E.A. Bound with the manuscript are partial transcriptions and notes on this manuscript and the printed diaries by Elias Ashmole. Most of this is in Ashmole's shorthand cipher. Some of these notes have also been included in this edition. Ashmole's “fair copy” is full of careless errors. This is very surprising, since he apparently thought the book of utmost importance.

In preparing this edition, I took the opportunity to review Christopher Whitby's doctoral thesis. Garland Press printed a limited edition of this in 1988. It was poorly reproduced from his typewritten thesis, making it completely illegible in many spots. I found Whitby's intro-

⁸⁹ Sloane 3188.

⁹⁰ Sloane 3191.

ductory material very well researched and useful, although I was surprised at the number of errors in transcription and translation. Also unfortunate is the fact that Whitby doesn't compare Sloane 3188 with Dee's manuscript *Heptarchia Mystica*, where Dee collects excerpts from the *Mysteriorum Libri Qunique*.⁹¹ These compensate greatly for much of the damage and illegibility of the latter, much more so than Ashmole's transcriptions. Although Whitby makes note of its importance, he doesn't make much use of it.

Conclusions: The Evidence

Colin Wilson has written: "Dee is one of the few great magical adepts of the past who can present us with some practical evidence of the existence of non-human entities."⁹² How solid is this evidence? The most convincing evidence is perhaps the "Enochian" language revealed by the angels. Enochian has been extensively studied by Donald Laycock, a prominent linguist. His comments indicate that he, for one, is not entirely convinced.⁹³

The second body of evidence is the word and credibility of John Dee. It must be remembered that he was regarded as one of the most educated people of his age, acknowledged to have impressive scientific credentials. In at least two places, he reports firsthand experience of supernatural events. In his diary, he writes, "I had sight in Crystallo offerd me, and I saw."⁹⁴ And in the *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque*, he reports, "I fele: and (by a great thundring noyce, thumming thuning myne eares) I perceyue

⁹¹ Sloane 3189.

⁹² George Hay, ed., *The Necronomicon* (Jersey: Neville Spearman, 1978), p. 36.

⁹³ Donald C. Laycock, *The Complete Enochian Dictionary* (York Beach, ME: Weiser Books, 2001), p. 63.

⁹⁴ James O. Halliwell, ed., *The Private Diary of Dr. John Dee* (New York: AMS Press, 1968), p. 11, May 25, 1581.

the presence of some spirituall creature abowt me.”⁹⁵ He also witnessed the seemingly miraculous materialization of the stone (21 November 1582). On the other hand, it must be admitted that Dee was highly motivated to believe, and thus was more likely to misinterpret events.

The largest body of evidence comes in the form of the word and credibility of Edward Kelley. Views of him range from that of a highly gifted scryer to an outright charlatan. I am inclined to believe that the truth lies somewhere in the middle. Clulee concluded that Kelley

. . . may well have consciously fabricated everything to deceive Dee, but his bouts of emotional anxiety and arguments with the spirits in the course of his visions, his reluctance to continue except for Dee’s desperate pleadings, and his admission of the visions to religious authorities in Prague when that might have had serious consequences all suggest that more than conscious deception was involved (TFR, 64, 102, 370).⁹⁶ Although Kelley often questioned the divine character of the angels, he seems to have believed in their reality as firmly as Dee, and while it is clear that the revelations of the angels through Kelley were often prejudiced in favor of Kelley’s interests in particular circumstances, they also reflect what Kelley knew of Dee’s interests. In a number of places in the minutes Dee has noted the similarity of the angelic revelations to material in Agrippa, Reuchlin, Trithemius, and Peter of Abano, and since Kelley lived with Dee and had access to his library, the revelations are very likely the joint product of Kelley’s imagination and stock of knowledge and what

⁹⁵ MLQ, 17 November 1582.

⁹⁶ Dee, “Praefatio latina,” 1586 in C. H. Josten’s “An Unknown Chapter in the Life of John Dee,” *Journal of the Warburg and Courtauld Institutes* 28 (1965): 233–57. See also Butler, *Ritual Magic*, pp. 259, 268.

he knew of Dee's thinking from their discussions and his reading among books of current interest to Dee.⁹⁷

Dee and Kelley's actions may be compared with so-called UFO abductees' recovered memories, wherein a "hypnotist" puts the "witness" into a suggestible state, and, through leading questions, manages to arrive at all sorts of "memories." The process may not be unlike the art of taking political polls. Of course, the better therapists and pollsters are trained to avoid biased results.

Another similarity with the UFO phenomena is the apparent trickster nature of the entities. They seem to combine convincing elements with apparent nonsense in a way that has led some researchers to theorize deep psychological manipulation.⁹⁸ Uri Geller's suspicion that there was just some "goddam little clown that is playing with us" sounds hauntingly similar to many of Kelley's complaints.

Other significant evidence lies in the various accurate predictions (e.g., Mary's beheading, the Spanish Armada, the homecoming of the Jews). These must, however, be weighed against those predictions that weren't accurate (e.g., prophecies of doom, Laski's future).⁹⁹ Another event that deserves mention is a secret conversation between Dee and the angels, held in Greek in order to prevent Kelley from understanding it. Aside from this incident, the angels' use of Latin seems to reflect Kelley's limited schooling in that language. When using Latin, they tend to deliver fixed speeches and avoid discourse. Also, as noticed by Calder, the angels "increase in fluency through the years."¹⁰⁰

⁹⁷ Nicholas Clulee, *John Dee's Natural Philosophy*, p. 205.

⁹⁸ See for example, Jacque Vallee's *Messengers of Deception* (Berkeley: Ronin Publishing, 1979) and Colin Wilson, *Alien Dawn* (New York: Fromm International, 1998).

⁹⁹ Laski is told he would have the kingdoms of Poland and Moldavia. The angels also incorrectly foretell Rudolph's demise and Stephen's ascent.

¹⁰⁰ I. R. F. Calder, "John Dee Studied as an English Neoplatonist," chapter 9, section 4.

A quick survey of how practical the angel magic was to Dee is even less convincing. Although Dee's aims were not only practical, but mystical as well, the results do not seem to be very reliable:

AIMS:

evaluate the value/validity of texts
(e.g., *Aldaraia/Soyga*, *Sigillum Dei* examples)

hidden treasure

location of lost books
(e.g., Arabic book, books of Enoch, Esdras)

political advice (e.g., how much does Lord Treasurer know, how to get reformed calendar accepted, Laski's political prospects)

advice for Adrian Gilbert about Northwest passage

advice regarding Mistress Haward

ensure actions are protected from evil spirits

RESULTS:

question evaded

never successful

Arabic book later recovered; others not specific

Laski's future not accurate, later disfavored; calendar not accepted

Northwest passage turned out to be a myth

???

constant intrusion by evil spirits, often undetected until much later

Some of the instructions, such as those concerning etymology and geography, are straight out of textbooks. This is also true of the names of angels, their descriptions, offices, and so forth. The episode of the dictation of the table can easily be seen as evidence that Kelley was fabricating the “revelations.” First Dee is told that the sigil *Aemeth* was correct in his books, but when confronted by conflicting versions, the “angels” produce yet another version. At one point, Kelley takes the sigil to his room to correct it. Later, he frequently interrupts sessions when the extraction methods fail. This may mean that Kelley needed time to figure out where his mistakes were. And what are we to make of the episode in which Kelley produces a drawing in his own handwriting that appears to be a prototype of one of the diagrams? He proclaimed it a counterfeit, and Dee congratulated himself in not succumbing to doubt, but trusting God.

Indeed, the angels often seem to be telling Dee and Kelley what they want to hear to gain their cooperation, but their reasons are not apparent.



Figure 1. Dee's wax *Sigillum Dei Aemeth*.

© The British Museum

Igitur insonz ad fons dei omnibz qui componere vult et in
compos est pmanens. sicut si quidam sunt libro Aldaraia. qui gelyt *Liber Aldaraia.*
Soyga nupari. et Soyga de Aggos libris bonis fons. q de deus noster
vniuersalis. Ipse enim deus est vniuersoru populoru. et ideo liberis fons
nomini assimilatus: quia dat originem vniuersi. et in bona veritate vni
uersos vniuersos vniuersos que sunt. est etia in bonis et malis
insonans et nota. quia plenaria veritas est. et hoc plenaria et
que loco partio vniuersi sua figura possit oriri: et etia plenaria. dicit etia

Figure 2. Excerpt from Aldaraia sive Soyga.

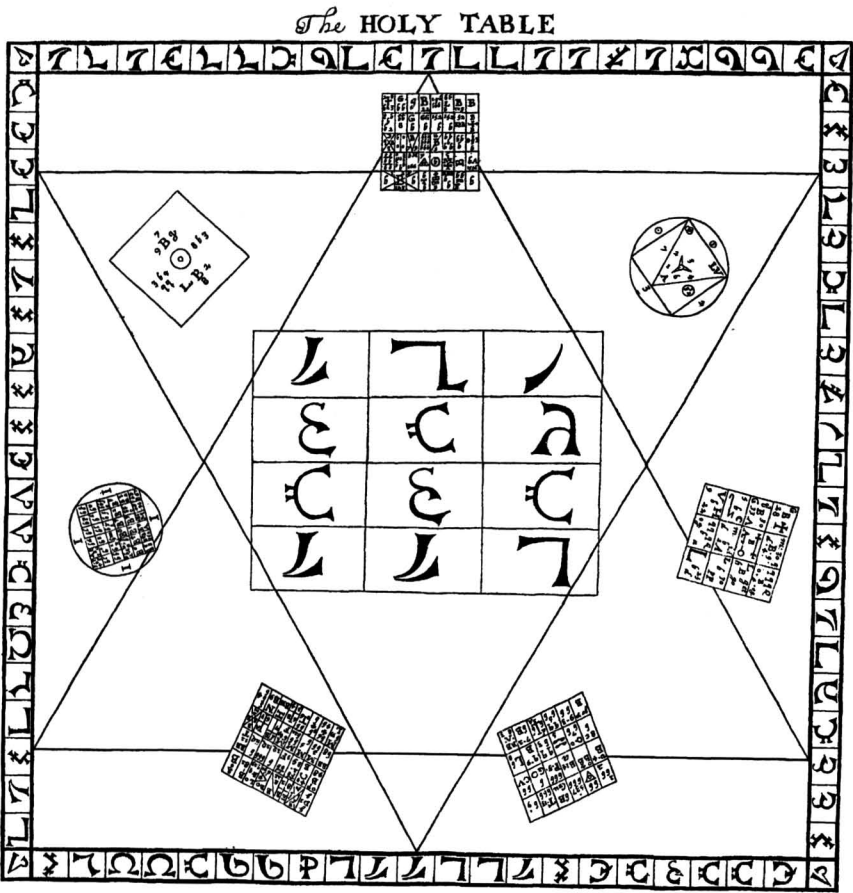
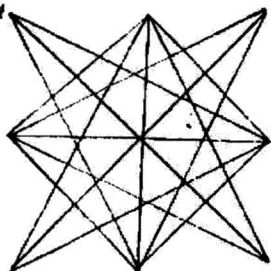


Figure 3. The Holy Table, from Causabon.

Ista figura pater mōstet
mōstet creator. Sic
creator rectū quo pro-
cedere cuncta.



Hac tria verba pater iungas rectū
creator. Cum triplici nexu, caput
in medio sibi sumat. Alterius quada
sic fiet forma rotunda.

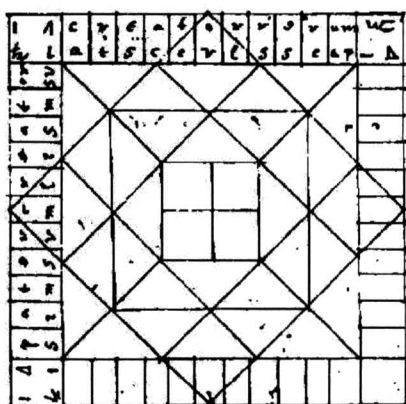


Figure 4. Diagrams from Aldaraia sive Soyga.

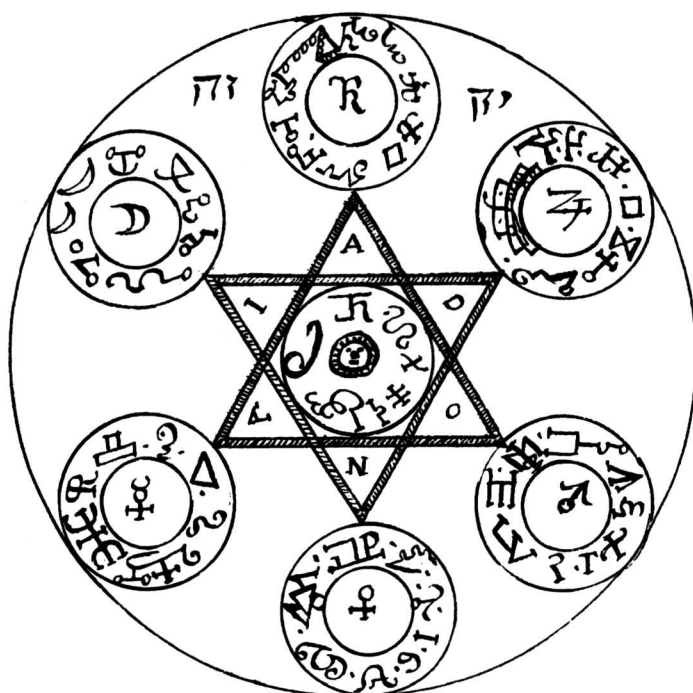


Figure 5. Art Paulina.

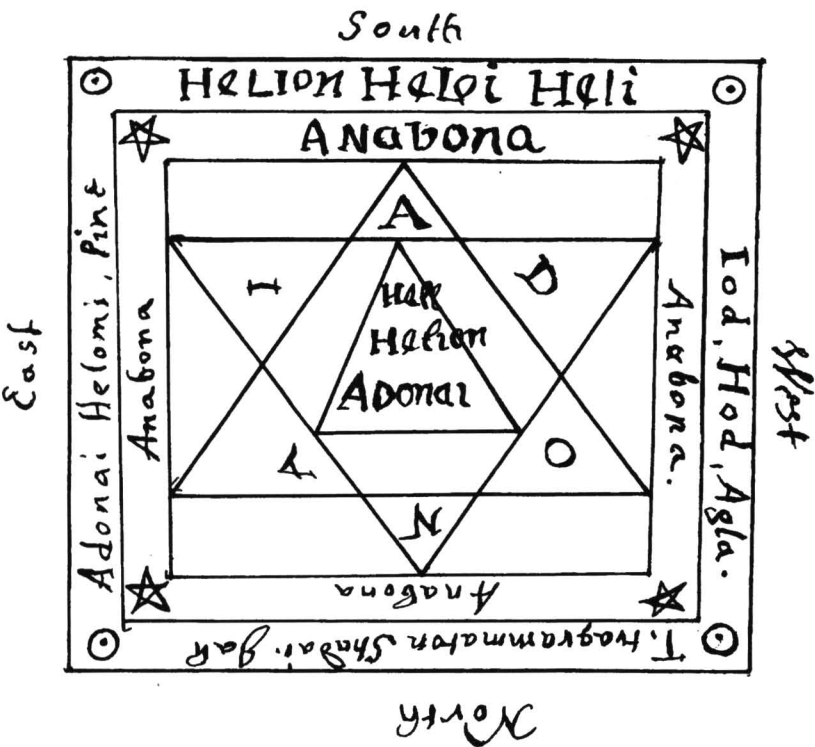


Figure 6. Ars Almadel.

PREFACE

BE IT REMEMBERED, that the 20th of August 1672, I received by the hands of my servant Samuell Story, a parcell of Dr: Dee's manuscripts, all written with his owne hand; vizt: his Conference with Angells, which first began the 22th of Dec: Anno: 1581, & continued to the end of May Anno: 1583, where the printed booke of the remaining conferences (published by Dr: Cawsabon) begins, & are bound up in this volume.

Beside these, the booke intituled, *The 48 Claves Angelicae*,¹ also, *Liber Scientia Terrestris Auxilij & Victoria*² (these two being those very individuall bookes which the angells commanded to be burnt,³ & were after restored⁴ by them as appeares by the printed Relation of Dr: Dee's Actions with Spirits pag: 418 & 419) The booke intituled *De Heptarchia Mystica Collectaneorum Lib: Primus*,⁵ and a booke of

¹ 48 Claves Angelicae: "The 48 Angelic Keys." -Ed.

² The title page of the actual manuscript reads, *Liber Scientiae, Auxilij et Victoriae Terrestris*: "The Book of Earthly Knowledge, Help, and Victory" -Ed.

³ 10 April 1586.

⁴ 30 April 1586.

⁵ The actual title page reads, *De Heptarchia Mystica (Diuinis, ipsius Creationis, stabilitæ legibus) Collectaneorum / Liber primus*: "Concerning the Mystical Heptarchy (divine, of the creation itself, with permanent rules) First Book of collected passages" -Ed.

invocations or Calls, begining with the squares filld with letters, about the black cross. These 4 bookes I have bound up in another volume.⁶

All which, were a few daies before delivered to my said servant, for my perusall (I being then at Mr: William Lillies⁷ house at Hersham in Surrey) by my good freind Mr: Thomas Wale, one of his maiesties warders in the Tower of London.

The 5th of Sept: following Mr: Wale (having heard of my retourne to towne) came to my office in the Excise Office in Broadstreete, & told me he was content to exchang all the foresaid bookes, for one of myne, viz^t: *The Institution, Lawes & Ceremonies of the most Noble Order of the Garter*, to this I agreed, and provided one, which I sent him fairely bound, & gilt on the back.⁸

On the 10th: of the said Sept: Mr: Wale came thither to me againe, & brought his wife with him, from her I received the following account of the preservation of these bookes, even till they came to my hands, viz^t: That her former husband was one Mr: Jones⁹ a confectioner, who formerly dwelt at the Plow in Lumbardstreet London, & who, shortly after they were married, tooke her with him into Adle streete among the joyners, to buy some houshold stuff, where (at the corner house) they saw a chest of cedarwood, about a yard & halfe long, whose lock & hinges, being of extraordinary neate worke, invited them to buy it. The master of the shop told them it had ben parcell of the goods of Mr: John Woodall Chirurgeon (father to Mr: Thomas Woodall late Serjant Chirurgeon to his now Maiestie King Charles the 2nd: (my intimate

⁶ Sloane 3191.

⁷ William Lilly, noted English astrologer. Born 30 April 1602. Died 9 June 1681.

⁸ "As a further testimony of the sence of Mr. Wales kindnes, shortly after his death, I sent for his son, & bestowed on him, one of my deputies places in the Excise, with an allowance of 80 £ per Annum." /E.A.

⁹ Sloane 3189 has the following three names written on a blank page, which may be these former owners: Robert Jones, Susanna Jones, George Lockehouse. -Ed.

friend) and tis very probable he bought it after Dr: Dee's death, when his goods were exposed to sale.

Twenty yeares after this (& about 4 yeares before the fatall fire of London) she & her said husband occasionally removing this chest out of its usuall place, thought they heard some loose thing rattle in it, toward the right hand end, under the box or till¹⁰ thereof, & by shaking it, were fully satisfied it was so: Hereupon her husband thrust a peece of iron into a small crevice at the bottome of the Chest, & thereupon appeared a private drawer, which being drawne out, therein were found divers bookes in manuscript, & papers, together with a litle box, & therein a chaplet of olive beades, & a cross of the same wood, hanging at the end of them.

They made no great matter of these bookes &c: because they understood them not, which occasioned their servant maide to wast about one halfe of them under pyes & other like uses, which when discovered, they kept the rest more safe.

About two yeares after the discovery of these bookes, Mr: Jones died, & when the fire of London hapned, though the chest perished in the flames, because not easily to be removed, yet the bookes were taken out & carried with the rest of Mrs: Jones her goods into Moorefields, & being brought safely back, she tooke care to preserve them; and after marrying with the foresaid Mr: Wale, he came to the knowledge of them, & thereupon, with her consent, sent them to me, as I haue before set downe.

E. Ashmole

¹⁰ till: "drawer or compartment." - Ed.

Anno 1581: 1582

Mysteriorum

Liber Primus

Mortlaci

1

Præter alias meas extemporaneas preces, et eiaculationes ad Deum vehementiores: Hæc una, maximè usitata fuit

*Oratio mea Matutina, Vespertinaque: pro Sapientia.*¹

In nomine Dei Patris, Dei Filij, Dei Spiritus Sancti.

Amen.

Omnipotens, Sempiterna, vere, et viue Deus, in adiutorium meum intende: Domine Dominantium, Rex Regum, Jeouah Zebaoth, ad adiuvandum me festina:

Gloria Deo, Patri, Filio, et spiritui Sancto: Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper et in sæcula sæculorum: Amen.

Recte sapere, et intelligere doceto me, (Ô rerum omnium Creator,) Nam Sapientia tua, totum est, quod volo: Da verbum tuum in ore meo, (Ô rerum omnium Creator,) et sapientiam tuam in corde meo fige.

O Domine Jesu Christe (qui sapientia vera es, æterni et Omnipotentis tui Patris) humilimè tuam oro Diuinam Maiestatem, expeditum mihi ut mittere digneris, alicuius pij, Sapientis expertique Philosophi auxilium, ad illa plenissimè intelligenda perficiendaque, quæ maximi valoris erunt ad tuam laudem et gloriam amplificandam: Et si Mortalis nullus iam in terris viuat, qui ad hoc munus aptus sit: vel qui ex æterna tua providentia, ad istud mihi præstandum beneficium assignatus fuerit: Tunc equidem humilimè, ardentissimè et constantissimè a tua Diuina Maiestate requiro, ut ad me de cælis mittere digneris bonos tuos Spirituales Ministros; Angelosque, videlicet Michaëlem, Gabrielem, Raphaëlem ac Urielem: et (ex Diuino tuo fauore) quoscunque, alios, veros, fidelesque tuos Angelos, qui me plene et perfecte

¹ Praeter . . . sapientia: "Besides my other frequent extemporaneous prayers and more ardent exhortations to God, this one has been most frequently used. My morning and evening prayer for wisdom." -Ed.

informent et instruant, in cognitione, intelligentiaque vera et exacta, Arcanorum et Magnalium tuorum (Creaturas omnes tuas, illarumque naturas, proprietates, et optimos usus, concernentium) et nobis Mortalibus Scitu necessariorum; ad tui nominis laudem, honorem, et gloriam; et ad solidam meam, aliorumque (per me,) plurimorum tuorum fidelium consolationem: et ad Inimicorum tuorum confusionem, et subversionem. Amen. Fiat Jeouah Zebaoth: Fiat Adonay, fiat Elohim. O beata, et superbenedicta Omnipotens Trinitas, Concedas mihi (Joanni Dee) petitionem hanc, modo tali, qui tibi maximè placebit.²

Amen.

² In nomine . . . placebit: "In the name of God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit. Amen. O almighty, eternal, true and living God, be pleased to deliver me! O Lord of Lords, King of Kings, Jehovah Zebaoth, make haste to help me!(cf. Psalm 70) Glory be to God the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit: as it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end. Amen. Teach me to perceive and understand properly (O Creator of all things), for your wisdom is all I desire. Fix your word in my ear (O Creator of all things), and fix your wisdom in my heart. O Lord Jesus Christ (you who are the true wisdom of your eternal and omnipotent Father) I most humbly beg your Divine Majesty that you consider it proper to send me the speedy help of some pious wise man and experienced philosopher for realizing and perfecting above all fully those things which will be of greatest value for increasing your praise and glory. And if no such mortal man now lives upon the earth who is fitting for this work, or who may have been assigned by your eternal providence to the performing of that service for me, then truly I most humbly, most ardently, and most faithfully ask from your divine majesty that you grant to send me down from heaven your good spiritual ministers and angels, namely Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, and also Uriel: and (from your divine favor) any other true and faithful angels of yours, who may completely and perfectly train and teach me in the true and accurate knowledge and understanding of your secrets and wonders (concerning all your creatures, and their nature, properties, and best use) and necessary knowledge for us mortals, to the praise, honor, and glory of your name, to my firm solace and otherwise (through me) the solace of the greatest number of your faithful, and to the confusion and ruin of the wicked. Amen. Let it be O Jehovah Zebaoth; let it be O Adonay; let it be O Elohim. O blessed and omnipotent Trinity, praised above all things, grant me (John Dee) this petition, in such a manner that will be most pleasing to you. Amen." -Ed.

Ab anno 1579. hoc ferè modo: Latinè, vel Anglicè; (ast circa annum 1569 alio et peculiari, particulari modo: interdum pro Raphaële, interdum pro Michaële) ad Deum præces fundere: mihi gratissimum fuit: Mirabilem in me faciat Deus Misericordiam suam.³

Amen

³ Ab anno . . . suam: "From the year 1579 in approximately this manner, in Latin or in English (and furthermore in another unique and particular manner, sometimes for Raphael, and sometimes for Michael) it was most gratifying to me to pour forth my prayers to God; may God grant me his wonderful mercy." -Ed.

Angelus, siue In=
telligentia, nunc _____
toti Mundo præ=
dominans⁵

ANNAEL

Gratiosa /
Afflicta Dei
Misericors⁶

Cæli: ut Agrippa

notat, in scala

Michael

Gabriel

Raphael

Uriel

Quaternarij⁷

11

==

==

Etymologiæ

Fortitudo Dei

Prevalescentia—

Medicina

Lux

siue præpotentia—

Dei

Dei⁸

siue Fortitudo

prævalescens—Dei

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{K} \\ \text{I} \end{array} \quad \text{et} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{K} \\ \text{I} \end{array} \bigg|$$

Anna, et Annah, obsecrantis, et confitentis
 particula est: hæc roe, non absurdè innuere
 videtur, Orantem et confitentem Deum.⁹

⁴ In Sloane 3677, this note comes before the prayer. -Ed.

⁵ Angelus . . . praedominans: “Angel or intelligence now presiding over the whole world.” -Ed.

⁶ Etymologia: Gratiōsa / Afflicta Dei / Misericors: “Etymology: Favored / Distressed of God Merciful.” Dee considered Hebrew etymology important and discusses meanings and roots of various words in various works of his. It seems he had at least a rudimentary command of Hebrew grammar as well. -Ed.

7-9 on following page

...icensia.....rig¹⁰

Ad Deum Omnipotentem Protestatio fidelis:
*ad perpetuam rei memoriam*¹¹ Anno 1582.

O God Almighty, thow knowest, & art my director, and witnes herein, That I haue from my youth up, desyred & prayed unto thee for pure & sownd wisdom and understanding of some of thy truthes naturall and artificiall: such, as by which, thy wisdom, goodnes & powre bestowed in the frame of the word might be browght, in some bowntifull measure under the Talent¹² of my Capacitie, to thy honor & glory, & the benefit

⁷ 4 Angeli ... Quaternarii: "4 angels presiding over the 4 quarters of heaven, as Agrippa notes in the Scale of the number four (*Occult Phil.*, Book 2, ch 7)." This grouping of the Archangels is common in medieval and Renaissance occult works. In *Liber Juratus*, one of the earliest books of the Solomonic school of magic, these four angels are known as the "Angels of the 4 winds." Agrippa, in his work, *De Occulta Philosophia*, book 2, chap. 7 (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1992), pp. 266, calls them the "four angels ruling over the corners of the world." The *Magical Calendar* of Tycho Brahe gives the same. Michael and Gabriel are the only two angels mentioned by name in the Old Testament. Raphael is mentioned in the apocryphal *Book of Tobit*, and Uriel is well-known in noncanonical lore. Annael is relatively unknown. -Ed.

⁸ Etymologiae: Fortitudo . . . praeualesceus: "Etymology: Michael: Strength of God; Gabriel: either made very strong or very powerful or strength of God; Raphael: Medicine of God; Uriel: Light of God." -Ed.

⁹ Anna . . . Deum: "Anna, et Annah, is a particle of the supplicant and confessor: consequently it may not be unreasonable that it indicates praying and confessing God." Dee's theory is that the name Annael derives from Hebrew "Ana" meaning "pray," or "lament." The more usual explanation of Anael is that it is equivalent to Haniel, and means "Grace of God." Johannes Trithemius, in *De Septem Secundeis* (translation in William Lilly, *Worlds Catastrophe*, London, 1647) refers to him as the "spirit of Venus." -Ed.

¹⁰ Per Sloane 3677.

¹¹ Ad Deum . . . Anno 1582: "A faithful declaration to almighty God, to the lasting account of this matter in the year 1582." -Ed.

¹² Talent: "power." -Ed.

of thy Servants, my brethern & Sintern, in, & by thy Christ our Saviour. And for as much as, many yeres, in many places, far & nere, in many bokes, & sundry languagis, I haue sowght, & studied; and with sundry men conferred, and with my owne reasonable discourse labored, whereby to fynde or get some ynckling, glyms, or beame of such the forsaid radicall truthes: But, (to be brief) after all my forsaid endeavor I could fynde no other way, to such true wisdom e atteyning, but by thy extraordinary gift: and by no vulgar Schole doctrine, or humane Invention. And, Seing, I haue red in thy bokes, & records, how Enoch enioyed thy favor and conversation, with Moyses thow wast familer: And also that to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, Josua, Gedeon, Esdras, Daniel, Tobias, and sundry other, thy good Angels were sent, by thy disposition, to instruct them, informe them, help them, yea in worldly and domesticall affaires, yea and sometimes to satisfy theyr desyres, dowtes & questions of thy Secrets: And furdernore Considering, the Shew-stone, which the high preists did use, by thy owne ordering: wherein they had lights and Judgments in theyr great dowtes: and considering also that thow (O God) didst not refuse to instruct thy prophets, (then, called Seers) to give true answers to common people of things æconomicall, as Samuel, for Saul,¹³ seeking for his fathers asses being gon astray: and of other things vulgar true predictions, whereby to wyn credyt unto thy waightier affayres: And thinking with my self, the lack of thy wisdom; to me, to be of more importance, then the Value of an Asse or two, could be to Cis, (Saul his father): And remembring what good counsaile thy Apostle James giveth, saying, *Si quis autem vestrum indiget sapientia, postulet a Deo, &c.*¹⁴ And that Salomon

¹³ I Samuel 9 is the story of Saul's consulting Samuel about his father's asses. - E.A.

¹⁴ James 1:5 *Si quis autem vestrum indiget sapientia, postulet a Deo, qui dat omnibus affluenter, et non impropert: et dabitur ei.*: "If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him." -Ed.

the wise, did so, euen immediately by thy self, attayne to his wonderfull wisdom. Therefore, seeing I was sufficiently towght and confirmed, that this wisdom could not be come by at mans hand or by humane powre, but onely from thee (Ô God) mediately¹⁵ or immediately) And having allwayes a great regarde & care to beware of the filthy abvse of such as willingly and wetingly, did invoke & consult (in diuerse sorts) Spirituall creatures of the damned sort: angels of darknes, forgers & patrons of lies & untruthes: I did fly unto thee by harty prayer, full oft, & in sundry manners: sometymes Crying unto thee, *Mittas lucem tuam et veritatem tuam, que me ducant &c.*¹⁶ sometymes *Recte sapere et intelligere doceto me, Nam sapientia tua totum est quod volo: &c.*¹⁷ sometymes, *Da verbum tuum in ore meo, et sapientiam, tuam in corde meo fige &c.*¹⁸ And having perceyued by some slight experiens with two diuerse persons, that thou hadst a speciall care to give me thy light, and truth, by thy holy and true ministers Angelic and Spirituall: and at length, hearing of one, (a master of Arte, a preacher of thy word admitted) accownted as a good Seer,¹⁹ and skryer of Spirituall apparitions, in Christalline receptacle, or in open ayre, by his practise procured: and trusting to frame him, by my earnest & faithfull prayers unto thee (my God) to some my help in my forsayd Studies: tyll, thou (o heavenly father) woldest by thy unsearchable proveydence, send me some apter man or means thereto. Thereuppon trying him and using him, I fownd great diuersity betwene

¹⁵ mediately: "through a mediator." -Ed.

¹⁶ Mittas . . . ducant &c: "May you send your light and your truth, which may lead me . . ." -Ed.

¹⁷ Recte Sapere . . . quod volo: See above. -Ed.

¹⁸ Da verbum . . . fige &c: "Fix your word in my ear, and your wisdom in my heart, etc." -Ed.

¹⁹ This third seer was Saul. -E.A.

his private usuall manner, and intente of practise, and my pure, sincere, devowte, & faithfull prayer unto thee onely. And therfore often & fervently I exhorted him to the good; and reprov'd both him, and his ministers, with my no small daunger, but that thow (in manner unhard of) didst pitch thy holy tente to my defence, and cumfert, in conflict most terrible: as thow best knowest O God, and I willed him thereupon to preach thy mercyes, & the verity of the kingly prophet his testimony, *Castrametatur Angelus Domini, in Circuitu timentium eum*.²⁰ And out of Roger Bachon his booke written *De mirabili potestate Artis et Naturae*,²¹ (where he writeth against the wycked Diuel callers) I noted unto him this sentence, *Facilius (sine comparatione a Deo²² impetrandum foret, vel a bonis spiritibus, quicquid homini utile reputare* &c²³ which my cownsayle he promised me to follow, as thow art witnes, ô our true & almighty God. And as thy good spirituall creatures neyther had delight in the man, neyther wold so playnely & preistly give me theyr answers or informations by him, that he might be hable to perceyve the pith therof: So was he at length very unwilling to here him self rebuked for his nawghtynes, and to be barred from the Mysteries of thy truthes understanding; which were the onely things that I desyred, through thy grace, o our most mercifull God. Therefore, as well for a

²⁰ This seems to be a paraphrase of Psalm 34:7: "The angel of the Lord encamps around those who fear him, and delivers them."

²¹ *De mirabili . . . Naturae*: "Concerning the wonderful power of art and of nature" -Ed.

²² *Numquid non est Deus in Israël, ut ad consulendum Beelzebub, deum Accaron. Reg. 4. cap. 1. -Δ.* "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to inquire of Beelzebub, the god of Ekron?" 2 Kings (called Reg 4, 4 Kings in the vulgate) - Ed.

²³ *Facilius . . . reputare*: "It is without doubt incomparably easier to obtain anything that is considered useful for people from God, or from good spirits [than from evil spirits]." -Ed.

Memoriall answerable to the premisses, as for the better warrant of my Such exercises to be made accownt of, hereafter: (leaving all unto thy infinite mercies, and unsearchable providence,) I haue thowght it not impertinent, to note downe, even in this place one of the last Actions, which I had with the forsayd preacher: when I made earnest & faythfull petition unto thee (o the true and Almighty God) for sending, unto my cumfort & eridition, (yf it were thy blessed will,) thy holy, & mighty Angel Annael: of whome and of all the Hierarchies heavenly all prayer honor & thanks, be rendred unto thy diuine maistie: now & euer: & worlde without ende. Amen. Amen. Amen.

Anno 1581 Decembris 22. Mane²⁴ Mortlak

Δ: After my fervent prayers made to God, for his mercifull cumfort and instruction, throwgh the ministry of his holy and myghty Angel, named Anael,²⁵ (yf it wer his diuine pleasure) I willed, the Skryer, (named Saul) to loke into my great Chrystaline Globe, yf God had sent his holy Angel Anael, or no: And Saul lokng into my forsayd stone, (or Chrystall Globe) for to espie Anael, he saw there one,²⁶ which answered to that name. But being earnestly requested of me to tell the Truthe yf he were Anaël, An other did appere very bewtifull, with apparell yellow, glittering, like gold: and his hed had beames like ster beams, blasing, and spredding from it; his eyes fyrie. He wrote in the stone very much in hebrue letters, and the letters seamed all transparent

²⁴ Mane: "in the morning." -Ed.

²⁵ AÑAËL.

²⁶ Note, An illuding intruder, even at the first, putting him self, as an angel of light. Take hede allwayes of undue securitie.

gold: which, Saul was not able eyther presently to reade, that I might write after his voyce, neyther to imitate the letters in short tyme. A bright ster, did go up and down by him. There appeared allso a white dog, with a long hed.²⁷ And many other visions appeared, with this second: The first being voyded quite away. Thereuppon I sayd, as followeth,

Δ: In nomine Jesu Christi, Quis tu es?²⁸ He answered to Saul his hearing.

AN: Potestas omnis, in me sita est.²⁹

Δ: Quæ?³⁰

AN: Bona, et mala.³¹

Δ: Then appeared in the stone, these two letters **M. G.** I then axing him some questions, de Thesauro abscondito:³² He answered,

AN: Ne perturbes: Nam hæ sunt Nugæ.³³

And withall appeared many dedd mens skulls, on his left hand. He sayd to me,

AN: Ubi est potestas tua?³⁴

²⁷ There appered a great number of dead mens skulls, likewise.

²⁸ In nomine . . . tu es: "In the name of Jesus Christ, who are you?" This is a standard first question for interrogating spirits. "Let him first require his name, and if he be called by any other name" (pseudo-?) Agrippa's *Fourth Book of Occult Philosophy*, ed. Robert Turner (London: Askin Publishers, 1978), p. 67. -Ed.

²⁹ "Potestas . . . est: "All power is placed in me." -Ed.

³⁰ Quæ?: "Which?" -Ed.

³¹ Bona et mala: "good and bad." -Ed.

³² De Thesauro abscondita: "regarding hidden treasure." -Ed.

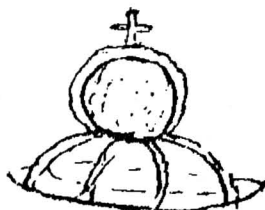
³³ Ne perturbes ... Nugæ: "Don't bother, for these are trifles." -Ed.

³⁴ Ubi . . . tua?: "By whom is your power?" -Ed.

Δ: Cur quæris de potestate aliqua mea?³⁵

AN: Cur? Signifi, non mihi placet.³⁶

Δ: I, thereuppon, set by him, the stone in the frame:

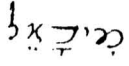


and sayd,

Δ: An bonus aliquis Angelus, assignatus est huic speculo?³⁷

AN: Etiam.³⁸

Δ: Quis?³⁹

AN:  He answered, by the shew of these letters in the stone.

Δ: Bonus ne ille Angelus, de quo in scripturis fit mentio?⁴⁰

AN: Maximè.⁴¹

³⁵ Cur . . . mea?: “Why do you ask about my power?” -Ed.

³⁶ Cur . . . placet: “Why? It means you haven’t satisfied me.” - Ed.

³⁷ An bonus . . . speculo?: “Is there any good angel assigned to this speculum/mirror?” - Ed.

³⁸ Etiam: “Yes, certainly.” -Ed.

³⁹ Quis? “Who?” -Ed.

⁴⁰ Bonus . . . mentio: “Isn’t this the good angel mentioned in scripture?” [i.e. Michael]-Ed.

⁴¹ Maxime: “Absolutely.” -Ed.

Δ: Fieri ne potest, quòd ego eundem videam, et cum illo agam?⁴²

AN: Ita.⁴³ And therewith appeared this character –



Δ: Quid per hoc, significare velis?⁴⁴

AN: Alterius Angeli character est.⁴⁵

Δ: Cur hîc, et nunc ostendis?⁴⁶

AN: Causam ob magnam.⁴⁷ Make an ende: It shalbe declared, but not by me.

Δ: By whome then?

AN: By him that is assigned to the stone: but not, tyll after the feast. And then thou must prepare thyself, to prayer and fasting.⁴⁸

In the Name of God, be Secret: and in all thy doings praying, tyll thou hast thy desyre: which shall not be far of. After Newyeres tyde, Deale, But not on the Sabaoth day. Pray contynually. When it shall pleas god, to stir thee up, Then procede. In the brightest day, When the Sonne shyneth: In the morning, fasting, begynne to pray. In the Sonne Set the stone. Deale both Kneeling, and sitting. I haue done for this tyme.

My name is ANNAEL.

I will speak ones more to thee: and than farewell: for thou shalt not haue me any more.

⁴² Fieri . . . agam?: “May I not see and deal with him?” -Ed.

⁴³ Ita: “yes” -Ed.

⁴⁴ Quid . . . velis: “What do you wish to show by this?” -Ed.

⁴⁵ Alterius . . . est: “It is the character of another angel.” -Ed.

⁴⁶ Cur . . . ostendis?: “Why do you show this now, and on this occasion?” -Ed.

⁴⁷ Causam ob magnam: “For a great reason.” -Ed.

⁴⁸ In margin: “Prayer / Fasting.” -Ed.

Be not to hasty in wrath.

Δ: Is this, that, you ment to speak?

AN: I. Do good to all men. God hath sufficient for thee, and for all men.

Farewell.

Δ: Gloria patri et filio et spiritui sancto. Sicut erat in principio, et nunc et semper: et in sæcula sæculorum.⁴⁹

Amen.

Δ: Remember, that diuerse other particulars, mowght haue byn Noted of this dayes Action: but these may suffice: And yet it is not to be forgotten, that as he sayd his name was Annael (with a dubble n) so he allso confessed himself to be the same Annaël which is *prepositus orbis veneris*:⁵⁰ and allso Chief governor Generall of this great period, as I haue Noted in my boke of *Famous and rich Discoveries*.⁵¹

Consider and Remember: That this Note, of the Action, (had with holy ANNAEL), is, of prince Befafes, (otherwise called Obelison) accountned as the Prolog of my first boke of mysticall exercises Anno 1582. Nouembris 20. Vide post.

⁴⁹ Gloria . . . saeculorum: "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit, as it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end." -Ed.

⁵⁰ Prepositus orbis veneris: "Governor of the planet Venus." -Ed.

⁵¹ This book only survives in fragments as Cotton MS. Vitellius. C. VII, art. 3. in the British Library. -Ed.

At Mortlak

In nomine Jesv CHRISTI.⁵² Amen.

Anno 1582. Martij die. 10. hora 11¼ Ante meridiem. Saterdag

Δ: One⁵³ Mr. Edward Talbot cam to my howse,⁵⁴ and he being willing and desyrus to see or shew some thing in spirituall practise, wold haue had me to haue done some thing therein. And I truely excused myself therein as not in the, vulgarly accownted Magik, neyther studied, or exercised: But confessed my self, long tyme to haue byn desyrus to haue help in my philosophicall studies throwgh the Cumpany and information of the blessed Angels of God. And thereuppon, I browght furth to him, my stone in the frame,



(which was given me of a frende) and I sayd unto him, that I was credibly informed, that to it (after a sort) were answerable *Aliqui Angeli boni*.⁵⁵ And allso that I was ones willed by a Skryer, to call for the good Angel Anchor, to appere in that stone to my owne sight. And therefore I desyred him to call him: and (yf he wold) Anachor and Anilos likewise, accownted good Angels, for I was not prepared thereunto. &c. He than

⁵² In nomine Jesu Christi: "In the name of Jesus Christ." -Ed

⁵³ Pseudonym for Edward Kelley. -Ed.

⁵⁴ Note: he had two dayes before made the like demaunde and request unto me: but he went away unsatisfiyed for his comming was to entrap me, yf I had had any dealing with wicked spirits as he confessed often tymes after: and that he was set on, &c.

⁵⁵ *Aliqui Angeli boni*: "some good angels." -Ed.

settled him self to the Action: and on his Knees att my desk (setting the stone before him) fell to prayer and entreaty &c. In the mean space, I, in my Oratory did pray, and make motion to god, and his good Creatures for the furthering of this Action. And within one quarter of an howre (or less) he had sight of one in the stone. but he still expected for two more: deeming this to be one of the three (namely Anchor Anachor Anilos). But I then cam to him, to the stone: And after some thanks to God, and Wellcome to the good Creature, used, I required to know his name. And he spake plainly, (to the hearing of E.T.) that his name is URIEL.

Δ: Are you one of them (sayd I, John Dee) that are answerable, (uppon due observations performed) to this stone?

URIEL: I am.

Δ: Are there any more besyde you?

UR: Michaël and Raphaël. But, *Michaël est princeps in operibus nostris.*⁵⁶

Δ: Ys my boke, of Soyga,⁵⁷ of any excellency?

UR: Liber ille, erat Adæ in Paradiso reuelatus, per Angelos Dei bonos.⁵⁸

Δ: Will you give me any instructions, how I may read those Tables of Soyga?

UR: I can - But *solus Michaël illius libri est interpretator.*⁵⁹

Δ: I was told, that after I could read that boke, I shold liue but two yeres and a half.

UR: Thow shallt liue an Hundred and od yeres.⁶⁰

⁵⁶ Michael . . . nostris: "Michael is the foremost in our works." -Ed.

⁵⁷ Soyga, Soiga = agyos. -E.A. Agios is Greek for holy. Two copies of this book have been identified. One is Bodleian Ms. 908, and the other is British Library Sloane manuscript 8. See the introduction for more detail. -Ed.

⁵⁸ Liber . . . bonos: "That book was revealed to Adam in Paradise by the good angels of God." -Ed.

⁵⁹ solus . . . interpretator: "Michael alone is the interpretor of that book." -Ed.

Δ: What may I, or must I do, to haue the sight, and presence, of Michael, that blessed Angel?

UR: Præsentias nostras postulate et invoke, sinceritate et humilitate. Et Anchor, Anachor, et Anilos, non sunt in hunc Lapidem invocandi.⁶¹

Δ: Oh, my great and long desyre hath byn to be hable to read those Tables of Soyga.

UR: Hæc maximè respiciunt Michaëlem. Michaël est Angelus, qui illuminat gressus tuos. Et hæc revelantur in virtute et veritate non vi.⁶²

Δ: Is there any speciall tyme, or howre to be observed, to deale for the enioying of Michael?

UR: *Omnis hora, est hora nobis.*⁶³

Δ: After this, there appered⁶⁴ in the stone a strange seale, or Characterismus of this fashion ensuing:

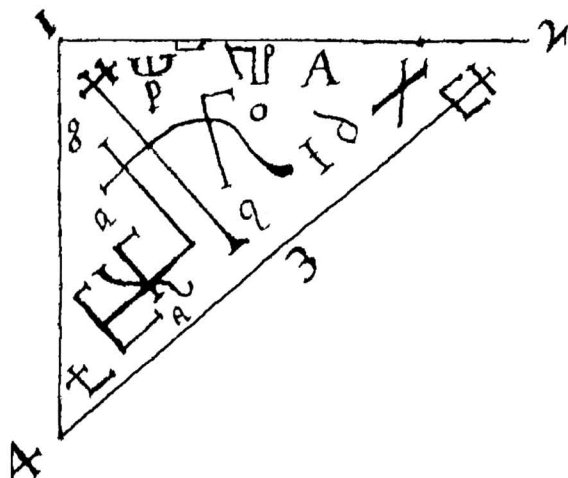
⁶⁰ Dee lived to be 81. -Ed.

⁶¹ Praesentias . . . invocandi: "Request and invoke our appearance with sincerity and humility. And Anchor, Anachor, and Anilos are not to be called into this stone." -Ed.

⁶² Haec . . . non vi: "These things mostly involve Michael. Michael is the angel who illuminates your path. And these things are revealed in virtue and truth, not by force." -Ed.

⁶³ Omnis . . . nobis: "Every hour is our hour." -Ed.

⁶⁴ An illuding spirit straight way intruded him self, and this character: as may appere *Libri Quinti Appendice* where the character is described exactly.



Δ: What is the intente, or use of this?

UR:⁶⁵ *Sigillum hoc in auro sculpendum, ad defensionem corporis, omni loco, tempore et occasione: et in pectus gestandum.*⁶⁶

Δ: So we ceased, with thanks to god: and I mused much uppon this Action: and layd all up in mynde, and writing.

Δ: *Soli Deo Honor omnis, et gloria.*⁶⁷

Amen.

The same Saterdag after none. Hora. 5.

Δ: After that Mr. E.T. had called Uriel, and I was come to the stone and had used a short speche of thanks giving to God: I then required some instruction for the purpose of Soyga.

⁶⁵ In margin: This was not True Uriel as may appere Anno 1583: May 5. -Ed.

⁶⁶ Sigillum . . . gestandum: "Engrave this sigil in gold, for protecting the body in all places, times, and occasions: and it is to be worn on the chest." -Ed.

⁶⁷ Soli . . . gloria: "All honor and glory to God alone." -Ed.

UR: Peace. You must use Michaël.

Δ: I know no meanes or order to use in the invoking of Michaël.⁶⁸

UR: He is to be invocated by certayn of the psalmes of Daud, and prayers. The which psalmes, are nothing els, but a means unto the seat and Maiestie of God: whereby you gather with your selues due powre, to apply your natures to the holy Angels. I mean the psalmes, commonly called the Seven psalmes.⁶⁹ You must use pleasant sauours: with hand and hart: whereby you shall allure him and wynn him (thorowgh Gods fauour) to attayne unto the thing, you haue long sowght for. There must be Coniunction of myndes in prayer, betwyxt you two, to God Continually. Yt is the wyll of God, that you shold, ioinctly, haue the knowledge of his Angells to-gither. You had atteyned unto the sight of Michaël, but for the imperfection of Saul. Be of good Cumfort.

Δ: The chayre cam into the stone againe: and I axed what it ment.

UR: This is a seat of perfection: from the which, things shall be shewed unto thee, which thou hast long desyred.

Δ: Then was there a square Table browght into the stone: and I demaunded, what that Table betokened.

UR: A Myserie, not yet to be known. These two, shall remayn in the stone, to the sight of all undefyled creatures.

You must use a fowre square Table, two cubits square: Where uppon must be set *Sigillum Dei*,⁷⁰ which is allready perfected⁷¹ in a booke of thyne: Blessed be God, in all his Myseries, and Holy in all his works. This seal must not be lokd on, without great reuerence and

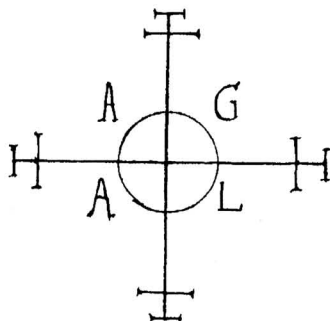
⁶⁸ Note: In this time there appered in the stone, a riche chayre: and after a little while, it was out of sight.

⁶⁹ That is, Psalms 6, 32, 38, 51, 102, 130, and 143 (the Vulgate numbers them 6, 31, 37, 50, 101, 129, and 142). –Ed.

⁷⁰ *Sigillum Dei*: “Sigil (or seal) of God.” –Ed.

⁷¹ In margin: *Erronicè, contra ignorantiam meam. vide post.* –Δ (Erroneously, to my ignorance. See below.) –Ed.

deuotion. This seale is to be made of perfect wax. I mean, wax, which is clean purified: we haue no respect of cullours. This seal must be 9 ynches in diameter: The rowndnes must be 27 ynches, and somewhat more. The Thicknes of it, must be of an ynche and half a quarter, and a figure of a crosse, must be on the back-side of it, made thus:



The Table is to be made of swete wood: and to be of two Cubits high: with 4 feete: with 4 of the former seales under the 4 feet.

Δ: The fashion of the 4 feet, standing uppon the foresayd rownd seales, was shewed: so as the uttermost circle conteyning the letters, did seme to be clean without⁷² the cumpas of the fete, equally rownd about the same fete. And these seales were shewed much lesser than the principall seal.⁷³ Under the Table did seme to be layd red sylk, two yardes square. And ouer the seal, did seme likewise red sylk to lye fowr square: somewhat broader then the Table, hanging down with 4 knops or tassells at the 4 corners thereof.

Uppon this uppermost red silk, did seme to be set the stone with the frame: right ouer, and uppon the principall seal: sauing that the sayd sylk was betwene the one and the other.

⁷² Note this point.

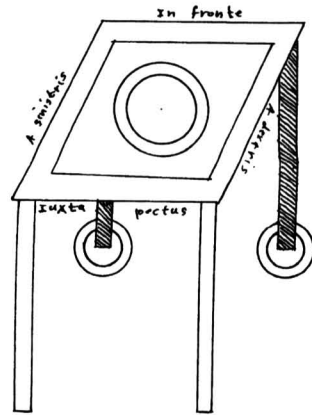
⁷³ Two smaller seals are preserved in the British Museum. They measure 125mm in diameter, and are 20mm thick. The holy table itself measured 36¼ inches by 35⅞ inches, was 31½ inches high. -Ed.

The Table was shewed to haue on the fowre sides of it, Characters⁷⁴ and names, these, that are here in a schedule annexed, in 4 diuerse rowes.

UR: The characters and words on the sides of the square Table, are to be written with yellow, made of perfect oyle, used in the church.

Δ: What oyle is that?

UR: That oyle shalbe opened unto you. The oyle, is perfect prayers: of other oyle I haue no respect. We sanctifie, bycause we are holy: and you sanctify bycause of your holines.



UR: There is a spirit, named Lundrumguffa using you who seketh your destruction, in the hatred of men, in the hurt of thy goods. Discharge him to morrow with Brymstone.⁷⁵ He haunteth thy howse, and seketh the destruction of thy dowghter. His pretence was to haue maymed thee in thy Sholder the last night, and long ago. Yf thou do not dischargd him to morrow, he will hurt, both thy wife and thy dowghter.⁷⁶

He is here now.⁷⁷

Giue him a generall discharge from your familie and howse. He will seke Sauls death, who is accursed.⁷⁸

⁷⁴ Caue: quia angelus tenebrarum se intrusit hic ut libri Quinti appendice apparavit. -Δ. "Beware: an angel of darkness intruded itself here as is shown in the appendix to the fifth book." In fronte: "in front"; iuxta pectus: "near the chest"; a sinistris: "on the left"; a dextris: "on the right." -Ed.

⁷⁵ Brimstone (sulfur) was commonly used in exorcisms. For the binding of Asmodeus by Raphael, see *The Book of Tobit* 3.17. -Ed.

⁷⁶ Dee's daughter Katherine was nine months old at the time. -Ed.

⁷⁷ Note: So is it evident who went about to hinder the truth before in the character, and in the border of the Table, falsely counterfeiting &c as it also in the next action may appere.

⁷⁸ Saul in danger of being carried away quick. -Δ. Quick: "alive." -Ed.

Δ: I know no means, or art to do this by. For I did burn in flame of Brymstone, Maherion his name and Character, whan I fownd Saul priuillie dealing with him (which manner of wicked dealing I had oft forbydden him) and yet he cam after, and wold haue carryed Saul away quick: as Robert Hilton, George,⁷⁹ and other of my howse can testify.

UR: The cursed will come to the cursed.

Δ: I besече you to discharge him: and to bynde him somewhere far of, as Raphael did (for Thobias sake) with the wycked spirit Asmodeus.

UR: But Thobias did his part.⁸⁰ Art is vayne, in respect of God his powre. Brymstone is a mean.

Δ: Whan shall I do this?

UR: To morrow at the tyme of prayers.

Δ: *Gloria Patri et filio et Spiritui Sancto,*

*sicut &c.*⁸¹ Amen.

1582 Martij 11

*Sonday. a Meridie hora .3. a circiter.*⁸²

Δ: Uriel being called by E.T. there appeared one, clothed with a long robe, of purple: all spanged with gold, and on his hed, a garland, or wreath of gold: his eyes sparkling: of whome I axed Whether the characters noted for the Table, wer perfect: He answered,

⁷⁹ George was a servant of Dee's. Dee's diary states that goodman Hilton requested lodging for his two sons in Dee's house in 1579, and that Robert Hilton came to his service 4 October 1581. -Ed.

⁸⁰ See Tobit 3.17 and 8.3.

⁸¹ Gloria . . . sicut: "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit, as . . . etc." -Ed.

⁸² "Around 3 in the morning." -Ed.

They are perfect:⁸³ There is no question.

Δ: Are you Uriel?

Than presently⁸⁴ cam in One, and threw the brave⁸⁵ spirit down by the sholders: and bet him mightyly with a whip: and toke all his robes, and apparell of him: and then he remayned all heary and owggly: and styll the spirit was beaten of him, who cam-in after him. And that spirit, which so bet him, sayd to the hearing of my Skryer,

Lo, thus are the wycked skourged.

Δ: Are you Uriel, who speaketh that?

Uri: I am he. Write down and mark this: for it is worthy of the Noting.

This was thy persecutor Lundrumguffa. I browght him hither to let thee see, how God hath ponished thy enemy.⁸⁶

Lo, thus, hath God delt for thee: Lo thus haue I delt for thee: Thank God.

Δ: Blessed be his holy name; and extolled, world with out ende.

E.T: He drew the wycked spirit away, by the leggs, and threw him into a great pitt, and washed his hands, as it were, with the sweat of his own hed: for he seamed to be all in a sweat.

Δ: Here-uppon, my skryer saw Uriel go away: and he remayned out of sight a little while. **Then he cam-in agayn: and an other with him: and iointly these two said to gither, Glorifie God for euer. And than Uriel did stand behinde: and the other did set down in the chayre, with a sworde in his right hand: all his hed glystring⁸⁷ like the sonne.** The heare of his hed was long. He had wings: and all his lower parts seamed

⁸³ Hereby may appere that this wycked spirit foysted in the shew of the fals character and names before.

⁸⁴ Presently: "at once." -Ed.

⁸⁵ Brave: "splendid." - Ed.

⁸⁶ Note: Lundrumguffa skourged spiritually.

⁸⁷ Glystring: "brilliant." -Ed.

to be with feathers. He had a roab ouer his body: and a great light in his left hand. He sayd,

Michaël: We are blessed from the begynning: and blessed be the name of God for euer.

Δ: My skryer saw an innumerable Cumpany of Angels abowt him: And Uriel did lean on the square Table by. He that sat in the chayre (whom we take to be Michaël) sayd Than,

Go forward: God hath blessed thee.

I will be thy Guyde.

Thow shaltt attayne unto thy serching.

The World begynnes with thy doings.

Prayse God.

The Angels under my powre, shall be at thy commaundement. Lo, I will do thus much for thee.

Lo, God will do thus much for thee.

Thow shalt see me: and I will be seen of thee.

And I will direct thy liuing and conversation.

Those that sowght thy life,⁸⁸ are vanished away.

Put up thy pen.

Δ: So he departed.

Δ: Gloria, laus, honor, virtus et Imperium Deo immortalī, invisibili, et Omnipotenti, in sæcula sæculorum.⁸⁹

Amen.

⁸⁸ Lundrumguffa.

⁸⁹ Gloria . . . saeculorum: "Glory, praise, honor, virtue, and sovereignty to the immortal, invisible, and almighty God, forever and ever." –Ed.

Martij 14. Wensday. mane circa horam 9ã.

Δ: Being desirous to procede in this matter, by consent, we bent our selues to the Action. And after that E.T. had called Uriel and saw him, I cam to the desk from my oratorie. There did contynually appeare, the chayre and the Table. I than being affrayde that any other shold come into the stone, instead of Uriel, did earnestly require the spirituall creature appearing, to shew who he was, and what was his name: At length he answered, and sayde to the hearing of E.T.,

Uriel is my name, with diuerse called Nariel.⁹⁰

Stay.

Δ: Then he went away, for a while: and cam agayn, and sayd thus,

Ur: The strength of God, is allwayes with thee. Dost thou know, what thou writest?

Δ: In two senses, I may understand it: eyther that the good Angel Gabriel⁹¹ is allwayes with me, thowgh invisibly: or els, that the strength, and mighty hand of God, allwayes is my defense.

Ur: *Fortitudo Dei, tecum semper est.*⁹²

Δ: He went away agayn, and cam agayn, following or wayting uppon an other: and before that other, was a man hauing his hed all couered with blak. Then he that cam so in the middle, did sit down in the chayre, and spake this worde following:

Mi: Note.

⁹⁰ Agrippa hath so, cap. 24, Lib. 3, *Occult. Phil.* -Δ. Cornelius Agrippa, *De Occulta Philosophia*, p. 471. Here Agrippa lists the four princes of the angels as Michael, Raphael, Gabriel, and Nariel (also known as Uriel). They rule over the four winds and the four parts of the world (East, West, North, and South respectively). -Ed.

⁹¹ Potius erat dicendum Michaël: Nam Gabriel est Praeualescentia Dei: et ita, fortitudo quidem, sed altioris gradus. -Δ. ("Rather Michael was indicated: For Gabriel is the Predominance of God: and therefore also the strength, but to another degree." -Ed.)

⁹² Fortitudo . . . est: "The strength of God is always with you." -Ed.

Δ: This was Michael, with his sword in his right hand. Then cam Uriel to the man (hauing his hed all hyd, as it were in a blak hode) and toke-of that blak hode: and then lifted-up the Table cloth. He looked under it, and put it down againe: and lifted it up again. The man stode still before Michael. Then Michael rose; and toke-of all the mans clothes, and left him, as it were, onely in his shirt. Then Uriel toke a little rownd Tablet, as it were, of the bignes of a sixpence, hauing two letters in it, thus:



and gaue it to Michaël. Uriel lifted up the Table cloth: and, from thence, seamed to take apparaile, and put on the man. It semed to be sylk: and very full of wrynkles, or plights. And the man kneeled, and held-up his hands. Uriel toke like a lawrell bush, and set uppon the mans hed. And than the man kneeled before Michaël. Michaël toke the rownd thing, with the letters: and gaue it the man to eat: and he did eat it.

Ur: Lo, things are covered.

Δ: Then he couered the Table and pluckt the cloth over it, down to the grownd, on euery side. The man rose up: And Michaël dubbed him on the hed with his sworde. Then the man stode-up. Then the man turned his face toward E.T. the skryer: and the man did resemble me (John Dee) in cowntenance. And then he turned to Michaël agayn. Michael wrote uppon the mans back, thus,

*ANGELVS TVÆ PROFESSIONIS.*⁹³

Δ: Then E.T. asked me, yf there were such Angels of a mans Profession: and I answered yea; as in Agrippa⁹⁴ and other, is declared.

Mi: Leaue your folly: Hold thy peace. Haue you not red, that they that cleaue unto God, are made like unto him.

⁹³ Angelus tuae professionis: "Angel of your profession." -Ed.

⁹⁴ Vide Agrippam de Triplici hōis custode. Lib.3: cap.22. -Δ. Cornelius Agrippa, *De Occulta Philosophia*, book 3, chap. 22, p. 465. Here Agrippa states that

Δ: Yes, forsooth.

Mic: Thow camst hither to lern, and not to dispute. *Laudate Dominum in operibus suis.*⁹⁵

Δ: The man kneled down, and so went out of sight.

Mi: He hath eaten strength against trubble: He hath eaten nothing: and in eating, he hath eaten all things. The name⁹⁶ NA, be prayed in trubbles.

Δ: Now Michael thrust out his right arme, with the sword: and bad the skryer to loke. Then his sword did seame to cleaue in two: and a great fyre, flamed out of it, vehemently. Then he toke a ring out of the flame of his sworde: and gaue it, to Uriel: and sayd, thus:

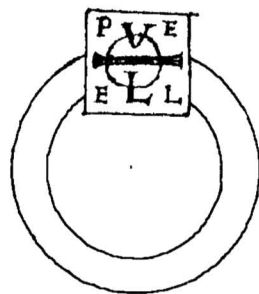
Mic: The strength of God, is unspeakable. Prayed be god for euer and euer.

Δ: Then Uriel did make cursy unto him.

Mi: After this sort, must thy ring be: Note it.

Δ: Then he rose, or disapeared, out of the chayre, and by and by, cam again, and sayde, as followeth.

Mi: I will reveale thee this ring: which was never revealed since the death of Salomon: with whom I was present. I was present with him in strength, and mercy. Lo, this it is. This is it, wherewith all Miracles, and diuine works and wonders were wrowght by Salomon: This is it, which I haue revealed unto thee. This is it, which Philosophie dreameth of. This is it, which the Angels skarse know. This is it, and blessed be his Name: yea, his Name be blessed for euer.



everyone is assigned three angelic keepers or preservers: one that is holy, another of the nativity, and another of the profession. -Ed.

⁹⁵ Laudate . . . suis: "Praise the Lord for his works." -Ed.

⁹⁶ Vide Reuclini *de Verbo Mirifico*, de nomine NA.

Δ: Then he layd the Ring down uppon the Table: and sayd,

Note.

Δ: It shewed to be a Ring of Gold: with a seale graued in it: and had a rownd thing in the myddle of the seale and a thing like a V, throwgh the top of the circle: and an L, in the bottome: and a barr ——— cleane throwgh it: And had these fowre letters in it, P E L E.⁹⁷

After that, he threw the ring on the borde, or Table: and it semed to fall throwgh the Table: and then he sayde, thus,

Mi: So shall it do, at thy commaundement.

Without this, thou shalt do nothing.⁹⁸ Blessed be his name, that cumpasseth all things: Wonders are in him, and his Name is WONDERFVLL: His Name worketh wonders from generation, to generation.

Δ: Then he went away: and cam-in agayn by and by.

Mi: Note.

Δ: Then he browght-in the Seale, which he shewed the other day: and opened his sworde, and bad the skryer, reade, and he red, EMETH.⁹⁹

⁹⁷ Vide Reuclini Librum *de Verbo Mirifico* de nomine PELE.

⁹⁸ The use of the ring.

⁹⁹ De sigillo Emeth, vide Reuclini *Artem Cabalisticam*, lib.3. et Agrippam lib. 3. cap.11. -Δ. “Concerning the seal Emeth, see Johann Reuchlin, *On the Art of the Kabbalah*, book 3.” Translated by Martin and Sarah Goodman, (Lincoln , NE: University of Nebraska Press, 1983), pp. 284, 287: “They assert that *En Sof* is alpha and omega, for he said: ‘I am the first and the last.’ They say too that the ‘Crown’ of the kingdom is the bottomless fount of all the ages and the Father of mercies, whose mystery is that he seals up Essence through Truth. As our noble teacher Eliezer haKaliir says: ‘Truth is his seal.’ This can be proved by arithmetical calculation. If we multiply *Ehieh* (meaning ‘essence’) by *Ehieh* we will get 441, which is the same as *Emeth*, the word for ‘true’ or ‘truth,’ and the same as *Adonai Shalom*, which means ‘Lord of Peace.’” Compare with Joseph Gikatilla (b. 1248), *Gates of Light*, translated by Avi Weinstein (San Francisco: Harper Collins Publishers, 1994), p. 222: “Thus the Sages said ‘EMeT is the seal of the Holy One, Blessed be He.’ . . . Therefore, upon His seal is written EMeT, to teach you that all the hosts of letters from the first aleph to the [but not including] mem

Then the sword closed up agayn: and he sayde,

Mi: This I do open unto thee, bycause thow mervayledst at SIG-ILLVM DEI. This is the Name of the Seale: Which be blessed for euer. This is the seale self. This is Holy: This is pure: This is for euer. Amen.

Δ: Then the seale vanished away. And I sayd to my frende (the Skryer) In dede, this other day, I considered diuerse fashions of the seal: and I fownd them much differing, one from an other: and therfore I had nede to know, which of them I shall imitate: or how to make one perfect of them all.

Mi: Dowt not for the making of it: for God hath perfyted all things. Ask not the cause of my absence, nor of my apparell: for that Mysterie, is known to God. I haue no cloathing, as thow thy self shalt see. I am a Spirit of Truth, and Vertue.¹⁰⁰ Yea you shall see me in Powre, and I will viset you in HOPE. Bless you the Lorde, and follow his wayes, for euer.

Δ: Then he went away: and Uriel followed him. And then I sayde to my skryer: It were good, we had euer some watch-word, when we shold not loke for any more matter at theyr hands, euery tyme of theyr visitting of us. Whereuppon, (unlooked-for, of us,) he spake agayn.

Mi: We lead tyme, Tyme leadeth not us:

Put up thy pen.

The Name of God, be blessed for euer.

Δ: Then they lifted up theyr hands to heuenward (which heven, appeared allso in the stone) and turned toward us, and sayd,

Valete.¹⁰¹

[which is in the middle of the alphabet] look to bring favour . . .” See the introduction for a discussion of the seal Emeth. Note also that all three names, “NA,” “Emeth,” and “PELE” are found in Agrippa, *De Occulta Philosophia*, book 3, chapter 11, p. 434. -Ed.

¹⁰⁰ Virtue, also “power.” -Ed.

¹⁰¹ Valete: “Farewell.” -Ed.

Δ: So they departed: and at theyr going, the chayr, and the Table, in the stone, did seme to shake.

Δ: Soli Deo omnis honor Laus et Gloria.¹⁰²

Amen.

Martij 15. Thursday. Hora 1¼ a meridie.

Δ: After E.T. his calling into the stone, appeared a tall man, with a sceptre (very great) of gold, glittering. His body all red: and out of his hed, did shote out beames of light, like the sonne beames.

Δ: Being desirous, to know who he was, and his name, I requested him earnestly thereto. But he answered, as followeth,

Invoke nomen Domini, et agnoscetis eum.¹⁰³

Δ: Then I prayed the psalme, Deus misereatur nostri, et benedicat nobis &c.¹⁰⁴ After that, he sayd,

I am mighty.

Δ: Bycause he delayed to declare his name, E.T. the skryer did require him, in the name of God the father, Jesus Christ his sonne, and of the holy ghost, to express his name: and he answered in speche.

So I will by and by.

Δ: Then he seamed to take from his hed little bright sparcks, like little candells endes: and to stick them abowt the chayre: and he went rownd abowt the chayre: and than he spake, as followeth,

I am mighty, and working wonders: I am SALAMIAN.¹⁰⁵ I rule in

¹⁰² Soli . . . Gloria: "All honor, praise, and glory to God alone." -Ed.

¹⁰³ Invoke . . . eum: "Invoke the name of the Lord, and acknowledge him." -Ed.

¹⁰⁴ Psalm 67.1: Deus . . . nobis: "May God be gracious to us and bless us." -Ed.

¹⁰⁵ Of Salamian you may rede, in the call, Diei Dominicae in *Elementis Magicis* Petri de Abano, there called Salamia. -Δ. *Elementis Magici*: "Magical Elements," by

the hevens, and beare sway uppon erth in his name, who be blessed for euer. Thow doost dowt at me. I am the servant of God, in his light: I serve him. I say, I serve him, with feare and reverence. My name is SALAMIAN: Mighty in the Sonne, worker of wordly actions, as well internall, as externall: known unto God: whose name I know, and bless for euer.

Δ: Then appeared a big flame of fyre by him in the ayre.

Sal: Thow knowest not, or thow wilt not know, that Mamon, with his servants, are present abowt thee: whose presence doth hinder the presence of the vertues Adonay our comming. Blessed be God, in the highest.

Amen.

Δ: He toke the forsaide flame of fyre, and flung it up unto the heaven ward.

Sal: Mamon is a king whome God hateth: whose sect, contynually tempt, provoke and stir-up wickednes, against the Lord, and against his annoynted. But he dyeth: blessed be God for euer. Driue him away.

Δ: It is incomparably more easy for you to do. And as for my parte, I fele neyther in body, nor sowle, any token of his presence or working. Thereuppon he caused the whole chamber (which we were in) to appere very playnely in the stone: and so there shewed a great cumpany of wycked spirits to be in the chamber: and among them, One, most horrible and grisely thretting,¹⁰⁶ and approaching to our heds: and skorning and gnashing at us.

Sala: God determines his mysteries, by Arte and vertue.

Peter de Abano, English translation published as *Heptameron: or Magical Elements* (London, 1655, reprint London: Askin Publishers, 1978), p. 89. Diei Dominicae: "Sunday."

¹⁰⁶ Thretting: "threatening." -Ed.

Δ: Then he willed me very egerly, to drive them away. And I prayed fervently. And there seamed One to come into the stone, which had very long armes: and he draue them away courragiously: And so they were driuen away. After that presently, cam one into the stone, all white. Salamian reached this white one a Cup. The white man held-up the Cup: and sayd, as followeth,

Lo, this is my name.

God shall bless you. Fear not: your faithfullness provoketh me to tell my name, and this it is: (putting furth the Cup again) for, I am called Medicina Dei.¹⁰⁷ I will shew thee, and I will shew you, the Angel of your Direction, which is called OCH.¹⁰⁸

Δ: This name he spake: he shewed it allso on the Table (before him) written.

Raph: He is mighty in the sonne beames: He shall profit thee hereafter.

Δ: Then cam in an other, and sat down in the chayre: and he sayde, as followeth,

The strength of God liueth: and God raigneth for euer. I am Fortitudo Dei.

Δ: Why, then, you are Gabriel: and I toke you hitherto to be Michaël. How shall I then amend my boke, in respect of your name, allwayes before, written Michaël?

For.Dei: What thow hast written, that hast thow written: and it is true. Write down this name. POLIPOS.¹⁰⁹ Dost thow understand it?

Δ: No, God knoweth.

¹⁰⁷ Raphaël.

¹⁰⁸ De OCH vide in libello *Arbatel* in ☉. -Δ. According to the *Arbatel De Magia Veterum*, Aphor. 17, pp. 17–31, Och is a spirit of Olympus who governs solar things. The other six Olympic spirits are Aratron (Saturn), Bethor (Jupiter), Phaleg (Mars), Hagith (Venus), Ophiel (Mercury), and Phul (Moon). -Ed.

¹⁰⁹ See Agrippa, *De Occulta Philosophia*, book 3, chapter 34, p. 504. -Ed.

For.Dei: When that day commeth, I will speak with thee: yf thou observe that which I haue commaunded thee.¹¹⁰ **As truely, as I was with SALOMON, so truely will I be with thee.**

Δ: Then cam in an other, whom we toke to be Uriel: for he went allso, as he was wont, and leaned at the Table.

For.Dei: Search for wisdome and lerning, and the lord will deliuer it unto you.

Δ: I wold to god, I knew your name truely, or what peculier letter I might set for you, to Note your words and Actions by.

For.Dei: Name I haue none, but by my office. SALAMIAN cam not hither, but by me. He is a mighty Prince, governing the hevens, under my powre. This is sufficient for thy Instruction. **I was with Salomon, in all his works and wonders:** and so was this, whome God had appointed unto him. The Diuines know his name: and he is not hidden from the face of the erth: His name is written in the boke which lyeth in the Wyndow.

Δ: Do you mean Agrippa his boke? And is it there expressed by the name SALAMIAN?¹¹¹

For.Dei: I haue sayde.

Δ: What order will you appoint unto us two, in respect of our two beings to-gither? My frende here, may haue other intents and purposes of his affayres, then will serve me, for his ayde hauing in these Actions.

For.Dei: Joyne in prayers. For God hath blessed you: Dowt not.

Consider these mysteries.

Δ: Then they in the stone used talk to gither: but not well to be discerned of the eare of E.T.

¹¹⁰ Δ: Perchaunce he meaneth the cownsayle of Annael: before specified.

¹¹¹ It is in *Elementis Magicis* Petri de Abano printed with Clauis Agrippae, which lay in my oratorie almost under my wyndow.

At length F.D. talked very much, and spedily to E.T. and disclosed unto him (which he expressed not to me, at the stone but afterward) all the manner of the practise, and the Circumstance about the Action intended, with the Gold lamin, the ring, the seales &c. And after I had spoken somewhat, in requesting him, to shew me the manner, How I should artificially prepare euery thing spoken of, he sayd,

F.D.:

[... Use me, in the Name of God, for all occasions.¹¹² . . .]

Blessed¹¹³ be God, who revealeth all Mysteries, &c. I am strength in nede. And Lo, here is Medicine for the sore. We bless the Lord: We gouern the erth, by the societie of Gabriel: whose powre, is with us: but he not here. &c.

Use Patience.

Ur: I liued with Esdras: I liued in him, in the lord, who liueth for euer.¹¹⁴

Raph: I liued with Tobie: Tobie the yonger.¹¹⁵

Δ: This was the white creature, that spake this.

F.D.: We liue in the Lorde: who be prayed for euer.

Δ: I stode silent a good while.

F.D.: What wilt thou?

Δ: I did attend, what you wold say.

F.D.: I haue sayd.

¹¹² The top third of a page is missing here. This quote is supplied from HM, where it is attributed to Michael, that is, F.D., 15 March 1582. -Ed.

¹¹³ In margin, written lengthwise: God wilbe revenged uppon Saul: for he hath abused his names in his creatures He hath sinned agaynst kinde. His ponishment is great: and so I ende. -Ed.

¹¹⁴ See the apocryphal *II Esdras* 4.1, 4.36, 5.20, 10.28.

¹¹⁵ See the apocryphal *Book of Tobit* 3.17 and passim.

Δ: I haue byn long at this tyme, in my dealing with you. I trust, I do not offend you therewith. But, for my parte, I could finde in my hart to contynue whole dayes and nights in this manner of doing: euen tyll my body shold be ready to synk down for wearines, before I wold giue ouer. But I feare, I haue caused wearines to my frende here.

F.D: In vertue is no wearines.

Δ: Now he stode up, out of his chayr: and he, and they all, ioinctly blessed us, stretching theyr hands toward us, Crossingly. And so they went away. The Table and the chayre remayned and the glyttring sparkles, or drops of streaming little lightes were of the chayre immediately.

Δ: Glorie, thanks, and honor be unto the Almighty Trinitie.

Amen.¹¹⁶

¹¹⁶ *Mysteriorum Liber Primus*, tooke ending here (as I conceive) after which folowes *Mysteriorum* Liber Secundus*, but the begining thereof is utterly perished. *So it appeares to be by divers Quotations in the following Books. *So by the Citation 28 April 1582. -E.A.

[Mysteriorum Liber Secundus]

. . . mysteriyes,¹ . . .
 . . . ow toward a thing, r . . .
 . . . howse is hollow, it is empty and voyde . . .
 . . . ants: The God of heuen and erth, will send into . . .

NOTE. We bring tydings of light*. The Lord is owr . . .

you and we prayse to gither. His name be prayed for ever. O . . .
 in his Mysteries: O holy and eternall God.

Δ: He bowed down to the Chayre and then to the table, and sayd,
 Benedictus qui venit in,² (and there stayed a little) and sayd agayn,
 Benedictus qui venit in, nomine Domini.³

¹ The top quarter of a page is missing. In HM, Dee says: "Note that the whole Second boke is Nothing els but the Mysteries most Mervaylous of Sigillum Dei: otherwise called Sigillum Aemeth." In 3677, E.A. makes the following comments: "I suppose here were some other Actions between the 21 of March and 28 of April 1582 which belonged to the 2nd booke, & are wanting. For in the beginning of the Action of 28 of Apr. Mich: taxeth (?) and threateneth Δ for his slacknes for his not preparing things appointed by him (which Δ excuseth with inability) but here is no . . . of such appointment . . . in Action of 21 of March. [In margin: 22 Mar Mr Talbot went to London to take his journey for the Bookes vide Ephemerides. If therefore there was any action between 22 Mar & 28 Apr it must be after Mr Talbots retorn, & when he returned is not noted.] (The following line was crossed out. -Ed.): I suppose also that somewhat is wanting of the 3d Booke, for here is only the Actions of 2 daies, and 28 & 29 of Ap: & the catch word of the last page is - Mi + decedite - but nothing followes.

I also suppose there is something wanting of the 4th Booke, for the last Action is 4 May 1582 & at the beginning of which it appears that E.T. was unwilling to proceed as skryer any further, because Mich: willed him to Marry. & lis & bable be here (+) left offe. Beside the 4th (or rather 5) booke begins the 15 of Nov: 1582. & from the 4 of May to that tyme here is nothing extant. Yet that somewhat was done may be colledled from what is entred under the Title vizt: Post reconciliationem Kellianam, &c: implying that, here had been some falling out betw. Δ & him, & it may hence be presumed, Kelly had been impled as Skryer sometye before the said falling out.

+ / 4. May. Mr. Talbot went vide Ephem: so that by this it seemes Mr. Talbot went away from Mortlack so soone as his account of 4 of May was finished, & dissected the imployment." -E.A.

² Benedictus qui venit in: "Blessed is he who comes in . . ." -Ed.

³ Benedictus . . . Domini: "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord." This is part of the Sanctus prayer, which appears in the preface to the Latin mass. See also John 12:13. -Ed.

Δ: Than cam in Michael, with a sword in his hand, as he was wont: and I sayd unto him, are you Michael?

Mich: Dowl not: I am he which reioyce in him that reioyceth in the Fortitude and strength of God.⁴

Δ: Is this Forme, for the Great Seale perfect?

Mi: The forme is true and perfect. Thow shalt sweare by the liuing God, the strength of his Mercy, and his Medicinall vertue, powred into mans sowle neuer to disclose these Mysteries.⁵

Δ: Yf No man, by no means, shall perceyue any thing herof, by me, I wold think that I shold not do well.

Mi: Nothing is cut from the Church of God. We in his Saincts are blessed for euer.

We separate thee, from fylled and wycked persons: We move thee to God.

Δ: I vow, as you require: God be my help, and Gwyde, now and euer, amen.

MIC: This is a Mystery, skarse worthy for us ourselues, to know, muche lesse to Reueale. Art thou, then, so Contented?

Δ: I am: God be my strength.

Mic: Blessed art thou among the Saincts: And blessed are you both.

I will pluck thee, from among the wycked [he spake to my skryer].⁶ Thow Commytttest Idolatry. But take hede of Temptation: The Lord hath blessed thee. This is a Mystery.

Dee, what woldest thou haue?

Δ: Recte sapere et Intelligere &c.⁷

Mic: Thy Desyre is graunted thee. Use . . .

⁴ Michael - Fortitudo Dei.

⁵ My Oath or vow required for secresie.

⁶ To E.T. he spake.

⁷ Recte . . . Intelligere: "To perceive and understand properly." -Ed.

... with⁸ ...
 ... they are corrupted ...
 ... they haue byn used to the wycked. Ther ...

[Michael: -]:⁹ I will shew thee in the mighty hand and strength of God, [what] his Mysteries are: The true Circle of his æternitie Comprehending all vertue: The whole and Sacred Trinitie. Oh, holy be he: Oh, holy be he: Oh, holy be he.

Uriel answered, Amen.

Mic: Now what wilt thou? Δ: I wold full fayne procede according to the matter in hand.

Mic: Diuide the owtward circle into 40 æquall partes: whose greatest numbers are fowre. See thou do it presently.

Δ: I did so. Diuiding it first into fowre: and then every of them into ten. He called Semiel, and one cam in and kneled down: and great fyre cam out of his mowth.¹⁰

Michael sayde, To him, are the Mysteries of these Tables known.

Michael sayde, Semiel (agayn) and by and by, he¹¹ said, O God thou hast sayd and thou liuest for euer. Do not think here I speake to him. Δ: He spake that to us, least we might dowte of his last speches, as being spoken to Semiel: which he directed to the æternall god and not to Semiel. Semiel stode up, and flaming fire cam out of his mowth: and than he sayd, as followeth,

⁸ The top quarter of a page is missing. -Ed.

⁹ In HM this section has the following heading (perhaps part of the missing text): "Now I will speak of Sigillum Aemeth, also known as Sigillum Dei." The words in square brackets were supplied from HM. The quote is also dated 19 March. -Ed.

¹⁰ Semiel, this etymologie is as thowgh he wer the secretarie, for the Name of God.

¹¹ Michael -CHM.

Sem: Mighty Lord, what woldest thou with the Tables?

Mic: It is the will of God, Thou fatche them hither.

Sem: I am his Tables.

Behold these are his Tables. Lo where they are.

Δ: There cam-in 40 white Creatures, all in white Sylk long robes and they like chyldern: and all they fallying on theyr knees sayd,

Thow onely art Holy among the highest. O God, Thy Name,¹² be blessed for euer.

Δ: Michael stode up out of his chayre, and by and by, all his leggs semed to be like two great pillers of brass:¹³ and he as high as half way to the heven. And by and by, his sword was all on fyre and he stroke, or drew his sworde ouer all theyr 40 heds. The Erth quaked: and the 40 fell down: and Michael called Semiael, with a thundring voyce, and sayd,

Declare the Mysteries of the Liuing God, our God, of one that liueth for euer.


Sem: I am redy. Δ: Michael stroke ouer them, with his sword agayne: and they all fell down, and Uriel allso on his knees. And commonly at the striking with his sword, flamyng fier like lightening did flash with all.

Mi: Note: here is a Myserie.

Δ: Then stept furth, one of the 40, from the rest, and opened his brest which was couered with Sylk, and there appeared a great T all of Gold.¹⁴

¹² Semiel - fortè significat Nomen meum Deus. Ita quod Tabulae istae sunt Nomen Dei, vel Nomina Diuina. -Δ. Forte . . . Diuina: "Perhaps it signifies the name of my God, thus, because these tables are the name of God, or the Divine names." -Ed.

¹³ Compare with Daniel 10:6. -Ed.

¹⁴ The very fashion of the T was thus: 

Mi: Note the Number. **Δ:** Ouer the T, stode the figure of 4, after this manner:



The 40, all, cryed, Yt liueth and Multiplyeth for euer: blessed be his name.¹⁵

Δ: That creature did shut up his bosome, and vanished away, like unto a fyre.

Mi: Place that, in the first place. It is the name of the Lorde.¹⁶

Δ: Than there seamed a great clap of thunder to be. Then stepped (before the rest) one other of the 40, and kneled as the other did before. And a voyce was herd saying, Prayse God, for his name is reuerent.

Michael sayd to me, say after me thus,

Deus Deus Deus noster, benedictus es nunc et semper:
Amen.

Deus Deus Deus noster, benedictus es nunc et semper:
Amen.

Deus Deus Deus noster, benedictus es nunc et semper:¹⁷ Amen.

Δ: Then this Creature opened his breast, and fyre cam oute of the stone as before and a great romayne G appeared.¹⁸

¹⁵ "T" in the holy language is named Gisg; vide lib.5. post. et est ultima Alphabeti litera. -Δ. Vide . . . litera: "See below in Book 5; it is the last letter of the alphabet." -Ed.

¹⁶ HM reads "of God." -Ed.

¹⁷ Deus . . . semper: "O God, God, our God, blessed are you, now and forever." -Ed.

¹⁸ G: alr. Ged. lib.5. -Δ. ("G: otherwise Ged. [See] Book 5." -Ed.)

Mi: Write with reuerence, These Mysteries are wunderfull, the Number of his name, and knowledge: Lo, this it is, 9. Behold, it is but one, and it is Marveyulous.

Δ: Then this Creature vanished away.¹⁹

Mi: The Seale of Gods Mercy: blessed be thy name.

Δ: It semed to rayne, as thowgh it had rayned fyre from heuen. Then one other of the 40 was browght furth: The rest all fell down and sayd, Lo, thus is God known.

Then he opened his brest, and there appered an n, (not of so big proportion as the other), with the number of 7 over it.²⁰

Mi: Multiplicatum est Nomen tuum in terra.²¹

Δ: Then that man vanished away as it were in a golden smoke.

Mi: Thow must not write these things, but with great devotion. He Liueth. Δ: Then cam an other furth. Then all falling down sayde, Vidimus Gloriam tuam Domine.²² They were prostrate on theyr faces. Then this Creature opened his breast and he had there a Tablet all of Gold (as it were) and there appered a small t uppon it: and the figure of 9 under this letter t.²³

Mi: Mark it, for this is a Mysterye. Δ: Then that Shewer (of the 40) seamed to fly up into the ayre, like as it were a white garment.

Mi: Illius Gloria sit nobiscum.²⁴ Δ: All sayd, amen: and fell down.

Δ: Then stode up an other, and opened his bosom, and shewed on his brest bare (being like syluer) a small h;²⁵ and he pointed to it, and ouer it was the number of 22.

¹⁹ This ellipsis is Dee's, indicating an omission. -Ed.

²⁰ N, alr, Drux.

²¹ Multiplicatum . . . terra: "Manifold is your Name on the Earth." -Ed.

²² Vidimus . . . Domine: "We have seen your glory, O Lord." -Ed.

²³ Gisg.

²⁴ Illius . . . nobiscum: "May his Glory be with us." -Ed.

²⁵ Na.

Mi: Et est numerus virtutis benedictus. Videte Angelos Lucis.²⁶ Δ: This shewer went away like a white Cok flying up.

Δ: There cam an other in, and sayd,

Et sum Finis et non est mihi Numerus. Sum Numerus in numero Et omnis Numerus est mihi Numerus. Videte.²⁷

Δ: There appeared a small n²⁸ on his skyn, being all spotted with Gold. Then he went away like three fyres, red flaming, and coming to gather agayn in the myddst of the firmament.

Δ: You must Note that in the stone the whole world in a manner did seme to appere, heuen, and erth, &c.

Mi: (Δ he cryed with a lowde voyce,) Et est vita in cælis.²⁹

Δ: Then stepped furth one and sayd, Et ego viuo cum bene viuentibus,³⁰ and withall he kneeled down: and Michael stepped furth and toke of his veale on his brest and he made Cursy and stode up.

Mi: Viuamus Halleluyah. O Sanctum Nomen.³¹

Δ: All fell down on theyr faces, and Michael stroke ouer them with his sword and a great flash of fyre: And this man his brest seemed open, that his hart appeared bleading, and therein the letter m,³² and 6, over it thus ⁶_m.

Mic: Benedictus est Numerus Agni.³³

Δ: Hereuppon They all fell down.

²⁶ Et est . . . Lucis: "And it is the number of blessed power. Behold the Angels of Light." -Ed.

²⁷ Et sum . . . videte: "And I am the end, and have no number. I am a number within a number, and every number is my number. Behold." -Ed.

²⁸ Drux.

²⁹ Et est . . . cælis: "And he is life in heaven" -Ed.

³⁰ Et ego . . . viventibus: "And I live with the well-living." -Ed.

³¹ Vivamus . . . Nomen: "We live, Alleluia. O Holy Name." -Ed.

³² Tal.

³³ Benedictus . . . Agni: "Blessed is the number of the Lamb." -Ed.

Mi: Orate invicem.³⁴ Δ: Hereuppon we prayed a psalme; my skryer saying one verse, and I the other &c.

Mi: Omnia data sunt a Deo.³⁵ Δ: Then cam one in, hauing a rownd Tablet in his forhed and a little o³⁶ in his forhed: and 22 ouer it.


Mi: Et non est finis in illo.

Benedictus es tu Deus.³⁷ Δ: And then that shewer vanished away: He flew up, like a rownd raynbow knyt together at the endes.



Mi: Angeli a nomine tuo procident Domine.

Tu es primus O Halleluyah.³⁸

Δ: One stode up and the rest fell down, and out of his mowth that stode, cam a sworde: and the point, a Triangle, and in the myddest of it a small a³⁹ thus , of pure gold, grauen very depe: Et Numerus tuus viuit in cæteris,⁴⁰ sayd this shewer. The number was ~~22~~ 20⁴¹ over the a. This shewer went away with great lightening covering all the world.

Mi: Nomen illius est nobiscum.⁴² Δ: He stroke agayne with his sword ouer them. Then stode one up: who, uppon his garment had an n: and he turned abowt: and on his back were very many (ens) n.⁴³

Mi: Creasti tu Domine Angelos tuos ad Gloriam tuam.⁴⁴ Δ: Ouer

³⁴ Orate invicem: "Pray in turn." -Ed.

³⁵ Omnia . . . Deo: "Everything is given by God." -Ed.

³⁶ Med.

³⁷ Et non . . . Deus: "And the end is not in him. Blessed are you O God." -Ed.

³⁸ Angeli . . . Halleluyah: "The angels will fall down at your name O Lord. You are the first O alleluia." -Ed.

³⁹ Un.

⁴⁰ Et numerus . . . caeteris: "And your number lives in the rest." -Ed.

⁴¹ Corrected thus after by Uriel to be 20.

⁴² Nomen . . . nobiscum: "The name of that is with us." -Ed.

⁴³ Drux.

⁴⁴ Creasti . . . tuam: "O Lord, you have created your angels for your glory." -Ed.

the ‘n’ was the number of 14, ouer that n (I meane) which was onely on his brest.

Mi: Et te primus Creauit Deus.⁴⁵ Δ: Then the shewer flew up like a star. And an other cam in, all his cloth being plucked up: and so seamed naked: He hath a little ‘a’.⁴⁶ This ‘a’ did go rownd about him, begynning at his feete: and so spirally upward: and he seemed to be all Clay. Ouer the ‘a’ was the number 6.

Mi: Et Creata sunt et pereunt in Nomine tuo.⁴⁷ Δ: And therwith this shewer fell down all into dust on the Earth: and his white garment flew up, like a white smoke: and allso a white thing did fly out of his body.⁴⁸

Surgit Innocentia ad faciem Dei.⁴⁹

Δ: Michael did ouer them agayn with his sworde, and it seemed to lighten. He began to speak, and he stopped suddenly, and the fyre flew from his mowth.

Mi: Innocentium Nomina, et sanguinem vidisti Domine a Terra, et Iustus es in operibus tuis.⁵⁰ Δ: Then cam one in, with a garment all bluddy. He was like a chylde, he had a ball in his hand of perfume which smoked: and he hath uppon his forhed a little ‘h’.⁵¹ He bowed to Michaël: and Michael sayd, Numerus tuus est infinitus, et erit finis rerum.⁵² Δ: This shewer seemed to powre him self awaye like a flud of blud: and his garment flew upward.

⁴⁵ Et te . . . Deus: “And God has made you first.” -Ed.

⁴⁶ Un.

⁴⁷ Et creata . . . tuo: “And they were created and perish in your name.” -Ed.

⁴⁸ Note these 3 parts.

⁴⁹ Surgit . . . Dei: “Innocence arises to the face of God.” -Ed.

⁵⁰ Innocentium . . . tuis: “O Lord, you have seen the names and blood of the innocent on the earth, and you are just in your works.” Compare with Psalm 94:21. -Ed.

⁵¹ Na.

⁵² Numerus . . . rerum: “Your number is infinite, and it will be the end of things.” -Ed.

Mi: Non est illi numerus. Omnia pereunt a facie Dei, et a facie Terræ.⁵³

Δ: Then stepped one furth, like a water running rownd about him, and he cryeth miserably, Q benedictum Nomen tuum Domine. Numerus perijt cum illis.⁵⁴ Δ: A little 'o' with 18 ouer it, appered.⁵⁵

Δ: This shewer seemed to vanish away, and to cause a great water remayn ouer all.

Mi: Lux manet in tenebris. Gloriosum est Nomen tuum.⁵⁶

Δ: Then stept one furth from the rest, who fell down, as theyr manner was.

Δ: Note: All the Companies of these 40, stode five to gither, and five to gither, and so in eight Companyes; each, of fiue.

Δ: This was a very white one: The upper partes of his throate, seemed open and there seemed to cum out of it fyre, in very many and diuerse cullours.

He sayd, Trinus sum.⁵⁷

Mi: Benedictum sit nomen El.⁵⁸

Δ: Than in the myddle of the fyres or smoke semed an 'I'⁵⁹ thrise placed, on a bluddy cross, and ouer the 'I' the number 26.

⁵³ Non est . . . Terrae: "To him there is no number. Everyone perishes before God, and on the face of the earth." -Ed.

⁵⁴ O benedictum . . . illis: "Blessed is your name, O Lord. The number perished with those." -Ed.

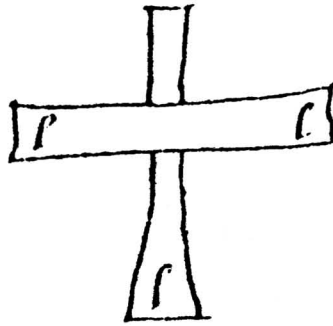
⁵⁵ Med.

⁵⁶ Lux . . . tuum: "Light abides in darkness. Your Name is full of glory." -Ed.

⁵⁷ Trinus sum: "I am threefold." -Ed.

⁵⁸ Benedictus . . . El: "May the name El be blessed." -Ed.

⁵⁹ Ur.



Δ: This shewer seemed to haue three mens heds and to vanish away in a myst with a thunder.

Mi: Labia mea laudant Dominum.⁶⁰

Δ: Then cam a very fayre yong one in with long heare hanging on her (or his) sholders: and on her belly appered a great scotcheon;⁶¹ to hir, or him, Michael gaue a flame of fyre: and she, or he, did eat it.

Mi: Et hic est El:⁶² and so appeared a little 'l' on the scotcheon, and it waxed bigger and bigger: and a fyre did seeme to go rownd abowt it.

Mi: Benedicta sit ætas tua:⁶³ Δ: And there appeared '30' under the l.

Δ: There cam a great many of little fyers and did seeme to eleuate this yong woman (or child) out of sight.

Michael stroke his sword ouer them agayn, and sayd,

Natus est illa Lux.

Ille est Lux noster.⁶⁴

Δ: Then stept out an other and opened his white silk garment uppermost: and under it, he seemed to be sowed up in a white silk cloth. He

⁶⁰ Labia . . . Dominum: "My lips praise the Lord." -Ed.

⁶¹ Scotcheon: escutcheon. -Ed.

⁶² Et hic est El: "And here is El." -Ed.

⁶³ Benedicta . . . tua: "May your age be blessed." -Ed.

⁶⁴ Natus ... noster: "That Light is born. He/she/it is our Light." -Ed.

had in his forhed an 'n'⁶⁵ in his brest an 'n' and in his right hand an 'n'.

Mi: Numerus tuus est benedictus.⁶⁶ Δ: They all fell down, saying, Numerus tuus est Nobiscum: Nec adhuc nouimus finem illius Venies cum numero tuo O unus in æternum.⁶⁷

Δ: And they fell all down agayn. This shewer departed clyming up into the ayre, as if he had clymed on a ladder.

Mi: Linguis suis cognouerunt eum.⁶⁸

Δ: All sayd, Benedictus est qui sic et sic est,⁶⁹ throwing up into the ayre thre cornerd trenchers⁷⁰ of this fashion all of Gold. The one side of the trenchers was thus marked, and the other side had nothing on.



Δ: Then stept one oute: and fyre cam out and in of his mowth. He kneeled, the rest fell down. This seemed a transparent body, and he had in his eyes a small l:⁷¹ and in his forhed the figure of 8.

⁶⁵ Drux.

⁶⁶ Numerus . . . benedictus: "Your number is blessed." -Ed.

⁶⁷ Numerus . . . æternum: "Your number is with us: and yet until now we knew not his end. May you come with your number, O one forever." -Ed.

⁶⁸ Linguis . . . eum: "They recognized him by his tongues." -Ed.

⁶⁹ Benedictus . . . sic: "Blessed is he who is so and so." -Ed.

⁷⁰ Trencher: cutting board on which food is served. -Ed.

⁷¹ Ur.

Mi: Note this, under. I meane the figure 8. Thus, ^l₈

Δ: All sayd, Et es verus in operibus tuis:⁷² and so he vanished away in a flame of fyre.

Mi: Gaudete omnes populi eius, gaudete omnes populi eius, ab hinc Gaudete.⁷³ Δ: All sayd, Amen.

Δ: One stept furth saying, Incipit virtus nostra,⁷⁴ he being covered under his robe, all with armor: and hath a great G⁷⁵ on his armor and the figure of ‘7’ ouer it. He went behynde Michael and so vanished away.⁷⁶

Mi: Recte viuite omnes Sancti eius.⁷⁷

Δ: One stept furth: and opening his brest, there appered a boke, and turning ouer the leaves there appeared nothing but a little ‘r’⁷⁸ and 13 over it. He went behinde the Chayre and so vanished awaye.

Mi: Hic est Angelus Eccliæ meæ, qui doceat Ille viam meam.⁷⁹

Δ: There stept oute a playn man, and under his garment a gyrdel, and under his gyrdle a Rod: and in his hand he had a Sworde, and in his mowth a flame of fyre: he had a great H⁸⁰ uppon his sworde and under it 22. He went behynde the chayre &c. Michael standing up still uppon his leggs, like pillers of brass.

Δ: I axed him yf I shold not cease now, by reason of the folk tarying for us to come to supper.

⁷² Et es . . . tuis: “And you are true in your works.” -Ed.

⁷³ Gaudete . . . Gaudete: “Rejoice ye, all his people, rejoice ye, all his people, from now on rejoice.” -Ed.

⁷⁴ Incipit virtus nostra: “Our power begins.” -Ed.

⁷⁵ Ged — G.

⁷⁶ Note this to be the first that vanished away, going behynde Michael.

⁷⁷ Recte . . . eius: “Live properly, O you his holy ones.” -Ed.

⁷⁸ Don.

⁷⁹ Hic est . . . meam: “This is the angel of my Church, who may teach him my path.” -Ed.

⁸⁰ Na.

Mic: Lay away the world. Contynue your work: Coniunxit spiritum mentibus illorum.⁸¹

Δ: Then stept out one, hauing under his garment a little Chest, and therein a mans hart raw: and the hart was thus with two letters, one on the one side 'o' and on the other a 'g'.⁸²



[Δ: As in scotcheons of armes, where the man and his wifes armes are ioyned perpale, as the heraulds term it.] This shewer shut up the chest and went his way.

Mi: Numerus illius est sine numero.⁸³

Δ: Then cam in an other, saying,

Tempus est. Deum vestrum agnoscite.⁸⁴

Δ: This shewer his armes reached down to his feete: he shewed furth his right hand and in it a little 't'⁸⁵ and 11 under it.

Mi: Stay; place this, in the second place. This went away.

Mi: Ymago tua, (mors,) est amara.⁸⁶

Δ: Then cam one in, with a big belly, and fat cheekes: an half sword

⁸¹ Coniunxit . . . illorum: "He joined the spirit with their souls." -Ed.

⁸² Med, ged.

⁸³ Numerus . . . numero: "Its number is without number." -Ed.

⁸⁴ Tempus . . . agnoscite: "It is time. Recognize your God." -Ed.

⁸⁵ Gisg.

⁸⁶ Imago: I writ first: but, aunciently, and vulgarly both in writing and print, you shall finde ymago, though not according to the Latine Tung. -Δ. Ymago . . . amara: "Your image (O death) is bitter." -Ed.

perced his hart, and a little ‘y’⁸⁷ written on it. Iustus est malis deus noster.⁸⁸ Δ: The number of 15 under it.

Mi: Place it in the former place.

Mi: Opera fidelium, Delectatio mea.⁸⁹ [Δ: Then cam one in.] Hic est Deus noster.⁹⁰ He shewed the letter of o on his naked brest, and the figure of 8 under it. He went away.

Mi: Ecce, Iniquitas regnat in domo mea.⁹¹

Δ: Then stept one oute very lean, all his body full of little e,⁹² and under euery one of them, 21. He went away behynde the chayre.

Mi: Bestia deuoravit populum meum, peribit autem in æternum.⁹³

Δ: Then stept out one in bluddy apparell, all his body full of serpents heds and a b⁹⁴ on his forhed, and the number of 10 ouer it. He went away.

Mi: Iniquitas Abundat in templo meo, et sancti viuunt cum Iniquis.⁹⁵

Δ: One very lean, hunger sterued cam out, an A on his brest, and, 11 over it, and so went away.

Δ: There cam in another.⁹⁶

Mi: Iniqua est Terra malitijs suis.⁹⁷

⁸⁷ Gon - cum puncto, y -Δ. (“With a point, to distinguish it from ‘i’.” -Ed.)

⁸⁸ Iustus . . . noster: “Our God is just to the wicked.” -Ed.

⁸⁹ Opera . . . mea: “The labor of the faithful is my delight.” -Ed.

⁹⁰ Hic est Deus noster: “Here is our God.” -Ed.

⁹¹ Ecce . . . mea: “Behold, sin rules in my house.” -Ed.

⁹² Graph.

⁹³ Bestia . . . æternum: “The beast deuoured my people, but he will perish forever.” -Ed.

⁹⁴ Pa.

⁹⁵ Iniquitas . . . Inquis: “Iniquity fills my temple, and the holy live with the unjust.” -Ed.

⁹⁶ I think it to be superfluous.

⁹⁷ Iniqua . . . suis: “The earth is unjust in its malice.” -Ed.

Δ: Then cam in one who drew out a bluddy sworde on his brest a great romayn I, and 15 over it. He went his way.

Mi: Angeli eius ministrauerunt sanctis.⁹⁸ Δ: Then stept one oute with a Target and a little a on it, and ouer it the number of 8.⁹⁹ He went away.

Mi: Regnabit Iniquitas pro tempore.¹⁰⁰ Δ: They all cryed, Halleluyah.

Δ: Then stept one furth with a golden crown, and a great arming sworde: his clothing all of gold, with a letter 'r' on his sword and 16 ouer it, and so he went away.

Mi: Nulla regnat virtus super terram.¹⁰¹ Δ: Then stept one oute, hauing all his body under his white sylken habit (as they all, had) very braue after the fashion of those dayes, with great ruffs, cut hose, a great bellyed dubblet, a veluet hat on his hed, with a feather: and he advanced him self braggingly: He had burnt into his forhed a little n: and Michael sayd, Non est numerus illius in Cælis.¹⁰² Δ: He went away.

Mi: Antiquus serpens extulit caput suum deuorans Innocentes.¹⁰³ Halleluyah.

Δ: Then cam one who put of his white habit: and he toke a sword, and smote up into the ayre, and it thundred: and he had a seal (suddenly there) very gorgeous of gold and precious stones: he sayd,
Regnum meum. Quis Contradicet?¹⁰⁴

⁹⁸ Angeli . . . sanctis: "His angels have served the saints." -Ed.

⁹⁹ Uriel corrected it after, to be under.

¹⁰⁰ Regnabit . . . tempore: "Wickedness will rule for a time." -Ed.

¹⁰¹ Nulla . . . terram: "No power rules upon the earth." -Ed.

¹⁰² Non est . . . caelis: "His number is not in heaven." -Ed.

¹⁰³ Antiquus . . . Innocentes: "The ancient serpent has raised up his head, devouring the innocent." -Ed.

¹⁰⁴ Regnum . . . Contradicet?: "My Kingdom. Who resists it?" -Ed.

Δ: He hath proceeding out of his mowth, many little (enns,) n, and on his forhed, a great A.

Mi: Non quòd est A, sed quòd contradicit A.

Nec portio, nec numerus eius invenitur in cælo.

Habet autem Numerum terrestrem

Mysterium.¹⁰⁵

Δ: He shewed three figures of '6' set in triangle thus, 6 6 6

Mi: Vobis est Mysterium hoc, posterius reuelandum.¹⁰⁶

Δ: And there cam a fyre and consumed him, and his chayre away, suddenly.

Mi: Perturbatur terra iniquitate sua.¹⁰⁷

This shewer, his garments, white, under: his face as brass:
his body grevous with leprosy: hauing uppon his brest an O,
with the number of 10 under it: and so departed.¹⁰⁸

Mi: Surgite O Ministri Dei: Surgite (inquam) Pugmate: Nomen Dei est æternum.¹⁰⁹

¹⁰⁵ Non quod . . . Mysterium: "It is not because he is A, but because he resists A. Neither his portion nor his number are discovered in heaven. Therefore he has the number of the earth, which is a mystery." -Ed.

¹⁰⁶ Mysterium nobis reuelandum. -Δ. ("A mystery to be revealed to us.") Vobis . . . reuelandum: "This mystery is to be revealed to you afterward." -Ed.

¹⁰⁷ Perturbatur . . . sua: "The earth is thrown into confusion by his/her wickedness." -Ed.

¹⁰⁸ My skryer had omitted to tell me this, or els, it was not told and showed, but Uriel did after supply it by the skryer: The first letter of Perturbatur, doth not make shew, of the letter following as other before did.

¹⁰⁹ Surgite . . . æternum: "Arise, O servants of God. Arise (I say) and fight. The Name of God is eternal." -Ed.

Δ: Then cam two oute to gither: they had two edged swordes in theyr hands, and fyre cam oute of theyr mowthes. One had a G, and 5 ouer it, the other had...

[Δ: We fell to prayer, whereuppon Michael blessed us.]

The other had an h on his sword, and 14 under it: and so they went away.

Mi: Omnis terra tremet ad vocem tubæ illius.¹¹⁰

Δ: One stept out, and under his habit had a trumpet. He put it to his mowth, and blew it not. On his forhed a little 'o' and 17 under it. He went awaye.

Mi: Serua Deus populum tuum, Serua Deus populum tuum Israel, Serua (inquam) Deus populum tuum Israel.¹¹¹ Δ: He cryed this, alowde.

Δ: One appeared with a fyry sword, all bluddy, ~~his vesture all bluddy~~ his vesture all bluddy, and he had s.¹¹²

Est numerus in numero.¹¹³ Δ: He went away.

Δ: I understand it to be a letter, and the number 5 also.

Mi: So it is.

Δ: There cam one in with diuerse owgly faces, and all his body skabbed.

Mi: Nunc sunt Dies tribulationis.¹¹⁴ Δ: He had an a on his forhed and the Number 5 under it.

Mi: Hic est Numerus predictus.¹¹⁵

¹¹⁰ Omnis . . . illius: "All the Earth will tremble at the sound of that trumpet." -Ed.

¹¹¹ Serua . . . Israel: "O God, save your people; O God, save your people Israel; O God, save (I say) your people Israel." -Ed.

¹¹² Fam.

¹¹³ Est numerus in numero: "He is the number in the number." -Ed.

¹¹⁴ Nunc . . . tribulationis: "Now are the days of troubles." -Ed.

¹¹⁵ Hic predictus: "This is the number that was foretold." -Ed.

Mi: Audite, consummatum est.¹¹⁶ This had a great pot of water in his hand and uppon the pot, grauen, a with 5 under it. He departed in fyre.¹¹⁷

Mi: Angele preparato Tubam tuam.¹¹⁸

Δ: Then cam one oute with a Trumpet. ----- Venite Tempus.¹¹⁹

Δ: He offered to blow, but blew it not. On the ende of his Trumpet was a little a and 24 under it. He went away.

Δ: They all now seemed to be gon: Michael and all. He cam in agayn and two with him. And he sayd, Hij duo Cælati sunt adhuc.¹²⁰ They two went away.

Mi: Vale. Natura habet terminum suum.¹²¹

Δ: He blessed us and florished his sword towards, and ouer us, and so went away: and Uriel after him: who all this while appeared not.

Δ: After supper Mr. Talbot went up to his chamber to prayers: and Uriel shewed himself unto him: and told him that somewhat was amyss, in the Table or seale which I had byn occupied abowt this day. And thereuppon, Mr. Talbot cam to me into my study: and requyred the Seale (or Tables) of me: for he was wished to correct somthing therin, (sayd he). I deliuered him the seal, and he browght it agayn within a

¹¹⁶ Audite . . . est: "Listen: it is finished." -Ed.

¹¹⁷ Uriel also did correct this place with deliuering this in the place of the other description before.

¹¹⁸ Angele . . . tuam: "O angel, prepare your trumpet." -Ed.

¹¹⁹ Venite Tempus: "The time comes." -Ed.

¹²⁰ Hij duo . . . adhuc: "These two were still hidden." - Ed.

¹²¹ Vale . . . suum: "Farewell. Nature has its own limit." -Ed.

little tyme after, corrected: both in the numbers, for quantyty and some for place ouer or under: and also in one letter or place omitted. Which I denied, of any place omitted by me, that was expressed unto me. And the rather I dowed, uppon Michael his words last spoken, uppon two places then remayning yet empty: saying, Hij duo cælati sunt adhuc.¹²² But If I had omitted any, there shold more than two haue wanted.¹²³ Whereuppon we thowght good to ax Judgment and dissoluing of this dowte, by Michael. And comming to the stone He was redy. I prepownded this former Dowte. He answered,

Mi: Veritas est sola in DEO. Et hæc omnia vera sunt.¹²⁴ You omitted no letter or history that was told you. But the skryer omitted to declare unto you.¹²⁵ Δ: May I thus recorde it?

Yt is iustly reformed by Uriel: the one being omitted of the descrier and the other not yet to us declared, might make that phrase meete to be spoken, Hij duo cælati sunt adhuc.¹²⁶

Mi: Thow hast sayd. Δ: I pray you to make-up that one place yet wanting. Then he stode up on his great brasen leggs agayn: He called agayn, Semīæl Semieil. Then he cam, and kneled down.

Consummatum est.¹²⁷ Δ: The shewer (a white man) pluckt oute a trumpet, and put it to his mowth, as thowgh he wold blow, but blew not: and there appeared at the ende of the Trumpet the greke ω. There arose a myst, and an horrible Thunder.

Mi: It is done. Δ: Then of the three 6 6 6 before Noted, with his fin-

¹²² Hij duo . . . adhuc: "These two were still hidden." - Ed.

¹²³ Have wanted: "were missed." -Ed.

¹²⁴ Veritas . . . sunt: "Truth is in God alone, and all these things are true." -Ed.

¹²⁵ The descryer, or the skryer omitted to tell.

¹²⁶ Hij duo . . . adhuc: "These two were still hidden." - Ed.

¹²⁷ Consummatum est: "It is finished." -Ed.

ger he put oute the two lowermost: and sayd, Iste est numerus suus.¹²⁸ And Michael did put his finger into the Trumpets ende, and pulled furth a rownd plate of Gold, wheron was the figure of ‘i’ with many circles about it, and sayd, **Omnia unum es**

Δ: The forme of the world which appered before, vanished away: and Semyeil¹³⁰ went away, And Michael cam and sat in his chayr agayn: and his brasen leggs wer gone, and uppon our pawsing he sayd,



Mi: Go forward. Do you know what you haue allready written?

Laudate Dominum in Sanctus eius.¹³¹

Note: The Circumference (which is done) conteyneth 7 names:

7 names, conteyn 7 Angels:

Euery letter, conteyneth 7 Angels:

The numbers are applyed to the letters.

Whan thou dost know the 7 names, thou shalt understand the 7 Angells.

The Number of 4,¹³² pertayning to the first T, is a Number significatiue: signifying, to what place thou shalt next apply the eye: and being placed aboue, it sheweth removing toward the right hand: Taking the figure for the number of the place applyable to the next letter to be taken. The under number, is significatiue: declaring, to what place

¹²⁸ Iste . . . suus: “This is his number.” -Ed.

¹²⁹ Omnia unum est: “Everything is one.” -Ed.

¹³⁰ Semieil.

¹³¹ Laudate . . . eius: “Praise the Lord in his sanctuary” (Psalm 150). -Ed.

¹³² The declaration of the Numbers.

thow shalt apply the next letter in the Circumference, toward the left hand. Which thow must reade, untyll it light uppon a letter, without number, not signifying. This is the Whole. So shalt thow fynde the 7 principall Names: known with us, and applyable to thy practise.

Make experience.¹³³

Δ: Then telling from the T, 4 more places (toward the right hand) exclusiuely, I finde in that fowrth place, from T, (but being the fifth from the beginning, and with the begynning) this letter h: with 22, ouer it. Therefore, I procede to the right hand, 22 places: and there I finde A, and 11 over it. Going then toward the right hand 11 places furer: I finde a little a with 5 under it: by reason of which under place of 5, I go toward the left hand, 5 places, exclusiuely, where I finde o with 10, under it: wheruppon I procede to the left hand, farder by 10 places, and there I see the letter t, and 11, under it: and therfore going to the left hand 11 places, I see there the letter h alone without any number. Wherefore, that letter, endeth my word, and it is in all, ThAaoth. Ys this, as it shold be?

Mi: That is not the name. Thow shalt understand all in the next call.¹³⁴ The Rule is perfect. Call agayn within an howre and it shalbe shewed.

The howre being come we attended Michael his retorn to make the Practise euydent of his first Rule.

Mi: Saluete.¹³⁵

¹³³ Make experience: "get started." -Ed.

¹³⁴ Note these doings to be accountd Calls.

¹³⁵ Saluete: "Greetings." -Ed.

Thow diddest erre: and herein hast thou erred: and yet notwithstanding no error in thee, bycause thou knowest not the error.

Understand that the 7 Names must Comprehend, as many letters in the whole, as there are places in the Circle: Some letters are significatiue of them selues. In dede no letters, but dubble numbers, being the Name of God.



Thou hast erred in the first name, in setting downe 'Aa'; that is, twice a together, which differ the word. Which thou shalt Note to the ende of thy work: Wheresoeuer thou shalt finde two 'aa' together the first is not to be placed within the

Name, but rather left with his inward power. Thou shalt fynde 7 Names proceeding from three generall partes of the Circumference: My meaning is, from three generall letters: and onely but one letter, that is, this letter A.¹³⁶ Accownt thou, and thou shalt finde the names iust. I speak not of any that come in the begynning of the word but such as light in the myddest: Proue, proue:¹³⁷ and thou shalt see. Whereas thou hast 'go', it is to be red 'og'. This is the whole.

Δ: I haue red in Cabala of the Name of God of 42 letters: but not yet of any, of 40 letters: That of 42 letters is this,¹³⁸

אב אלהים בן אלהים ייח אלהים חקנש אלהים
ששש ב אהה אחד בששש

¹³⁶ Note: 7 names, proceeding from 3 generall places of the Circumference or 3 generall letters, being but one letter and that, A.

¹³⁷ Prove: "determine the truth." -Ed.

¹³⁸ Vide Galatinum, lib. 3. cap. 11. -Δ. This is Petrus Galatinus, a 15th century Kabbalist. -Ed.

id est: Pater Deus, Filius Deus, spiritus sanctus Deus: Tres in uno, et unus in tribus. Vel Trinitas in unitate et unitas in Trinitate.¹³⁹ Or thus,

אב אל בן אל ורוח הקדש לא אכל לא שושן
אלהין כי אף אלוה אחד

which in Latin is, Pater Deus, Filius Deus, et Spiritus Sanctus, Deus, attamen non tres Dij sed unus Deus.¹⁴⁰ And as this is of God, Unitie in Trinitie, so of Christ onely (the second persone of the Diuine Trinitie) the Cabalists haue a name explained of 42 letters, on this manner,

כאשר הנפש המשכלת והבשר אדף אחד
ך האל והאדף משיח אחד

That is in Latine, Sicut anima rationalis, et caro, homo unus, ita Deus et homo Messias unus.¹⁴¹ I am not good in the hebrue tung, but, you know my meaning.

Mi: The letters being so taken oute, being a name, and a number, doth certefye the old rule of 42 letters, whan you restore them in agayn.¹⁴²

¹³⁹ Id est . . . Trinitate: "That is, God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit, Trinity in unity and unity in Trinity." - Ed.

¹⁴⁰ Pater . . . Deus: "God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit, nevertheless not three gods but one God." -Ed.

¹⁴¹ Sicut . . . unus: "As the rational mind and flesh of a person are one, so too are God and man one Messiah." -Ed.

¹⁴² 42, are here in potentia, but, non Acta.



Mi: Note, Oute of this Circle¹⁴³ shall no Creature pass, that entreth, yf it be made uppon the earth. My meaning is, if he be defyled: This shalt thou proue to be a myserie unknown to man. Beasts, birds, fowle and fish do all reuerence to it: In this they were all Created. In this, is all things conteyned. In tyme thou shalt finde it, in ADAMS Treatise from Paradise.¹⁴⁴ Looke to the Mysteries: for they are true. A and ω: Primus et Nouissimus; unus solus Deus viuit nunc et semper: Hic est, et hic erit: Et hîc, sunt Nomina sua Diuina.

Dixi:¹⁴⁵

Thow art watcht all this night: who is euen now at the Dore: Clerkson. Blessed are those, whose portion is not with the wicked.

Benedicamus Dominum.¹⁴⁶ Halleluyah.



Tuesday the 20 of Marche: circa 10ã mane.

Δ: Are you Uriel?

Ur: I am. We thank thee for thy great good will.¹⁴⁷ We cannot viset thee now. At the twelfth howre thou shalt use us.

Δ: Fiat voluntas Dei.¹⁴⁸

¹⁴³ The vertu of this Circle.

¹⁴⁴ ADAMS TREATISE, Δ: He meaneth my Booke that I call *Soyga*.

¹⁴⁵ Primus . . . Dixi: "First and newest, one alone God lives now and ever: He is and he will be, and here are his Divine Names. I have spoken." -Ed.

¹⁴⁶ Benedicamus Dominum: "Let us bless the Lord." -Ed.

¹⁴⁷ Δ: I had made, and written, and corrected certayn prayers to them.

¹⁴⁸ Fiat voluntas Dei: "Let it be as God wills." -Ed.

A meridie circa 2ã

Δ: At the twelfth howre, my partner was busyed in other affayres, and so contynued tyll abowt 2 of the Clok: when; we comming to the stone, fownd there Michael and Uriel: but Michael straight way¹⁴⁹ rose up and went out, and cam in agayn, and one after him, carrying on his right shulder, 7 little baskets,¹⁵⁰ of gold they seamed to be.

Mi: Shut up your doores. Δ: I had left the uttermore dore of my study, open: and did but shitt the portall dore of it.

Δ: He toke the 7 Baskets, and hanged them rownd abowt the border of a Canapie, of beaten gold, as it were.

Mi: Ecce, Mysterium est. Benedictus Dominus Deus Israel.¹⁵¹

Δ: Therewith he did spred oute, or stretch the Canapy: whereby it seamed to couer all the world [which seamed to be in the stone, allso, heven, an erth] so that the skryer could not now see the heven. And the baskets, by equall distances, did seeme to hang in the border of the horizon.

Mi: What wold you haue? Δ: Sapientiam.¹⁵²

Mi: Rede the names thow hast written. Δ: I had written these according to the Rule before giuen, as I understode it:

Thaaoth

Galæas

Gethog

Horløn

Innon

¹⁴⁹ Straight way: "immediately." -Ed.

¹⁵⁰ Baskets.

¹⁵¹ Ecce . . . Israel: "Behold, it is a mystery. Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel" (Psalm 7:18). -Ed.

¹⁵² Sapientiam: "wisdom." -Ed.


A^aoth
Galetsog


Mi: Loke to the last name. Δ: I had written, (as appeareth) Galetsog, by misreckening the numbers, where I fownd it shold be Galethog with an h and not s.

Mi: Lo, els thow hadst erred. They are all right, but not in order. The second is the first (his name be honored for euer), The first here, must be our third, and the third here, must be our second: thus set downe.

- 1. Galas
- 2. Gethog
- 3. Thaoth
- 4. Horlwn
- 5. Innon
- 6. Aaoth
- 7. Galethog

Mi: Work from the right, toward the left, in the first angle next unto the circumference.

Δ: He shewed than, thus, this letter .

Mi: Make the number of 5 on the right hand, (that is, before it) at a reasonable distance, thus  5.

Δ: After that he shewed the second letter, a great roman A, thus A+ 24.

Then he shewed		30.
Then		21.
Then		9.
Then he shewed		14.

Then he shewed this compownd letter, with the circle and cross:



He willed me, at each corner of these Segments of circles, to make little Crosses, and so I did.

Δ: After euery of the 7 letters shewed he did put them up in his bosom as sone as he had shewed them fully. The plates wheron those letters were shewed, hath the forme of the segment of a circle, thus



and seemed to be of pure gold. When the 7 letters were placed, he sayd,

Omnia unum est.¹⁵³

Then he pulled all the 7 plates out of his bosom, and Uriel kneeled down before him. Then the plates did seeme to haue two wings (eche of them) and to fly up to heven¹⁵⁴ under the Canapye.

Δ: After this, one of the 7 baskets, (that which is in the east) cam to Michael, and he sayd,

Mi: Seal this:¹⁵⁵ For This was and is for euer.

Δ: Then he stode agayn on his leggs like brasen pillers, and sayd,

Mi: Oh how mighty is the name of God, which rayneth in the heavens, O God of the faithfull, for thow rayneth for euer.

¹⁵³ Omnia unum est: "All is one." -Ed.

¹⁵⁴ Here there is a marginal flourish in the manuscript, with a line drawn to the word "heven." -Ed.

¹⁵⁵ Seal this: "confirm this." -Ed.

Δ: He opened the basket, and there cam a great fyre out of it.

Mi: Diuide the 7 partes of the circle next unto that which thow hast done, euery one, into 7.

Note: (for the tyme wilbe Long) Seuen, rest in 7: and the 7, liue by 7: The 7, gouern the 7: And by 7, all Gouvernement is. Blessed be he, yea blessed be the Lord: praysed be our god. His Name be magnified. All honor and Glory be unto him now and for euer. Amen.¹⁵⁶

1. Δ: Then he toke oute of the fire in the basket, a white fowle like a pigeon. That fowle had a Z uppon the first of 7 feathers which were on his brest. That first feather was on the left side.

Mi: Note. There is a myserie in the seuen, which are the 7 governing the 7 which 7 gouern the earth. Halleluyah.

Mi: Write the letters. Δ: Now, a small l in the second fether. Then he couered those first two letters, with the other feathers. The third an l, like the other. Then he couered that allso. The fowrth an R. He covereth that. The fifth a great roman H. He couereth it. The sixth feather hath a little i. Then he hid that feather. The last feather had a small a.

Mi: Prayse God.

Δ: Then he put the fowle into the basket: and set it down by him. Then he hong it up in the ayre by him.

Δ: Then he lift up his sworde over us, and bad us pray. Δ: We prayed.

2. Δ: Then he stretched out his hand and there cam an other basket to him, and he pluckt out a white byrd, much bigger than the other: as big as a swan: with ‘7’ feathers on his brest.

Mi: Dixit et factum est.¹⁵⁷

¹⁵⁶ Note of the 7 Baskets.

¹⁵⁷ Dixit . . . est: “He spoke and it was so.” -Ed.

Mi: Note. Δ: The first feather hath a little a on it: and it went away. The next a Z great as the first. Then a C great. Then a little a. Then an other little a. Then a feather with a little c. Then one with a little b. Δ: Then he couered them all.

Mi: Thow hast truth.

Δ: Then he put up the fowle into the basket, and hung it up by the other in the ayre.

Δ: Than the third Basket cam to him: and he toke out a byrd all green as grass, like to a peacok in form and bignes.

Mi: Et viuis tu cum illo: et:

regnum tuum cum illis est.¹⁵⁸

Δ: There started out of this birds brest, 7 fethers, like gold, and fyrie.

Mi: Pray.

3. Mi: Note. Δ: On the first feather a small p.

Then a small a.

A little u.

Then a small p.

Then a small n.

Then a small h.

Then a small r. Then he put the fowle up into the Basket &c.

Δ: Then there cam an other basket to his hand.

Mi: Dedit illi potestatem in cælus.

Potestas illius magna est.

Orate.¹⁵⁹ Δ: We prayed.

¹⁵⁸ Et viuis . . . est: "And you live with him, and your kingdom is with those." -Ed.

¹⁵⁹ Dedit . . . Orate: "He gave power to them in heaven. His power is great. Pray." -Ed.

4. Δ: Then he pluckt out a fowle, greater than any of the other, like a griphen (as commonly they are figured) all red fyry, with skales like brass. Then on seuen skales, appered letters.

Mi: Note. Δ: First a little h.

A little d.

A little m.

Then a little h.

Then a little i.

Then a little a.

Then a little i.

Δ: Then he put up the fowle, & hung the basket in the Ayre.

Δ: Then there cam an other Basket to him.

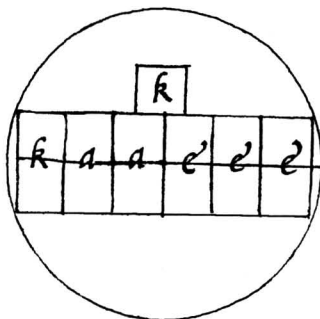
[Δ: Note: All this while the firmament was not to be seen.]

Mi: Magnum est DEVS in Angelis suis.

et magna est illorum potestas in Cælis.

Orate.¹⁶⁰ Δ: We prayed.

5. Δ: Then he pluckt out a bird like an Egle all his body like Gold, and he had a little circle of feathers on his brest: and in it, betwene fowre parallell lines, twelue equall squares: and on the top, on the myddle, one, like the other twelue, thus:



¹⁶⁰ Magnum . . . Orate: "Mighty is GOD in his angels, and great is their power in heaven. Pray." -Ed.

Δ: Then he put up the Egle &c.

Δ: Then cam an other Basket.

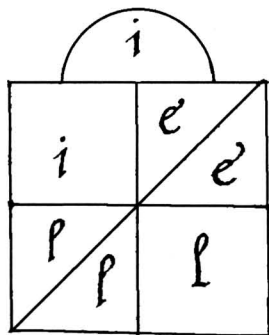
Mi: Nuncius tuus est magnus in cælis.

Orate.¹⁶¹

Δ: He, and the Basket that wer opened, shut, and set aside, seamed all to be gon: and the Baskets remaying, still hanging on the border of the Canapie. Then he cam agayn, and went awaye agayne. Then cam URIEL and held the Basket: and his leggs seemed to be such great tall pillers of Brass: as Michael did stand on before.

UR: This is a Myserie. He is here, and not here which was here before.¹⁶²

6. Δ: He opened the Basket and pluckt out like a phenix [or pelican^Δ] of the bignes of a swan: all fyrie sparkling. His byll is bent into his brest and it bled. In his brest was a quadrangle made with his own feathers, thus. He put it up, and hung it by the other Baskets.



¹⁶¹ Nuncius . . . coelis. Orate: "Your messenger is great in heaven. Pray." Nuncius (Nuntius) is commonly used as a title for Gabriel in medieval Latin. -Ed.

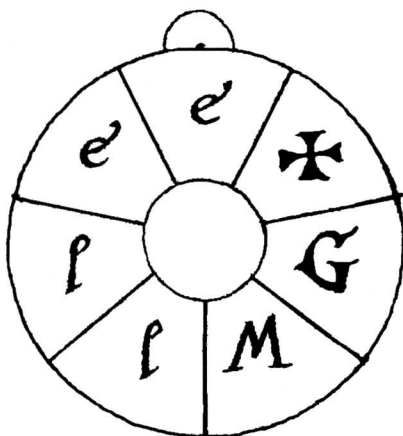
¹⁶² Michael is the sixth name. vide post. -Δ. Vide post: "see below." -Ed.

Then cam the last basket. Uriel stode still and sayde,
UR: Dedit angelis potestatem in lumine Cæli.¹⁶³

Orate. Δ: We prayed.

7. Δ: Then cam Michael and toke the Basket of Uriel and becam standing on the great brasen legs, as before.

Δ: He toke out of the basket a strange fowle with many wings: This fowle had in his forhed a Tablet of this fashion:



Mi: Et Coniunxit illos DEVS in unum.¹⁶⁴

Δ: All the Baskets flew up: and so the Canapie vanished away, and the Heaven appeared.

Δ: Now he cam and sat down in his chayre.

Δ: Michael sayd to Uriel, It is thy part, to expownd these Mysteries: Go to, in the name of our God.

Δ: Uriel cam and stode before him and sayde, What will you:
Ô our fellows and seruants to GOD? What will you?

¹⁶³ Dedit . . . coeli: "He gave power to his angels in the splendor of heaven." -Ed.

¹⁶⁴ Et coniunxit . . . unum: "And God joined them into one." -Ed.

Δ: Perfect knowledg and understanding, such as is necessary for us.¹⁶⁵

UR: Looke uppon, and see if thow canst not understand it: We will depart for a little space: and come to thee agayne.

Δ: So they went: and left all the stone in fyre, so that neyther the Chayr or Table could be seen in it.

Δ: After a quarter of an howre, Michael and Uriel cam both agayne.

Mi: Loke into the 7 angles: next unto the uppermost Circumference.

Δ: Uriel cam and stode before Michael.

UR: Those 7 letters¹⁶⁶ are the 7 Seats of the One and everlasting GOD. His 7 secret Angels proceding from euery letter and Cross so formed: referring in substance to the FATHER: in forme, to the SONNE: and Inwardly to the HOLI GHOSTE. Loke uppon it: it is one of the Names, which thou hast Before: euery letter conteyning an Angel of brightness: comprehending the 7 inward powres of God: known to none, but him self: a Sufficient BOND to urge all Creatures to life or Death, or any thing els conteyned in this world.¹⁶⁷ Yt banisheth the wicked, expelleth euyll spirits: qualifieth the Waters, strengtheneth the Just, exalteth the righteous and destroyeth the Wicked. He is ONE in SEVEN. He is twice THREE.¹⁶⁸ He is seuen in the Whole. He is Almighty. His Name is euerlasting: His Truth can not fayle. His Glory is incomprehensible. Blessed be his name. Blessed be thow, (our God) for euer.

¹⁶⁵ My contynual and annient prayer.

¹⁶⁶ Note these manifold and great Mysteries and mark these 7 diuerse Crosses with these 7 letters.

¹⁶⁷ Note this Bond.

¹⁶⁸ He is twice three and one.

UR: Thow must refer thy numbers therin conteyned, to the upper circle. For, From Thence, all things in the inward partes, shalbe comprehended. Looke if thow understand it.

Δ: I finde it to be GALETHOG.

UR: It is so. Δ: I thank God and you, I understand now (allso) the numbers annexed.



UR: As this darknes is lightened, by the spirit of God, herein; so will I lighten, yea so will the Lord lighten your Imperfections, and glorifie your myn-des to the sight of innumerable most holy and unspeakable Mysteries.

UR: To the next part. Δ: Michael sat still, with his sword in his hand.

UR: The parte wherein thow hast labored, conteyneth 7 Angels. Dost thow understand it? Δ: Not yet. Ur: Oh how far is mans Judgment from Celestiall powres? Oh how far are these secrets hidden from the wycked? Glory be unto him, which seeth for euer. Δ: Amen, Amen, Amen.

UR: Note: We cannot tary long. Thow must set down these letters onely, by 7, in a spare paper, thus:¹⁶⁹

UR: Rede-----Begyn at the first, and rede downward.¹⁷⁰

Z	l	l	R	H	i	a
a	Z	C	a	a	c	b
p	a	u	p	n	h	r
h	d	m	h	i	a	l
k	k	a	a	e	e	e
i	i	e	e	l	l	l
e	e	l	l	M	G	+

¹⁶⁹ I haue hither to forgotton to ax where Uriel his name may appere.

¹⁷⁰ 48 letters are here: and One is noted by a Cross: which maketh the 49th. Of this Cross and Angels vide Anno 1584, Junij 25. - Δ. See TFR, p. 173. -Ed.

Δ: I rede thus, Zaphkiel, Zadkiel, Cumael, Raphael, Haniel, Michaël, Gabriel.¹⁷¹

Ur: Thow hast red right.

Δ: Praysed be God.

Ur: Thus dost thow see, how mercifully God dealeth with his seruants.

Euery letter here, conteyneth or comprehendeth the number of 72 Vertues:¹⁷² Whose names thow shalt know: skarse yet revealed to the world. Uriel and Michael iointly together pronounced this blessing on us.

UR:	}	We bless you: your	{	sowles
				Harts
Mi:				Bodyes
				and all your doings.

Δ: Michael with his sword, and flame of fyre florished ouer our heds.



Yet I will thus much shew you, for your Cumfort beside. What seest thow? Δ: He spake to the skryer. And he saw an innumerable multitude of Angels in the Chamber or study abowt us, very bewtifull with wyngs of fyre. Then he sayd,¹⁷³

Lo, thus you shalbe shaddowed¹⁷⁴ from the wicked. Kepe these Tables secret. He is secret that liueth for euer.

¹⁷¹ The 7 angels, Zaphiel, Zadkiel, Camael, Raphael, Haniel, Michael, and Gabriel, appear in Cornelius Agrippa, *De Occulta Philosophia*, book 2, chap. 10, p. 282, as the "seven angels which stand in the presence of God." -Ed.

¹⁷² 72 vertues multiplied by 48: giue 3456.

¹⁷³ This I supply was spoken by Michael though the noting by whom is omitted in the original. -Δ.

¹⁷⁴ Shaddowed: "shaded." -Ed.

Man is frayle. Fare well.

¶ He must go for the bokes, els they will perish.¹⁷⁵ Δ: He ment that my partner Ed. Talbot, shold go to fatch the bokes from Lancaster (or therby) which were the L. Mowntegles¹⁷⁶ bokes, which Mr. Mort yet hath: wherof mention is made before.

Ended hor. 5. a meridie

Tuesday the 20 Martij

1582.

Wensday 21 Martij, circa 2ã a meridie.

Δ: After appearance was had, there cam in one before Michael (who sat in his seat) and Uriel leaned on the table (as he, usually did). This seemed to be a Trumpeter:¹⁷⁷ he was all in white, and his garments bespotted with blud. He had nothing on his hed. His heare very long hanging behynde him on his sholders. The Trumpet seamed to be gold. The sownd therof was very playne.

Δ: I axed of my skryer, in what manner Uriel now shewed, (and Michael likewise.) Then Michael sayd, I warned thee for axing of my apparell or manner.¹⁷⁸ Et hæc est Gloria illius, quæ non commouebitur ab impijs.

Mi: Quid vultis? Δ: Iuxta voluntate Dei, Sapientiam nobis necessariam &c.

Mi: Sapientia mundi, nihil est, peribit autem in æternum. Veniat

¹⁷⁵ ¶ Of this sentence cam no frute nor furdur confirmation, therefore, consider.

¹⁷⁶ The third Lord Monteagle, William Stanley, died in 1581, and it seems likely that Dee was trying to purchase some of his books at his estate sale. –Ed.

¹⁷⁷ Note this trumpeter.

¹⁷⁸ We were commaunded Not to ax of the apparayle of Michael.

æternitas DOMINI, ab uniuersis mundi partibus. Venite, venite, sic vult DEVS ADONAY fac officium Phanaël.¹⁷⁹

Δ: This Phanael was the Trumpeter, (above mentioned) who there-upon blew his Trumpet, lustily,¹⁸⁰ turning him self rownd abowt, to all the world. Then, from 7 partes of the world, (being equally diuided abowt the Horizon,) cam 7 Cumpanyes of Pillers all of fyrre cullour glittering. And euey Cumpany of Pillers high and great and as thowgh they were Pillers of fyre. The Heauen, the Sonne, and, Mone and Sterrs seemed to tremble.

Mi: **Multiplex est Deus Noster.**¹⁸¹

Mi: Mark this Mystery. Seuen comprehendeth the Secrets of Heven and erth. seuen knitteth mans sowle and body together (3, in sowle, and 4 in body).

In 7, thow shalt finde the unitie.

In 7, thow shalt finde the Trinitie.

In 7, thow shalt finde the Sonne, and the proportion of the Holy Ghoste.¹⁸² O God, O God, O god, Thy Name (O God) be prayed euer, from thy 7 Thrones, from thy 7 Trumpets, and from thy 7 Angels. Δ: Amen, Amen, Amen.

Mi: In 7, God wrowght all things.

Mi: Note. In 7, and by 7 must you work all things. O Seuen tymes Seuen, Veritie, vertue and Maiestie. I Minister by thy licence. This expownd, by thy Vertue (Δ: Michael spake that, pointing to Uriel.)

¹⁷⁹ Et haec est . . . fac officium Phanael: "And this is his glory, which will not be moved by the wicked. Mi: What do you want? Δ: Besides the will of God, the wisdom that is necessary for us. Mi: The wisdom of the world is nothing, but will perish in eternity. May the LORD'S eternity come, from every part of the world. Come, come if GOD ADONAY wishes. Perform the office, O Phanael." -Ed.

¹⁸⁰ Lustily: "vigorously." -Ed.

¹⁸¹ Multiplex . . . Noster: "Manifold is our God." -Ed.

¹⁸² 7 Thrones, 7 Trumpets, 7 Angels.

Δ: Michael and Uriel both kneeled down, and the Pillers of fyrie and brasen cullour, cam nere, rownd about them uniformly.

Mi: Sic est DEVS noster.¹⁸³

Δ: One of the pillers leaned toward the skryer, and had like a pom-mel or mace hed, on the top of it. And Michael with great reuerence toke out of the top of it a thing like an S.

Δ: Than leaned down 6 Pillers more: and Michael, cryed lowd, Vnus est DEVS noster, Deus Deus noster.¹⁸⁴

Δ: Then orderly he opened all the pillers heds: and then the 7 ioyned all together, distinctly to be discerned.

Mi: Note. Δ: There appeared a great

S
A
A
I

Δ: Then the sides closed up, and hid those letters first shewed. After that appered two letters more

E
M

Δ: He made Cursy, and semed to go from ward, and vanished away.

E 8
•

Musepion est.¹⁸⁵

¹⁸³ Sic est Deus noster: "So is our God." -Ed.

¹⁸⁴ Unus . . . noster: "One is our God, O God, our God." -Ed.

¹⁸⁵ Muserion est: "It is a mystery." The reason Dee used this pseudo-Greek is unclear. -Ed.

Δ: The Pillers all ioyned together at the tops, making (as it were) One Mace or Pommell, and so flew up to heven wards.

Δ: There seamed two pillers more to come down from heven (like the other in forme) and toke place there, where the other 7, stode, which went away.

Δ: Michael with his sword, Cut them asunder: and cryed out,

Away you workers of Iniquitie. ¹⁸⁶

Perijt Malus cum malis.¹⁸⁷

Δ: The pillers fell down, and the grownd swallowed them up.

Tanta est tua audacia Sathan¹⁸⁸

sed DEVS noster viuit.¹⁸⁹

Δ: The pillers which before ascended, cam down ioyntly: and oute of them a Voyce saying, NON SVM.¹⁹⁰

Δ: Then the 7 pillers next his right hand, bowed to Michael, And oute of them, a voyce sayd, SVM.¹⁹¹

Δ: Then one of the Pillers stode higher than his fellows, and Michael opened all the tops of them, and sayd,

Orate.¹⁹² Δ: We prayed.

Mi: Write the Name down in the Tables.

Δ: Then he toke of, 3 of the heds of the Pillers, and sett them downe

¹⁸⁶ Note the intrusion of Error by the Wicked powres of Sathan.

¹⁸⁷ Perijt Malus cum malis: "A wicked one perishes with the wicked." -Ed.

¹⁸⁸ Tanta . . . Sathan: "So great is your boldness, O Satan" -Ed.

¹⁸⁹ Sed . . . vivit: "But our God lives." -Ed.

¹⁹⁰ Non sum: I understand the refusall of those two intruded pillers. -Δ. Non sum: "I am not." -Ed.

¹⁹¹ Sum: "I am." -Ed.

¹⁹² Orate: "Pray." -Ed.

and there appered, BTZ, great letters in hollow places like square cumfet¹⁹³ boxes.

Mi: Ista sunt secreta secretorum.¹⁹⁴



Invoke Nomen eius, aut nihil agere possumus.¹⁹⁵ The key of Prayer openeth all things.
Δ: We prayed.

Note Key



Δ: Then the other 4 pillers, bowingly shewed 4 letters thus, KASE, and the number 30 with a prik under. Then the Pillers ioyned theyr heds together very close, and flew up into the firmament with Thunder.

Sic Domine, Sic, Sic.¹⁹⁶

Mi: Place these in the Table. Δ: I wrote and he sayd, Thow hast done right. Laudate nomen Domini qui viuit in æternum.¹⁹⁷

Δ: A voyce cam out of the next cumpany of the 7 pillers (ioyning them selues together) saying, Ipse.¹⁹⁸

Mi: Et Misericordia tua Domine magna est.¹⁹⁹

Δ: Michael kneled whan he sayd this.

Δ: Michael shewed out of 4 of theyr heds, of the pillers, (and with all sayd,)

¹⁹³ Cumfet, comfit: "candy." -Ed.

¹⁹⁴ Ista . . . secretorum: "These are the secrets of secrets." -Ed.

¹⁹⁵ Invoke . . . possumus: "Call upon his name, or we are able to do nothing" -Ed.

¹⁹⁶ Sic . . . Sic: "Yes, O Lord, Yes, Yes." -Ed.

¹⁹⁷ Laudate . . . æternum: "Praise the name of the Lord who lives forever." -Ed.

¹⁹⁸ Ipse: "exactly." -Ed.

¹⁹⁹ Et Misericordia tua Domine magna est: "And your mercy, O Lord, is great." -Ed.



NO, NOT the Angels of heuen, (but I,) are priuie of these things. Δ: So there appeared, 4 letters, HEID.

Δ: Then the other 3 pillers were opened and had ENE on theyr tops.

Dominus collocatur in numero suo.²⁰⁰

Δ: The 7 pillers mownted up into the ayre, and it thundred at their going.

Δ: Then the fowrth Cumpany of pillers bowed to Michael: out of them cam a voyce: Viuo sicut LEO in medio illorum.²⁰¹

Mi: Et tua potestas magna est ubique.²⁰²

Δ: Then Michael pluckt of, fiue of the tops. There appered Δ: then they ioyned all together: then appered EIMO.

Mi: Hoc non est sine præce.²⁰³

Δ: The other two opened, and there appeared **30** A.

Δ: Then they closed up, and went away, with a great thunder.

Δ: Then cam 7 other pillers to Michael, and a Voyce oute of them, saying, Serpens sum, et deuorauī serpentem.²⁰⁴

Mi: Et bonis et malis serpens es Domine.²⁰⁵

Δ: Then they closed all up; and Michael sayd, Orate. Δ: We prayed.

Δ: Then Michael toke of, the heds of 4: then appeared first an I, then MEG. Then he opened the other 3, and CBE appeared.

Mi: Numerus illius, est nulli cognitus.²⁰⁶

²⁰⁰ Dominus . . . suo: "The Lord is stationed in his number." -Ed.

²⁰¹ Vivo . . . illorum: "I live as a lion in their midst." -Ed.

²⁰² Et tua . . . ubique: "And great is your power everywhere." -Ed.

²⁰³ Hoc . . . praece: "This is not without prayer." -Ed.

²⁰⁴ Serpens . . . serpentem: "I am a serpent, and I devoured the serpent." -Ed.

²⁰⁵ Et bonis . . . Domine: "You are a serpent to both the good and the evil, O Lord." -Ed.

²⁰⁶ Numerus . . . cognitus: "His number was discovered by no one." -Ed.

Δ: They ioyned theyr heds all together, and ascended up to heuenward: and great lightening after them.

Δ: Then cam an other Septenarie of Pillers: and oute of them a voyce, saying,

Ignis sum penetrabilis.²⁰⁷

Mi: Et sit nobiscum, Ô Deus.²⁰⁸ Pray. Δ: We prayed.

Δ: Then he opened 4 of theyr heds and appered in them ILAO.

Δ: They closed together agayne.

Δ: Then one other was opened, and *I* appered.

Δ: Then ~~2~~²¹ appered, and did shut up agayn.²⁰⁹

Δ: Then he smote fyre out of the last pyller, and it thundred and there seemed to come out of it innumerable Angels like little Children with wings, and there appered N, and suddenly did shut up.²¹⁰ **Sic sic sic Deus noster.**²¹¹

Δ: Then they ioyned all together, and flew up.

Mi: Note down in the table. Δ: I Noted them down.

Δ: Then cam the last 7 pillers, and out of them this Voyce,

Finis.

Gaudium et Lux nostra Deus.²¹²

Δ: Then they closed all in One.

Mi: Orate. Δ: We prayed.

Δ: Then 6 of the heds opened and appered I H R L A A.

²⁰⁷ Ignis sum penetrabilis: "I am a piercing fire." -Ed.

²⁰⁸ Et sit . . . Deus: "And may it/he be with us, O God." -Ed.

²⁰⁹ There is "V" omitted by our neglect.

²¹⁰ Note these innumerable Angels.

²¹¹ Sic . . . noster: "Yes, yes, yes our God." -Ed.

²¹² Finis. Gaudium . . . Deus: "The end. Joy and Light is our God." -Ed.



Δ: Then the seuenth opened: Then seamed trees to leap up, and hills, and the seas and waters to be trubbled, and thrown up.

Δ: A voyce cam out of the Pillers: Consummatum est.²¹³

Δ: There appeared in that Piller ²¹8 .

Δ: They ioyned together and flew up to heven ward.

Mi: VNVS VNVS VNVS.

Omnis caro timet vocem eius.²¹⁴

Pray. Δ: We prayed.

Δ: Note: my skryer was very faynt, and his hed in manner gyddy, and his eyes, dasyling, by reason of the sights seen so bright, and fyrie, &c. Michael bad him be of good cumfort, and sayd he shold do well.

Mi: Cease for a quarter of an howre.

Δ: After we had stayed for a quarter of an howre, we comming to the stone agayne, fownd him come all ready to the stone: and Uriel with him. Who, allso, had byn by, all the while, during the Mysterie of the '7' pillers.

Mic: Set two stoles in the myddst of the flowre. On the one, set the stone: and at the other let him knele. I will shut the eares of them in the howse, that none shall heare us. I will shew great Mysteries.

Michael than, with a lowd voyce sayd,

Adeste Filiæ Bonitatis:

Ecce DEVS vester adest:

Venite.²¹⁵

Δ: There cam in 7 yong women apparelled all in Grene, having

²¹³ Consummatum est: "It is finished." -Ed.

²¹⁴ Unus . . . eius: "ONE ONE ONE. All flesh fears his voice." -Ed.

²¹⁵ Adeste . . . Venite: "Be present O Daughters of goodness. Behold, your God is present. Come." -Ed.

theyr heds rownd abowt attyred all with greene silk, with a wreath behinde hanging down to the grownd.²¹⁶ Michael stroke his sword ouer them, no fyre appearing: Then they kneeled: And after, rose agayn.

Mi: Scribe quæ vides.²¹⁷

Δ: One of them stept out, with a little blue tablet on the forhed of her: and in it written, El.

Δ: She stode a side, and an other cam in, after the same sort, with a great M, and a little e, thus, Me.

The Third, cam as the other, and had	Ese.
The fowrth-----	Iana.
The fifth-----	Akele.
The sixth-----	Azdoen.
The seuenth stepped furth with-----	Stimcul.

Δ: They all together, sayd, Nos possumus in Cælis multa.²¹⁸

Δ: Then they went theyr way, suddenly disäpering.

Mi: Note this in your next place but one. Δ: I did so.

Mi: Go to the next place. Stay.

Mi: Adeste, Filiolæ Lucis.²¹⁹

Δ: They all, cam in agayn, and answered, Adsumus Ô tu qui ante

faciem DEI stas.²²⁰

²¹⁶ Filiae Bonitatis, or Filiolae lucis: vide pagina sequente. -Δ. ("Regarding the Daughters of goodness, or little Daughters of light: see the following page." -Ed.)

²¹⁷ Scribe quæ vides: "Write what you see." -Ed.

²¹⁸ Nos . . . multa: "We are capable of much in Heaven." -Ed.

²¹⁹ Adeste, Filiolae Lucis: "Come, O Little Daughters of Light." -Ed.

²²⁰ Michael: one of them that are cownted to stand before the face of God. -Δ. Adsumus . . . stas: "We are present, O you who stands before the face of God." -Ed.

Mi: Hijs nostris benefacite.²²¹

Δ: They answered, all, Factum erit.²²²

Mi: Valete.²²³

Mi: Et dixit Dominus, venite Filij Lucis.

Venite in Tabernaculo meo.

Venite (inquam): Nam Nomen meum exaltatum
est.²²⁴

Δ: Then cam in 7 yong men, all with bright cowntenance, white appared, with white silk uppon theyr heds, pendant behinde as the women had.²²⁵

One of them had a rownd purified pece or ball of Gold in his hand.

One other had a ball of siluer in his hand.

The third a ball of Coper.

The fowrth a ball of Tynne in his hand.

The fifth had a ball of yern.²²⁶

The sixth had a rownd thing of Quicksyluer, tossing it betwene his
two hands.

The last had a ball of Lead.²²⁷

They wer all apparayled of one sort.

²²¹ Hijs nostris benefacite: "Favor these ones of ours." -Ed.

²²² Factum erit: "It will be." -Ed.

²²³ Valete: "Farewell." -Ed.

²²⁴ Et dixit . . . exaltum est: "And the Lord spoke, come O Son of Light. Come to my tent. Come (I say), for my name is exalted." -Ed.

²²⁵ HM reads, "pendant behinde with a wreth down to the grownd." -Ed.

²²⁶ Yern: iron. -Ed.

²²⁷ Traditionally, these metals correspond to the Sun, Moon, Venus, Jupiter, Mars, Mercury, and Saturn, respectively. -Ed.

Mi: Quanmvis²²⁸ in uno generantur tempore, tamen unum sunt.²²⁹

Δ: He that had the gold ball, had a rownd tablet of gold on his brest, and on it written a great I-----

Then he with the syluer ball, cam furth, with a golden tablet on his brest likewise, and on it written Ih-----

He with the Copper ball, had in his tablet Ilr-----

He with the tyn ball, had in his tablet Dmal-----

He with the yern ball, had in his tablet Heeoa, and so went asyde-----

He with the Mercury ball, had written Beigia-----

The yong man with the leaden ball, had Stimcul-----

Mi: Facite pro illis, cum tempus erit.²³⁰

Δ: All answered, Volumus.²³¹

Mi: Magna est Gloria Dei inter vos. Erit semper. Halleluyah.²³²

Valete.²³³

Δ: They made cursy, and went theyr way, mownting up to heven.

Mi: Dixit Deus, Memor esto nominis mei:

Vos autem immemores estis.²³⁴

I speak to you. Δ: Hereupon, we prayed.

Mi: Venite, Venite, Venite.

²²⁸ Δ: perhaps here wanteth “non.”

²²⁹ Quanmvis . . . sunt: “Although they may (not?) be begotten at one time, yet they are one.” -Ed.

²³⁰ Facite . . . erit: “Make (items) according to these (examples) when the time comes.” -Ed.

²³¹ Volumus: “We wish.” Perhaps a mistake for “volamus” (we fly). -Ed.

²³² Magna . . . Halleluyah: “Great is God’s glory among you, and ever shall be. Halleluyah.” -Ed.

²³³ Valete: “Farewell.” -Ed.

²³⁴ Dixit . . . estis: “God said, be mindful of my name, but you have been forgetful.” -Ed.

Filiæ Filiarum Lucis Venite.

Qui²³⁵ habebitis filias venite nunc et semper.²³⁶

Dixit Deus, Creauī Angelos meos, qui destruent Filias Terræ.

Adsumus,²³⁷ Δ: Sayd 7 little wenches which cam in. They were couered with white silk robes, and with white about theyr hed, and pendant down behinde, very long.

Mi: Vbi fuistis vos?²³⁸ Δ: They answered: In terris, cum sanctis et in cælis, cum glorificatis.²³⁹

Δ: These spake not so playn, as the former did; but as though they had an impediment in theyr tung.

Δ: They had, euery one, somewhat in theyr hands, but my skryer could not iudge what things they were. Mi: Non adhuc cognoscetur Mysterion hoc.²⁴⁰

Δ: Eache had fowre-square Tablets on theyr bosoms, as yf they were of white Ivory.

Δ: The first shewed on her Tablet a great	S.
The second-----	Ab.
The third-----	Ath.
The fowrth-----	Ized.
The fifth-----	Ekiei.
The sixth-----	Madimi.
The seuenth-----	Esemeli.

²³⁵ Forte “quae.” -Δ. (Perhaps “quae” -Ed.)

²³⁶ Note these three descents.

²³⁷ Venite, . . . Adsumus: “Come, come, come. Come, O Daughters of the Daughters of Light. Come now and forever, you who will have daughters. God said, I created my angels, who will destroy the daughters of the earth. We are present.” -Ed.

²³⁸ Vbi fuistis vos: “Where were you?” -Ed.

²³⁹ In terris . . . glorificatis: “On the earth with the saints, and in heaven with the glorified.” -Ed.

²⁴⁰ Non adhuc . . . hoc: “This mystery is not yet to be known.” -Ed.

Mi: Quid istis facietis?

Erimus cum illis, in omnibus operibus illorum.²⁴¹ Δ:
They answered.

Mi: Valete.²⁴² Δ: They answered, Valeas et tu Magnus O in Cælis.²⁴³
Δ: And so they went away.

Mi: Orate.²⁴⁴ Δ: We prayed.

Mi: Et misit filios filiorum, edocentes Israel.

Mi: Dixit Dominus, Venite ad vocem meam.

Adsumus,²⁴⁵ Δ: Sayd 7 little Childern which cam in, like boyes couered all with purple, with hanging sleues like preists or scholers gown sleues: theyr heds attyred all (after the former manner) with purple sylk.

Mi: Quid factum est inter filios hominum?

Male viuunt (sayd they) nec habemus locum cum illis
tanta est illorum Iniustitia. Veh mundo, scandalis:
vel scandalizantibus, Veh illis quibus Nos non sumus.²⁴⁶

²⁴¹ Quid . . . Illorum: "What will you do with these? (They answered,) We shall be with them in all their works." -Ed.

²⁴² Valete: "Farewell" (lit. "be well"). -Ed.

²⁴³ Valeas . . . Cælis: "May you be well, and you are great O you in heaven." -Ed.

²⁴⁴ Orate: "pray." -Ed.

²⁴⁵ Et misit . . . Adsumus: "And he has sent the sons of the sons, instructing Israel. The Lord spoke, come to my voice. We are present." -Ed.

²⁴⁶ Quid factum . . . sumus: "What is done among the sons of men? They live badly (said they) and we do not have a place with them, so great is their iniquity. Woe to the world because of temptations to sin, or to those who cause temptations. Woe to those whom we are not with." -Ed. Compare with Matthew 18:7: Vae mundo a scandalis. Necesse est enim ut veniant scandala: verumtamen vae homini illi, per quem scandalum venit: "Woe to the world for temptations to sin! For it is necessary that temptations come, but woe to the man by whom the temptation comes!"

Δ: These had tablets (on theyr breasts) three cornerd, and seemed to be very grene and in them, letters. The first had two letters in one: thus, of EL:

The first ----- **EL** ----- Δ: He sayd, Nec nomine meo timet Mundus.²⁴⁷

The second ----- An ----- Nullus videbit faciem meam.²⁴⁸

The third ----- Aue ----- Non est virgo super terram cui dicam.²⁴⁹

[Δ: And pointed to his tablet, wherein that word, Aue, was written.]

The fowrth ----- Liba ----- Tanta est infirmitas sanctitudinis Diei. Benefacientes decesserunt ab illo.²⁵⁰

The fifth ----- Rocle - Opera manuum illorum sunt vana. Nemo autem videbit me.²⁵¹

The sixth shewed his Tablet and said, Ecce -- Hagonel²⁵² - Qui adhuc Sancti sunt, cum illis viuo.²⁵³

The seuenth had on his tablet -- Ilemese -- Hij imitauerunt doctrinam meam. In me Omnis sita est Doctrina.²⁵⁴

²⁴⁷ Nec nomine . . . Mundus: "The world does not fear my name." -Ed.

²⁴⁸ Nullus . . . meam: "Nobody will see my face." -Ed.

²⁴⁹ Non est . . . dicam: "There is no maiden on the earth with whom I will speak." -Ed.

²⁵⁰ Tanta est . . . ab illo: "So great is the weakness of holiness of the day. The benefactors depart from him." -Ed.

²⁵¹ Opera . . . me: "Their handiwork is vain. Whereupon no one will see me." -Ed.

²⁵² In the manuscript the "e" and "l" are overwritten. -Ed.

²⁵³ Hagonel. Vide de hoc Hagonel, lib. 4. -Δ ("Regarding this Hagonel, see Book 4.") Ecce: "behold"; Qui adhuc . . . viuo: "I live with those who are still holy." -Ed.

²⁵⁴ Hij . . . Doctrina: "They have imitated my teaching. The teaching of all things are placed in me." -Ed.

Δ: I thowght my skryer had missherd, this word Imitauerunt, for Imitati sunt.²⁵⁵ And Michael smyled and seemed to lawgh, and sayd, Non curat numerum Lupus.²⁵⁶ And farder he sayd, Ne minimam detractet à virtute, virtutem.

Mi: Estote cum illis: Estote (inquam cum istis) Estote (inquam) mecum. Valete.²⁵⁷

Δ: **So they went, making reuerence,²⁵⁸ and went up to heuen.**

Mi: Dictum est hoc tempore.²⁵⁹

Mi: Note this in thy Tables. Dost thou understand it? Loke if thou canst.

Δ: He sayd to Uriel, It is thy part, to interpretate these things.²⁶⁰

Ur: Omnis Intelligentia est a Domino.

Mi: Et eius Nomen est Halleluyah.²⁶¹

Compose a table, diuided into 7 parts, square.²⁶²

²⁵⁵ Imitati sunt: "They have imitated." The proper perfect active form of imitor is Imitati sunt, not imitauerunt. -Ed.

²⁵⁶ Non curat numerum Lupus: "The wolf does not administer the number." -Ed.

²⁵⁷ Ne minimam . . . Valete: "It detracts very little virtue from virtue. Be with them. Be (I say with them). Be (I say) with me. Farewell." -Ed.

²⁵⁸ HM adds, "to Michael (who had called both the first & these)." -Ed.

²⁵⁹ Dictum est hoc tempore: "It was said at this time." -Ed.

²⁶⁰ Urielis officium. -Δ ("Uriel's office." -Ed.)

²⁶¹ Omnis . . . Halleluyah: "All knowledge is from the Lord. Mi: And his name is Halleluyah." -Ed.

²⁶² Note this list is made perfecter by the next side following. -Δ. The list is composed of the Hebrew names for the seven planets with the divine name "El" added to indicate an angel:

Sabathiel (Saturn), Zedekiel (Jupiter), Madimiel (Mars), Semieliel (The Sun), Nogahel (Venus), Corabiel (Mercury), Levanael (The Moon). The numbers 21/8 represent "el"; 26, 8, and 30 represent "l." -Ed.

S	A	A	I ²¹ ₈	E _M	M _E	E ₈
B	T	Z	K	A	S	E ₃₀
H	E	I	D	E	N	E
D	E	I	M	O	₃₀	A
I ₂₆	M	E	G	C	B	E
I	L _A	A _E	O	I ²¹ ₈	V	N
I	H	R	L	A	A	²¹ ₈

Ur: Those 7 names, which procede from the left hand to the right, are the Names of God, not known to the Angels: neyther can be spoken or red of man. Proue if thou canst reade them.

Beatus est qui secrete.
Nomina sua conseruat.²⁶³

Ur: These Names, bring furth 7 Angels: The 7 Angels, and Governers in the heuens next unto us,²⁶⁴ which stand allwayes before the face of God.²⁶⁵

Sanctus Sanctus Sanctus
est ille DEVS noster,²⁶⁶

Ur: Euery letter of the Angels names, bringeth furth 7 dowghters. Euery dowghter bringeth furth her dowghter, which is 7. Euery dowghter-her-dowghter bringeth furth a sonne. Euery sonne in him self, is 7. Euery sonne hath his sonne, and his sonne is 7.²⁶⁷

Let us prayse the God of Seuen, which was and is
and shall liue for euer.
Vox Domini in Fortitudine.
Vox Domini in Decore.
Vox Domini reuelat Secreta.
In templo eius, Laudemus Nomen eius EL.
Halleluyah.²⁶⁸

See if thow canst now understand this table. The Dowghters procede from the angle on the right hand, cleaving the myddle: where theyr

²⁶³ Beatus est . . . conseruat: "Blessed is he who keeps his own names secret." -Ed.

²⁶⁴ In the manuscript, "us" is heavily underscored. -Ed.

²⁶⁵ Note these two orders of Angels: and Note Uriel doth name him self one of the standers before the face of God.

²⁶⁶ Sanctus . . . noster: "Holy, holy, holy, is he, our God." -Ed.

²⁶⁷ Note well this Rule of Arte.

²⁶⁸ Vox Domini . . . Halleluyah: "The voice of the Lord in strength. The voice of the Lord in grace. The voice of the Lord reveals the secret. In his temple may we praise his name EL. Halleluyah." -Ed.

generation ceaseth. The Sonnes from the left hand to the right to the middle: so proceeding where theyr number endeth in one Centre. The Residue thow mayst (by this Note) understande.²⁶⁹

Δ: Then Michael, he stroke ouer us ward, with his sword, and the flame of fire yssued oute.

Loke to the corner of the right hand, being the uppermost: where thow shalt finde ⁸. Refer thyne eye to the upper number, and the letter aboue it. But the Number must be fownd under neth, bycause his prick so noteth.²⁷⁰ Than procede to the names of the dowghters in the Table: and thow shalt see that it is the first name of them: This shall teache thee.

Δ: Loking now into my first and greatest Circle for ⁸ I finde it with l ouer it. I take this to be the first Dowghter.²⁷¹

Ur: You must in this square Table set E by the ⁸ and now write them Composedly in one letter, thus **E**.

Nomen Domini viuit in æternum.²⁷²

Ur: Giue ouer, for half an howre, and thow shalt be fully instructed.

Δ: I did so, and after half an howre comming to the stone, I was willed to make a new square table of 7: and to write and note, as it followeth.

²⁶⁹ Note this manner of Center accownted.

²⁷⁰ Note of Numbers with priks signifying letters.

²⁷¹ l the first dowghter.

²⁷² Nomen . . . æternum: "The Name of the Lord lives forever." -Ed.

S	A	A	I ^{2.1} / _{8.}	E	M	E ⁸ / _.	- Viuit in Cælis ²⁷³
B	T	Z	K	A	S	E ³⁰ / _.	- Deus noster ²⁷⁴
H	E	I	D	E	N	E	- Dux noster ²⁷⁵
D	E	I	M	O	³⁰ / _.	A	- Hic est ²⁷⁶
I ²⁶ / _.	M	E	G	C	B	E	- Lux in æternum ²⁷⁷
I	L	A	O	I ^{2.1} / _{8.}	V	N	- Finis est ²⁷⁸
I	H	R	L	A	A	^{2.1} / _{8.}	- Vera est hæc tabula ²⁷⁹

²⁷³ Viuit in caelis: "He lives in heaven." -Ed.

²⁷⁴ Deus noster: "Our God." -Ed.

²⁷⁵ Dux noster: "Our Commander." -Ed.

²⁷⁶ Hic est: "This is." -Ed.

²⁷⁷ Lux in aeternum: "Light forever." -Ed.

²⁷⁸ Finis est: "He/it is the end." -Ed.

²⁷⁹ Vera est haec tabula: "This table is true." -Ed.

Vera est hæc Tabula, partim nobis cognita, et partim omnibus, incognita. Vide iam.²⁸⁰

The 30 by E, in the second place, in the upper right corner, serueth not in the consideration of the first Dowghters, but for an other purpose.²⁸¹

The 26 by I, serueth for an other purpose: but not for. this Dowghters Dowghter. The 21, is e, and 8 with the prick under it is l: which together maketh El, or thus compownded as if it were one letter, **El**.

The Names of the great Seale must follow the Orthographie of this Table. Virtus vobiscum est.

Orate.²⁸² Δ: We prayed.

Δ: Then there appeared SAAI 21 8 M **El**. Here is an E comprehended in L.

Ur: Read now the Table.

Angeli lucis Dei nostri

Et posuit angelos illius in medio illorum.²⁸³

Ur: In the table are the names of 7 Angels. The first is Zabathiel, beginning from the left uppermost corner, taking the corner letter first, and then that on the right hand above, and than that under the first, and than the third from the first, in the upper row: and then cornerwise down toward the left hand, and then to the fowrth letter from the first in the upper row: where there is I with 21 8, which maketh el. So have you Zabathiel.

²⁸⁰ Vera est . . . iam: "This table is true, known in part by us, but unknown in all parts. See below." -Ed.

²⁸¹ Note these other purposes.

²⁸² Virtus Vobiscum est: "Virtue is with you. Pray." -Ed.

²⁸³ Angeli . . . illorum: "The angels of light of our God. And he set his angels in their midst." -Ed.

Ur: Go forward.

2. Δ: So, I finde next Zedekieil.

Ur: This I in the last Syllable augmenteth the true sownd of it.

3. Δ: Then next I finde	Madimiel.-----	Ur: It is so.
4. Δ: Then-----	Semieliel.-----	Ur: It is true.
5. Δ: Then-----	Nogahel.-----	Ur: It is so.
6. Δ: Then-----	Corabiel. ²⁸⁴ -----	Ur: It is so.
7. Δ: Then-----	Leuanael.-----	Ur: It is so.

Ur: Write these names in the Great Seal, next under the 7 names which thow wrotest last: videlicet, under **Eu**, An Aue &c. distinctly in great letters.

Ur: Make the E and L of Zabathiel, in one letter compowded, thus ZABATHI **Eu**. In this, so fashion your E and L. And this name must be distributed in his letters into 7 sides of that innermost Heptagonum. For the other, I will teache you to dispose them. You must make for IEL (in this name onely) I with the ²¹**8** annexed. So haue you iust 7 places.

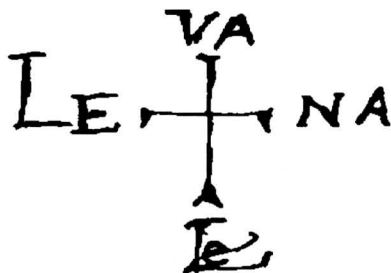
Ur: The next fiue names thow shalt dispose in the fiue exterior angles of the Pentacle: euery angle conteyning one whole name.

Ur: Set the first letters of these 5 names, (in Capitall letters) within the fiue acute internall angles of the Pentacle: and the rest of eche name following Circularly from his Capitall letter, but in the 5 exterior obtuse angles of the Pentacle.

Ur: Set Z, of Zedekieil within the angle which standeth up toward the begynning of the greatest Circle. And so procede toward thy right hand.

²⁸⁴ This name Corabiel you may see in *Elementis Magicis* Petri de Abani, in the Considerations Diei Ɖ (Monday). - Δ.

Ur: In the middle now of thy Pentacle, make a cross † like a Crucifix and write the last of those 7 names Leuanael thus,



Uriel: Vidit DEVS, opus suum esse bonum

et cessauit a Labore suo.

Factum est.²⁸⁵

Δ: Michael stode up and sayd,
The æternall Blessing of God the FATHER,
The mercifull Goodnes of CHRIST, his SONNE
The unspeakable Dignitie of GOD the Holy GHOSTE
bless you, preserue you, and multiply your

doings in his Honor and Glory.

Uriel: AMEN.

Ur: These Angels are the angells of the 7 Circles of Heven, gouern-
ing the lightes of the 7 Circles.

Blessed be GOD in us, and by us,

Which stand contynually before
the presence of GOD, for euer.²⁸⁶

²⁸⁵ Videt . . . est: "God saw his own work to be good, and he ceased from his work. It was so." -Ed.

²⁸⁶ Note these two order of Angels.

DIXI.²⁸⁷

Δ: Whan may we be so bold, as to require your help agayn.

Mic: Whan so euer you will, we are ready.

Farewell.

Δ: Sit Nomen Domini benedictum, ex hoc nunc, et usque in sæcula
sæculorum.:

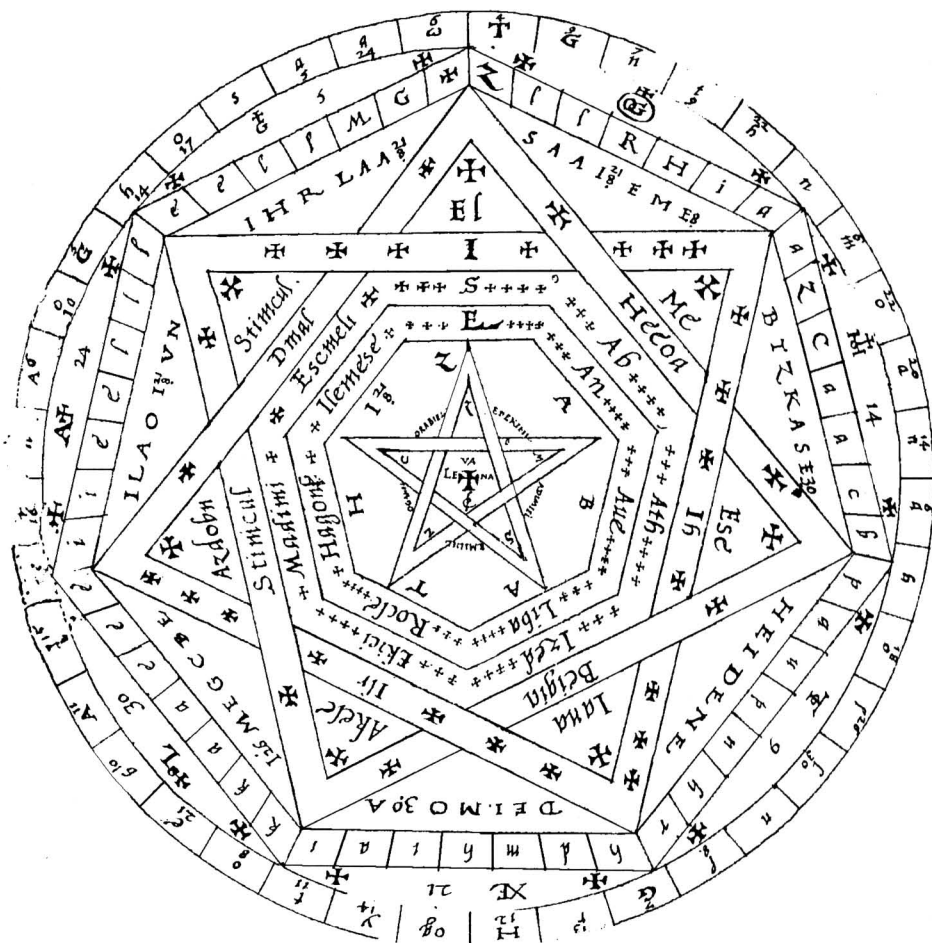
Amen.²⁸⁸

Anno Domini	}	At
1582.		Mortlake by
Martij. 21.		Richemond

²⁸⁷ Dixi: "I have spoken." -Ed.

²⁸⁸ Sit Nomen . . . Amen: "May the Name of the Lord be blessed, from this time and for all time, forever and ever. Amen." -Ed.

SIGILLVM DEI, AEMETH: EMETH
nuncupatum; *hebraice*
DEI



289 Sigillum . . . hebraice: "The Seal of God Aemeth (or Emeth), containing the names of God in Hebrew." -Ed.

Mysteriorum, liber

Tertius. Δ

Anno 1582:

Aprilis 28: ¹

¹ Ashmole has added “Liber: 3^{us} / Liber: 4^{us}” at the bottom of the page. Dee has drawn the frame around the title to look like a scroll. -Ed.

Anno 1582 Aprilis 28 a meridie hora 4.²

E.T: Onely Michael appeared; Δ: And to diuerse my Complayntes, and requests sayde,

Mi: The lord shall consider thee in this world, and in the world to come.

E.T: All the chayre seamed on fyre.

Mi: This is one Action, in one person: I speak of you two.³

Δ: You meane us two to be ioyned so, and in mynde united, as yf we wer one man?

Mi: Thou understandest.

Take heade of punishment for your last slaknes.

Δ: Yf you mean any slaknes on my behalf, Truely it was and is for lak of habilitie⁴ to buy and prepare things, appointed of you. Procure I pray you habilitie, and so shall I make spede.

E.T: A great hill of gold with serpents lying on it appeared: he smyteth it with his sword, and it falleth into a mighty great water, hedlong.

Mi: Dost thou understand? Δ: No verylie.

E.T: He razed the hill away, as though there had byn none; and sayd,

Mi: Lo, so it is of this worldly habilitie.

Δ: I pray you how must the Lamine be hanged?



Mi: As concerning the lamine, it must be hanged unseen, in some skarf.⁵ The Ring when it is made, I will lessen it according to my pleasure.

² In HM Dee notes: "Almost all the Third boke, is of the 7 Ensignes of Creation." -Ed.

³ Union of us two.

⁴ Habilitie: "ability." -Ed.

⁵ The lamin not simpli . . . spoken: for No such Lamyn was to be made. -Δ.

I meane by two Cubites, your usuall yarde. Haste, for thow hast many things to do. Glory be to God, Peace unto his Creatures. Mercy to the wicked, Forgiveness to the Faithfull: He liueth, Ô he rayngneth, O thow art mighty, PELE: thy name be blessed. Δ: Amen.

Venito Ese,⁶ Δ: He cryed so with a lowd voyce.

E.T: He is now couered, in a myghty couering of fyre, of a great beawty. There standeth a thing before him. I cannot tell what it is.

Laudate Dominum in cælis.

Orate.⁷ Δ: We prayed.

E.T: His face remayneth couered with the fyre, but his body uncovered.

Mi: Adesdum Ese.

Adesdum Iana.⁸

Vobis dedit demonstrationem in Tabulis vestris.⁹

E.T: There appeare of the figure, (before, imperfect) two little women: One of them held up a Table which lightened¹⁰ terribly: so that all the stone was couered: with a myst. A voyce cam out of the myst, and sayd,

Ex hijs creata sunt,¹¹ et hæc sunt nomina illorum.¹²

⁶ Venito Ese: "Come, O Ese." -Ed.

⁷ Laudate . . . Orate: "Praise the Lord in Heaven. Pray." -Ed.

⁸ Remember, Ese and Iana; ar the thirdth and fowrth of the Septem Filiæ Bonitatis, sup. lib^o. 2^o. They are thus in order there: El, Me, Ese, Iana, Akele, Azdobn, Stimcul. -Δ. Septem Filiae Bonitatis . . . 2^o: "Seven daughters of goodness, in book 2 above." -Ed.

⁹ Adesdum Ese . . . vestris: "Come, Ese. Come, Iana. He gives proof in your tables." -Ed.

¹⁰ Lightened: "glowed." -Ed.

¹¹ Creatio. -Δ "I created." -Ed.

¹² Ex hijs . . . illorum: "From these they were created (I created), and these are their names." -Ed.

E.T: The myst cleareth, and one of the women held up a Table, being thus written uppon.

Numerus Primus.¹³


Δ: The Table semed square, and full of letters and numbers, and Crosses, in diuerse places, diuersly fashioned.


Numerus Primus¹⁴


2 1 6 1 3	G b b	g	B 2 2	2.4.6 b b b 2 4 6	b L b	B rog	Ⓟ
8 b b 2	ff 8	G b	g g b	152 b	152 b	52 BBB	B + B
9 B 9 l	b o o o	B 7 9	b b b b b b b b	11 B 5	b b b b b b	b b b	b 8 b 3 b
b b b b b	b b b b b b b b	b M 166	7 △ b b	Ⓟ b 5	G M +	B b A 1556	
1. b	2 b	3 b	b T b	4 BB 9	BBB 6 b	b b 72 F	b

¹³ Numerus Primus: "The first number." -Ed.

¹⁴ Δ Of these seven tables, Characters, or scotcheons Consider the words spoken in the fifth boke, Anno 1583, Aprill 28, How they are proper to every King and prince in theyr order. They are Instruments of Conciliation. Volumine 5^o: wher my Character is fashioned. -Δ. The words "Numerus Primus" appear to be in Ashmole's handwriting. -Ed.


A finger cam out of the mist, and wyped oute, the first shew, with the Cross, letters, and numbers. The second was in like wise. The Third was a b with the taylor upward thus: . The 52 with the three great BBB, semed to be couered with Gold. The two Crossed ones he did not wipe out with his finger.

The next he blotted oute. 

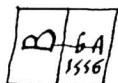
He blotted not oute the three  with the 8 and 3.

The two barrs must go clere and not towch the bars.




The , the square, wherein it standeth, is all gold:

and that he let stand.



Fire cam oute and burnt:



The  is all of a bright cullour, like the brightnes of the Sonne, and that was not put out. The places are very blak, but where the letters, and numbers do stand.

E.T. hard a voyce saying, Finis Tenebrarum:¹⁵ Halleluyah.¹⁶

E.T: There commeth a hand and putteth the little woman into the clowde.

Mi: Prayse God: Be inwardly mery.

The Darknes is comprehended.

God bless you: God bless you: God blesse you.

¹⁵ In the manuscript, Dee has drawn a line between this word and “very blak” above. -Ed.

¹⁶ Finis Tenebrarum: Halleluyah: “The end of darkness: Halleluyah.” -Ed.

You must leave of for an howre and a half: for you haue .6. other
Tables to write to night.

Prayse God: be ioyfull.

After supper we resorted to our scholemaster.

E.T: I here a voyce but see nothing: he sayeth,

Initium bonum in nomine eius
et est. Halleluyah.¹⁷

E.T: Three quarters of the stone (on the right side) are dark, the
other quarter is clere.

Mi: Venite filiae filiarum ESE.¹⁸

The nethermost.....¹⁹

E.T: There come six yong maydens, all in white apparell, alike:
Now they all be gonne into the dark parte of the stone, except one.
There cam a flame of fyre out of the dark, and in the flame written
Vnus²⁰ on this manner:

V nus
nus
nus

¹⁷ Initium . . . Halleluyah: "And it is a good beginning in his name. Halleluyah."
-Ed.

¹⁸ Filiae filiarum Ese sup. lib. 2. -Δ. Venite filiae filiarum ESE: "Come, O daughters
of the daughters ESE." -Ed.

¹⁹ Somewhat wanteth.

²⁰ Vnus: "One." -Ed.

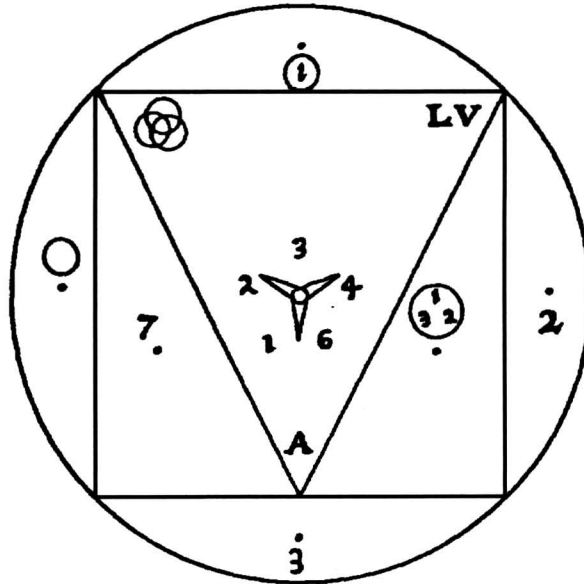
She that standeth without, putteth her hand into the dark: and pulleth out a ball of light: and threw it oute: and it waxed bigger and bigger; and it Thundred.

E.T: A voyce sayd ----- Dies primus.²¹

An other voyce ----- Ubi est Tabula?²²

An answer ----- Est, Est, Est.²³

She wyndeth and turneth her self abowt, begynning at her hed, and so was Transformed into a Table, rownde.



²¹ Dies primus: "The first day." -Ed.

²² Ubi est Tabula?: "Where is the table?" -Ed.

²³ Est, est, est: "It is, it is, it is." -Ed.

E.T: Three faces do shew and shote oute, and euer returne into one hed agayne: and with it cam a mervaylous swete sauour. The Table was of three cullours: white, redd, and a mixture of white²⁴ and red, changeably. A strong sownding cam withall, as of clattring of harness or fall of waters; or such like.

There cam a sterre shoting oute of the dark, and settled itself in the myddle of the Table: And the fyre which cam oute with the woman, did cumpas the Table abowt.

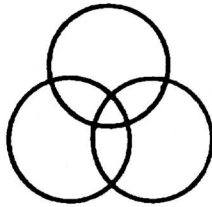
A voyce sayd, O honor, laus et gloria, Tibi qui es, et eris.²⁵

The Table sheweth wunderfull fayre and glorious. Onely seuen priks appeare on the Table.

The three angles of the triangle open, and in the lower point appeared a great A.

And in the right upper corner LV. (E.T: The Table trembled.)

And in the other Corner appeared thre circles of æquall bignes, æqually, or alike intersecting eche others by theyr centers.



A voyce: Unus est, Trinus est; in omni Angulo est.

Omnia comprehendit: Fuit, est, et vobis erit.

Finis et Origo.²⁶ (E.T: Ô, Ô; with a dullfull sownd, he pronownced.)

²⁴ This is the end of folio 32 of the manuscript. The 4 diagrams are inserted at this point, the first two on folio 33 recto, the other two on folio 33 verso. -Ed.

²⁵ O honor . . . eris: "O honor, praise, and glory to you who are and will be." -Ed.

²⁶ Unus est . . . Origo: "He is one, he is three; he is in each corner. Everything will be understood. He was, is, and will be to you. The end and the beginning." -Ed.

E.T: The woman sayth, Fui: sum quod non sum.²⁷

A voyce: Lux non erat et nunc est.²⁸

E.T: The woman being turned, from the shape of the Table, into womans shape agayn, went into the dark. Then one part of the darknes diminished. In the dark was a mervaylous turmoyling, tossing, and stur, a long tyme during.

A voyce: For a tyme Nature can not abyde these sightes.

E.T: It is become Quiet, but dark still.

A voyce: Pray and that vehemently, For these things are not revealed without great prayer.

E.T: After a long tyme there cam a woman: and flung up a ball like a glass: and a voyce was hard saying, Fiat. The ball went into the darknes, and browght with it a great white Globe hollow transparent. Then she had a Table about her neck, square of 12 places.²⁹ The woman seamed to daunce and swyng the Table: Then cam a hand oute of the dark: and stroke her and she stode still, and becam fayrer: She sayd, Ecce signum Incomprehensibilitatis.³⁰

²⁷ forte fui. – Δ. (Perhaps “was.”) Fui . . . sum: “I was, I am that which I am (was?) not.” -Ed.

²⁸ Lux . . . est: “The light was not, but now it is.” -Ed.

²⁹ In the margin is a line pointing to the third table. - Ed.

³⁰ Ecce signum Incomprehensibilitatis: “Behold the sign that cannot be grasped.” -Ed

G B 23 I	m. 3° q B. 9. d. 4.	q. q. q Q B o. g og
J B G 33. A	3° I—T B A—9—O	L B get h go
S b C	d2 b id d 2A	L b 3° pp
V b 9 22	H qq b q Q og a	L b 25 d

E.T: The woman is transformed into a water, and flyeth up into the Globe of Light.

E.T: A voyce: Est, Est, Est.³¹

E.T: One commeth, (a woman) out of the Dark very demurely, and soberly walking, carrying in her hand a little rownd ball: and threw it into the dark: and it becam a great thing of Earth. She taketh it in her hand agayne, and casteth it up into the rownd Globe and sayd,

Fiat.³²

³¹ Est, est, est: "He/it is, is, is." -Ed.

³² Fiat: "Let it be." -Ed.

E.T: She turned her back toward E.T. and there appeared a Table diuided into 24 partes. Yt seemeth to be very Square.³³

$\begin{matrix} 2 \\ b\ b \\ 2 \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} b\ b \\ \nabla \\ \circ \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} s\ 3\ 7 \\ b\ b\ b \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} b\ B \\ g\ 11 \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} T\cdot 13 \\ b\ b\ b \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} b\ 9 \end{matrix}$
$\begin{matrix} v\cdot 2 \\ B \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} o\ 4 \\ B\ B \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} B\ 14 \\ a \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} b\ b\ b \\ P\cdot 3 \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} b \\ G\ O \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} b\ b \\ C\ V \\ 3 \end{matrix}$
$\begin{matrix} 8\ c \\ b \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} Q\cdot 0 \\ 7 \\ b\ b \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} \infty \\ \infty \\ 5 \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} q\ q \\ b\ 3 \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} q\cdot 9 \\ B \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} L\ b\cdot \\ 8\cdot \end{matrix}$
$\begin{matrix} g\ o\cdot 3\ o \\ B \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} 9\cdot 3 \\ b\ b \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} q\ q \\ 5 \\ b\cdot b\cdot \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} d\ T \\ b\ T \\ A \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} 7\cdot 2 \\ b\cdot B \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} B\ B \\ \Lambda\cdot \\ 8\ 3 \end{matrix}$

A voyce: Scribe. Veritas est.³⁴

E.T: A sword cam out of the Dark: and claue the woman a sunder, and the one half becam a man, and the other a woman,³⁵ and they went and sat uppon the Ball of cley or erth.

Now seemeth the Dark part to quake.

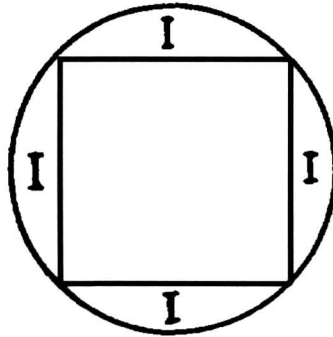
A voyce: Venito Vasedg.³⁶

³³ In the margin, is a line pointing to the fourth table. - Ed.
³⁴ Scribe. Veritas est: "Write. It is true." -Ed
³⁵ Man, Woman.
³⁶ Venito vasedq: "Come, O vasedq." -Ed.

E.T: There cometh a woman oute of the Dark: she sayd,

Vita hijs ex mea manu.³⁷

E.T: She sheweth a Table square full of holes, and many things creeping out of it. This square is within a rownd.



A voyce: O Lux Deus noster.³⁸

Hamuthz Gethog.

E.T: Then stept out an other woman hauing a sword in her hand. She toke a thing oute of the dark (a bright thing) and cut it in twayn and the one parte she cut into two unæqual partes, and the other half she cutteth into a thowsand (or innumerable) partes. Then she toke all the partes up into her skyrt. She hath a Table, and it hangeth on her sholders. She stept before the other woman, whose hed standeth in the dark.³⁹ This woman her Table is fowresquare. She is very bewtifull.

³⁷ Vita . . . manu: "The life of these (is) from my hands." -Ed.

³⁸ O Lux Deus noster: "O Light, our God." -Ed.

³⁹ Note this stepping before. -Δ. In the manuscript there is also a line connecting "stepping" and "forestept." -Ed.

g D2 g	B f 30	B 8 2	B 2 22	$\text{B} \cdot \text{O}$ d 30	L O $\text{B} \cdot \text{q}$ q · 29	B 82	g 6 B
o p B 98	H 2 B	H 2 8 · G	H 9 F	6 3 Q	666 9 Q	6 11 Q	$\text{B} \cdot \text{B}$ 12 H
$\text{B} \cdot \text{B}$ 68	M 2 66	M 65	M 66 620	M 6 · 87 F	d B 17	I A 63	B $\text{B} \cdot \text{B}$ 2 H
M 699 L	66 H 46	6 9 6	66 H 916	6 B 24	I B38	N B9	6 64 6

Note this Cross with the two bees, the 4 and the 6, is one of the Notes annexed to the second Table of the 4 of Enoch's Tables: And the T of Enoch's Tables semeth to answer with the T first in the Seale of Æmeth, and the cross allso.

She sayd, Lumina sunt hæc Intelligentiæ tuæ.⁴⁰

She sayd, Fere nulli Credendus est hic numerus.⁴¹

This woman taketh the little peces, and casteth them up, and they become little Sparks of light: and of the things she cast, There were two great rownd things. And they were allso cast up to the white Transparent Globe. And she went away into the Dark: which was, now, very much lessened.⁴²



Then the other woman (who was forestept) thrust oute her hed who had the rownd conteyning the Square, with 36 places. She crymbleth clay, and it turneth to byrds. She seameth to be like a witch. Into the

⁴⁰ Lumina . . . tuæ: "These are the lights of your knowledge." -Ed.

⁴¹ Fere . . . numerus: "Almost no one trusts this number." -Ed.

⁴² The sterrs, Sonne and Mone Created.

E.T: A voyce is hard saying,

Omnia gaudent fine.⁴⁴

E.T: There commeth oute a woman; out of the Dark. She plucketh at the dark, and casteth it on the grownd, and it turneth to herbes, and plants becomming like a garden, and they grow up very fast. She sayd,

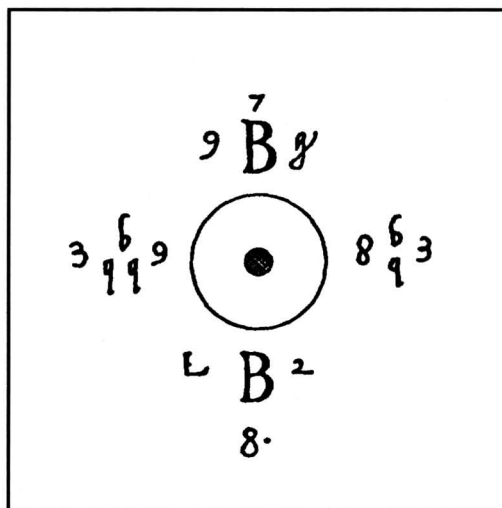
Opus est.⁴⁵

E.T: She hath a fowre square Table before her.

Then cam one, all in white, and taketh the Darknes, and wrappeth it up and casteth it into the myddle of the Erthen Globe, on which appeared Trees and Plants.

E.T: Then appered Michael, his Chayre, and Table agayne manifestly: which all this while, were not seen.

Mi: Obumbrabit vestigia vestram veritatis luce.⁴⁶



⁴⁴ Omnia gaudent fine: "All rejoice in the end." -Ed.

⁴⁵ Opus est: "It is the work." -Ed.

⁴⁶ Obumbrabit . . . luce: "He will overshadow your footsteps with the light of truth." -Ed.

The Actor, The Actor, The Actor:
 One Disposer; he, which is one in all; and All in all:
 bless you from the wickednes of Deceyte: Create you new
 vessels: To whome I commyt you.

E.T: He holdeth his sword over us, in manner, out of the stone.

Mi: Fare Well. Serue God. Be patient. Hate vayne glorie. Liue iustly.
 Amen.

Δ: What spede shall I make for the yard square Table, the Wax, the
 seale, and the Character? Mi: As thow ar motioned, so do.

Δ: Gloria, Pri et F. et S.S. S.e.i.p.e.n.e.s.e.i.s.s. Amen.⁴⁷

Δ: Note, All the Tables before were by E.T, letter for letter noted out
 of the stone standing before him all the while: and the 7 Tables follow-
 ing wer written by me as he repeted them orderly out of the stone.

Aprilis 29: Sonday: Nocte hora 8¼.

E.T: Two appeare, Michael and Uriel.

Mi: Et posuit illos in ministerium eius.

Quid desideratis?

Δ: Sapientiam et scientiam nobis necessariam, et in Dei servitio
 potentem ad eius gloriam.

⁴⁷ Gloria Patri et Filio, et Spiritui Sancto, Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculorum. Amen: "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit, as it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end. Amen." In British Library manuscript Harley 6482, *A Treatise on Angel Magic*, the seven ensigns are attributed to the Moon, Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, the Sun, Venus, and Mercury, respectively. -Ed.

Mi: Sapere, a Deo: Scire a Creatura et ex creaturis est.

Ur:⁴⁸ Venite filiæ.⁴⁹

E.T: Seuen women appeare bewtifull and fayre.

Mi: This work is of wisdom (Δ: Sayd Michael, and stode up.) E.T, sayd to me (Δ), He putteth oute his sword and willeth me to sweare, to that, that he willeth me: and to follow his cownsayle.

Mi: Wilt thou. Δ: Then with much ado, E.T. sayd as followeth,

E.T: I promise,⁵⁰ in the name of God the Father, God the sonne and God the holy ghost, to performe that you shall will me, so far as it shall lye in my powre.

E.T: Now they two seeme to confer together.

Mi: Now you towche world, and the doings uppon earth. Now we shew unto you the lower world: The Gouverners that work and rule under God:⁵¹ By whome you may haue powre to work such things, as shalbe to god his glorie, profit of your Cuntrie, and the knowledge of his Creatures.

To E.T. he spake, What I do wish thee to do, thou shalt here know, before thou go. We procede to One GOD, one knowledge, one Operation.

Venite filiæ.⁵²

Behold these Tablets: Herein lye theyr names that work under God uppon earth: not of the wicked, but of the Angels of light. The Whole

⁴⁸ I am not sure if it wer Mi. or Ur, that called for them.

⁴⁹ Et posuit . . . filiae: "And he sets those in his service. What do you desire? Δ: Wisdom and knowledge needed to serve God for his glory. Mi: Wisdom is from God; knowledge is to a creature and from creatures. Ur: Come, O daughters." -Ed.

⁵⁰ E.T. his promise.

⁵¹ Practise. The lower world.

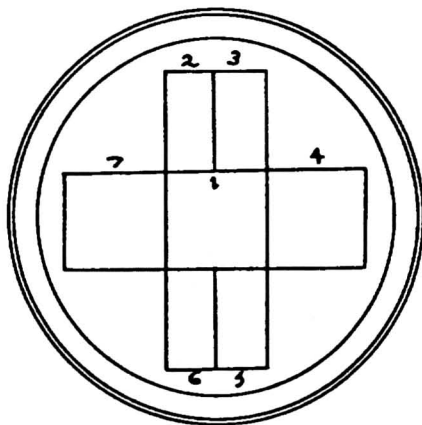
⁵² Venite filiae: "Come, O daughters." -Ed.

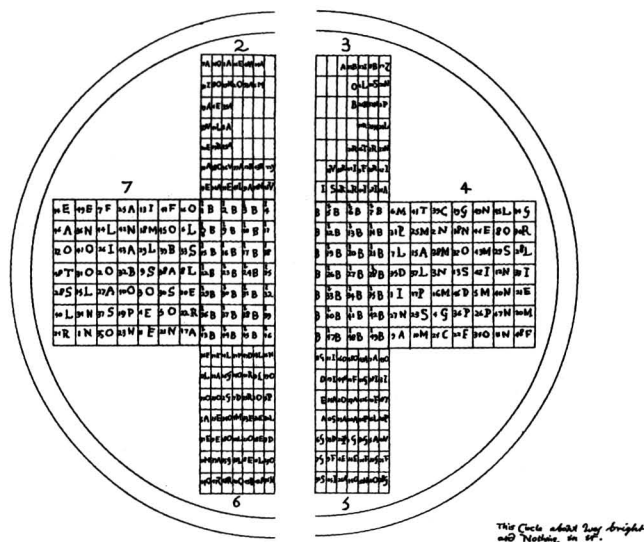
Gouernment, doth consist in the hands of 49: (in God his Powre, Strength, Mercy, and Iustice) whose names are here euident, excellent, and glorious. Mark these Tables: Mark them. Record them to your Cumfort.

This is the first knowledge. Here shall you haue Wisdome. Halleluyah.

Mighty and Omnipotent art thou, O God, God, God, amongst thy Creatures: Thou fillest all things with thy excellent foresight. Thy Glorie be amongst us for euer. Δ: Amen.

E.T: All the 7 (which here appeare) ioyned theyr Tables in One: Which, before they held apart. And they be of this Forme all to-gither. The myddelmost is a great Square and on eche side of it, One, as big as it, ioyning close to it. And ouer it ioyned two, which both together wer æquall to it: and under it, wer such other two, as may appear in this little pattern. Being thus ioyned, a bright circle did cumpas and enclose them all, thus: but nothing was in the Circle.





[44 E: forte I, as in Baligon.]

E.T: One stept-furth, and sayde,

1: Wilt thow haue witt, and wisdome: Here, it is. (Δ: Pointing to the middle table.)

2: Another sayd, The Exaltation and Gouvernment of Princes, is in my hand. (Δ: Pointing to that on the left hand of the two uppermost.)

3: In Cownsayle and Nobilitie I prevayle. (Δ: Pointing to the other of the two uppermost: which is on the right hand.)

4: The Gayne and Trade of Merchandise is in my hand: Lo, here it is.

Δ: He pointed to the great table on the right side of the myddle Table, that I meane which is opposite to our right hand while we behold those 7 Tables.

5: The Quality of the Earth, and waters, is my knowledge, and I know them: and here, it is. (Δ: Pointing to that on the right hand: of the two lowermost.)⁵³

6: The motion of the Ayre, and those that moue in it, are all known

⁵³ I marvayle that the earth and waters are here ascribed to one.

to me. Lo here they are. (Δ: Pointing to the other Table below, on the left hand.)

7: I signifie wisdom: In fire is my Gouernment. I was in the begynning, and shalbe to the ende. (Δ: Pointing to the great table on the left hand of the Middle Table.)

Mi: Mark these Mysteries: For, this knowne, the State of the whole earth is known, and all that is thereon. Mighty is God, yea mighty is he, who hath Composed for euer. Giue diligent eye. Be wise, mery, and pleasant in the Lorde; in Whose Name, NOTE,

Begynne the Middle Table &c. Δ: I wrote oute of the stone the whole 7 Tables (as you see them here with theyr numbers and letters) while E.T. did vew them in the stone, and orderly express them.

Δ: As concerning 39 V . 47 L &c in the second Table, where are 7 places: and there but 6 numbers and letters, and yet euery place semeth to haue a letter, in the iudgment of E.T. his sight. Which is the Number and letter wanting, and where must it be placed?

Mi: Non potestis hoc videre sine ratione.⁵⁴

Δ: The Next day, as I was loking on the Tables being finished, and ioyned all together in One Compownd Figure, E.T. cam to me, and stode by me, and his ey was on the for-sayd place which I was forced to leaue empty, in the 7th and last. And behold he saw houering and hopping in the ayre, two numbers and two letters cuppled to them, ouer the sayd place, and the next before it. And that, which I had placed the sixth, was to be put in the seuenth place, and that which was wanting, was to be set in the sixth place being 30 N.⁵⁵

⁵⁴ Non potestis ... ratione: "You are not able to see this without calculation." -Ed.

⁵⁵ This I entersert now; though it wer not at the first Noting.

E.T: Euery of the 7 Tables, as they wer written out of the stone do seme afterward to burn all in fyre: and to stand in fyre.

E.T: After all the Tables wer written, eche toke hir Table aparte agayn and stode in theyr order.

E.T: Note moreouer. The First, had Bokes in hir hand.

Kings ----- The second, a Crown in hir hand.

Nobilitie ----- The Third, Robes.

Merchants - Δ: - Aqua⁵⁶ - The fowrth, animal quadrupes vicium omnim colorum.⁵⁷

Terra⁵⁸ - The fifth, Herbes.

Aer⁵⁹ - The sixth, a fanne.

Ignis⁶⁰ - The seventh, a Flame of fyre in hir hand.

Mi: Decedite in nomine eius, qui vos huc misit.⁶¹

E.T: Uriel opened a boke in his own hand, and sayde,

Ur: **The Fontayne of wisdom is opened. Nature shalbe knowne: Earth with her secrets disclosed. The Elements with theyr powres iudged.** Loke, if thou canst (in the name of God) understand these Tables. Δ: No: Not yet.

Ur: Beholde; I teache. There are 49 Angels glorious and excellent, appointed for the government of all earthly actions: Which 49 do work and dispose the will of the Creator: limited from the begynning in strength, powre, and glorie.

These shalbe Subiect unto you, In the Name, and by Invocating uppon the Name of GOD, which doth lighten, dispose and Cumfort you.

By them shall you work, in the quieting of the estates, in learning of wis-

⁵⁶ Aqua: "Water." -Ed.

⁵⁷ Animal quadrupes . . . colorum: "A four-footed animal of all colors alternating." -Ed.

⁵⁸ Terra: "Earth." -Ed.

⁵⁹ Aer: "Air." -Ed.

⁶⁰ Ignis: "Fire." -Ed.

⁶¹ Decedite . . . misit: "Depart in his name who has sent you here." -Ed.

dome: pacifying of the Nobilitie, iudgement in the rest, as well in the depth of waters, Secrets of the Ayre, as in the bowells and entralls of the Earth.

Ur: Theyr Names are comprehended within these Tables. Lo, he teacheth, he teacheth, Lo, he instructeth, which is holy, and most highest. Take hede, thow abuse not this Excellency, nor overshadow it with Vanitie, But stick firmly, absolutely, and perfectly, in the love of God (for his honor) to-gither.⁶²

Be mery in him: Prayse his name. Honor him in his Saints. Behold him in wisdom: And shew him in understanding. Glorie be to him; To thee ô Lord, whose name perseth⁶³ through the earth. Glorie be to thee, for euer. Δ: Amen, Amen, Amen.

Ur: Lo, I will breifly teache thee; you shall know the Mysteries in him: and by him, which is a Myserie in all things. The letters are standing uppon 7 equall numbers. The Number before them is signifying, teaching and instructing (from the first Table to the last,) which are the letters that shalbe ioyned to gither:⁶⁴ begynning all, with B, according to the disposition of the number untill the 29⁶⁵ generall names be known. The first 29 are more excellent than the rest. Euery Name doth consist uppon the quantitie of the place: Euerie place with addition bringeth furth his name, which are 49.----- I haue sayde.-----

Δ: I pray you to tell me the first Name. Ur: The first Name is BALIGON.

Mi: I haue to say to thee,⁶⁶ and so haue I done:

Δ: Now he spake to E.T., of the matter he sware him to, at the begynning of this last Instruction: and he told me afterward what Michael

⁶² We two to-gither.

⁶³ Perseth: "pierces." -Ed.

⁶⁴ Vide ipam Tabulam horam 49 nom. Collectam, pagina sequente. -Δ. ("See the table itself, of 49 names collected, on the following page." -Ed.)

⁶⁵ 49.

⁶⁶ He ment to E.T.

had willed and moved him unto. Wherat he seamed very sore disquietted: and sayd this to me,

E.T: He sayd that I must betake my self to the world, and forsake the world. That is that I shold marry. Which thing to do, I haue no naturall Inclination: neyther with a safe Conscience may I do it, contrary to my vow and profession. Wherefore I think and hope, there is some other meaning in these theyr wordes.

Mi: Thow must of force kepe it. Thow knowest our mynde.

Δ: Deo opt. Max^o. omnis honor laus et gloria in sæcula sæculorum. Amen.⁶⁷

Ended, hora noctis, 11½^a circiter.⁶⁸

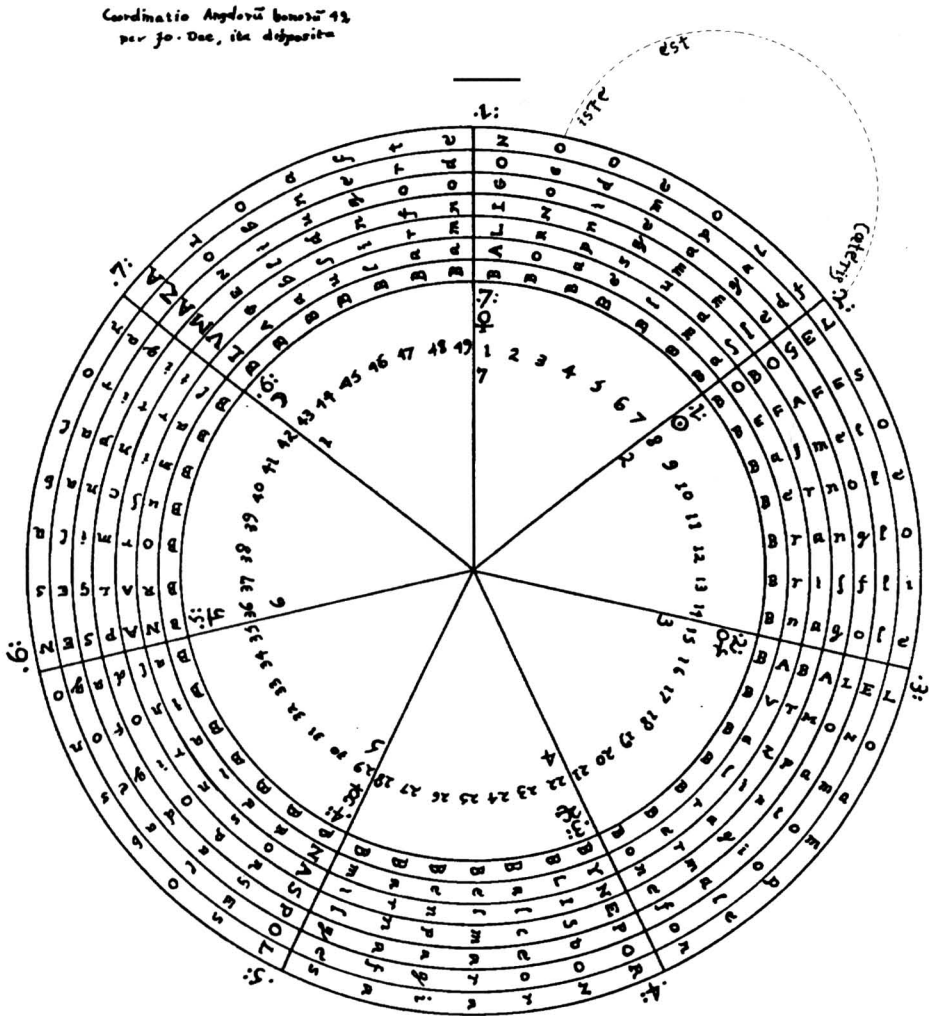
Tabula Collecta: 49 Angelorum Bonorum, Nomina continens [per Δ]⁶⁹

1 BALIGON	15 BABALEL	29 BNASPOL
2 BORNOGO	16 BVTMONO	30 BRORGES
3 Bapnido	17 Bazpama	31 Baspalo
4 Besgeme	18 Blintom	32 Binodab
5 Blumapo	19 Bragiop	33 Bariges
6 Bmamgal	20 Bermale	34 Binofon
7 Basledf	21 Bonefon	35 Baldago
8 BOBOGEL	22 BYNEPOR	36 BNAPSEN
9 BEFAFES	23 BLISDON	37 BRALGES
10 Basmelo	24 Balceor	38 Bormila
11 Bernole	25 Belmara	39 Buscnab
12 Branglo	26 Benpagi	40 Bminpol
13 Brisfli	27 Barnafa	41 Bartiro
14 Bnagole	28 Bmilges	42 Bliigan
		43 BLVMAZA
		44 BAGENOL
		45 Bablibo
		46 Busduna
		47 Blingef
		48 Barfort
		49 Bamnode

⁶⁷ Deo . . . Amen: "To God all good, all honor, praise, and glory, forever and ever. Amen." -Ed.

⁶⁸ Hora noctis 11½^a circiter: "around 11:30 at night." -Ed.

⁶⁹ Tabula . . . continens: "Collected table of the 49 consecutive names of the good angels (per Dee)." -Ed.

Coordinatio Angelorum bonorum 49, per Jo. Dee, ita disposita⁷⁰

Liber 4.

⁷⁰ Coordinatio . . . disposita: "Sequence of the 49 angels, arranged thus by John Dee." Iste est caeteris: "and so on." -Ed.

Fryday Maij 4: hor 2½ a meridie

Δ: E.T. wold not willingly now deale with the former Creatures, utterly misliking and discrediting them, bycause they willed him to marry. Neyther wold he put of his hat in any prayer to god, for the Action with them: whereuppon I went into my Oratorie, and called unto God, for his diuine help for the understanding of his laws and vertues which he hath established in and amongst his Creatures, for the benefyt of mankinde, in his seruice, and for his glorie &c. And commyng to the Stone, E.T. saw there those two, whom hitherto, we wer instructed to be Michael and Uriel.

E.T: Michael and Uriel, both kneled holding up theyr hands: and Michael seamed to sweat water abundantly, somewhat reddish or blud-dish. There cam 7 Bundells down, (like faggots) from heven-ward. And Michael taketh them kneeling. And Uriel taketh a thing like a super-altare and layeth it uppon the Table: and with a thing like a Senser doth make perfume at the fowre corners of the Table: the smoke ascending up: and the senser, at the last, being set on the Table it seemed to fall throwgh the Table.

URIEL semeth to be all in a white long robe tucked up: his garment full of plights⁷¹ and seemed now to haue wyngs: (which, hitherto, from the begynning of these kinde of Actions he did not) and on his hed a bewtifull crown, with a white Cross ouer the Crown.⁷² Uriel taketh the 7 Bundells from Michael: and with reuerence layeth them on the forsayd Superaltare.

E.T: There commeth a man, as thowgh he were all of perfect pure glistring gold: somtyme seeming to haue One eye, and somtyme Three. From under the Table commeth a great smoke, and the place semeth to shake.

⁷¹ Plights: "pleats." -Ed.

⁷² Uriel, his manner of apparition.

Uriel lieth now prostrate on his face: and Michael contynually prayed sweating.

The Glorious man seemed to open the Covering of the 7 bundells (being of diuerse cullored sylk,) and there appered, that these Bundells seemed to haue in them, of all Creatures some, in most glorious shew. The glorious man seemed to stand uppon a little hill of flaming fyre. He taketh-of, of one of the Bundells a thing like a little byrd; and it hooouereth affore him as thowgh it had life: and than it rested uppon the thing like a superaltare.

This glorious man⁷³ seemeth to be open before, and his brest somewhat spotted with blud. He hath a berd forked of brownish cullour, his heare of his hed, long, hanging down to his sholders: but his face, for beutifull glittering, can not be discerned. His heares do shake, as thowgh the wynde carryed them. This man blesseth the bird, making a Cross ouer it: and, so he did three tymes. He looketh up to heven. Now the byrd, which, before, seamed to be but as byg as a sparrow, seameth to be as great as a swanne: very beutifull: but of many cullours.⁷⁴

Now looketh Michael up, and held up his hands to heven, and sayeth,

Sic, Sic, Sic, Deus noster.⁷⁵

Uriel, (sayd)- Multiplicabit omnia, benedictione sua.⁷⁶

The former Bewtifull man taketh this fowle, setteth it on the bundell, and on the place, from whence it was taken:⁷⁷ And, now, the place where this byrd stode before, seameth allso, to be (proportionally)

⁷³ A description of the glorious man.

⁷⁴ Many cullours in all his garments are shewed in sequentibus thus:

⁷⁵ Sic, Sic, Sic, Deus noster: "Yes, yes, yes, our God." -Ed.

⁷⁶ Multiplicabit . . . sua: "He will multiply all things by his blessing." -Ed.

⁷⁷ 

waxen as big as the byrd, (thus enlarged). This man taketh an other byrd, and putteth the wyng of it, behind the wyng of the first (as-though he yoked them.)⁷⁸

This second byrd, at this his first taking, was as byg, as the first was become, (encreased, as it shewed), and it was allso a very bewtifull

E.T: All is suddenly dark, and nothing to be seen, neyther Chayre, nor any thing els.

E.T: A voyce was hard, like Michael his voyce, saying,

It was a byrd, and is a byrd, absent there is nothing but Quantitie.

A voyce:⁷⁹ Beleue. The world is of Necessitie: His Necessitie is gouerned by supernaturall Wisdome. Necessarily you fall: and of Necessitie shall rise agayne. Follow me, loue me: embrace me: behold, I, AM.

E.T: Now all the Darknes vanished, the man is gon. Uriel standeth at the Table, and Michael sitteth now in his Chayre: and sayd,

Mi: This doth GOD work for your understanding. It is in vayne to stryve: All Government is in his hands. What will you els, what will you els?

Δ: Progressum et profectum in virtute et veritate ad Dei honorem et gloriam.⁸⁰

Mi: This hath answered all our⁸¹ cauillations.

Δ: What hath answered all our Cavillations?

Mi: Thow hast written.

One thing you shall see more, as a persuasion to the Infirmitie.

E.T: The two byrds, which were there, before, and gon out of sight, now are shewed agayn: but none of the bundells appere. They seme to

⁷⁸ The yoking or cuppling of the two byrds.

⁷⁹ E.T. sayd the Voyce to be like Michael his voyce.

⁸⁰ Progressum . . . gloriam: "Progress and increase in virtue and truth to God's honor and glory." -Ed.

⁸¹ Fortè: "your." -Ed.

grow to a huge bignes, as byg as mowntaynes: incredibly byg: and they seeme to hover up in the ayre, and to fly up toward heuen, and with theyr wyngs to towch the sky: And one of them with his bill seemeth to take sterres into it: and the other bird to take them from the same byrd, and to place them agayn in the Skye. And this they did very often: and in diuerse places of the heuen with great celeritie.

After this they semed to fly ouer Cities, and townes, and to break the clowdes in peces, as they passed: and to cause all dust to flye from all walls, and towres, as they passed, and so to make them clene. And in the streetes, as these two Byrds flew, seemed diuerse brave fellows, like bisshops, and Princis and Kings, to pass: and by the wyngs of these byrds, they were stricken down. But simple seely⁸² ones, like beggers, lame and halt, childern, and old aged men, and wemen, seemed to pass quietly, untowched and unouerthrown of these two Byrds.

And than they seemed to come to a place, where they lifted up, with the endes of theyr wyngs, fowre Carkasses of dead men (owte of the grownde) with crownes on theyr heds: wherof one seemed to be a Childe. First these 4, seemed leane, and deade: Then they seemed quick⁸³ and in good liking:⁸⁴ And they being raysed up: parted eche from the other, and went into 4 sundry wayes, Est, West, North and Sowth.

Now these two fowles hauing theyr wyngs ioyned together, light uppon a great hill: and there the First fowle gryped the erth mightly and there appeared diuerse Metalls, and the ^ Fowle spurned them away, still.

Then appeared an old mans hed, heare and all, on; very much wythered. They tossed it betwene them, with theyr feete: And they

⁸² Seely: "looking." -Ed.

⁸³ Quick: "alive." -Ed.

⁸⁴ Liking: "appearance." -Ed.

brake it: And in the hed appeared (in steede of the braynes) a stone, rownd, of the bignes of a Tenez ball of 4, cullours, White, black, red, and greene.

One of them (he that brake the skull), putteth that rownd stone to the others mowth or byll. The other eateth or nybbleth on it, and so doth the other allso.

¶ Now these two byrds, are turned into men: And eche of them haue two Crownes like paper Crownes, white and bright, but seeme not to be syluer. Theyr teeth are gold, and so likewise theyr hands, feete, tung, eyes, and eares likewise All gold.

On eche of these two men, ar 26 Crownes of Gold, on theyr right sholders, euery of them, greater then other. They haue, by theyr sides, Sachels, like palmers⁸⁵ bags, full of gold, and they take it oute, and seemed to sow it, as corne; going or stepping forward, like Seedmen.

E.T: Then sayd Michael, This, is the ende.

E.T: The two men be vanished away.

Mi: Learne the Mysterie hereof.

Δ: Teache us (ô ye spirituall Creatures.) Than sayd Michael,

Mi: Joye and helth giue unto the riche:

Open strong locks:

Be Mercifull to the wicked:

Pluck up the poore:

Read unto the Ignorant:

I haue satisfyed thee: Understand:

Read them ouer: God shall giue thee some light in them. I haue satisfyed thee:

⁸⁵ A palmer was a traveler who carried a palm branch as a token of having made a pilgrimage to the Holy Land. -Ed.

Both, How you shalbe ioyned,

By whome,
To what Intent, and purpose:
What you are,
What you were,
What you shalbe, (videlicet) in Deo.⁸⁶

Lok up this Myserie:
Forget not our Cownsayle:
O GOD, thow openest all things: Secret are thy Mysteries and holy
is thy name, for euer. The vertue of his presence, here left, be amongst
you.

Δ: Amen.

Δ: What am I to do, with the wax, the Table, the ring or the
Lamine? &c.

Mi: When the things be ready, then thow shalt know, how to use
them.

Δ: How shall I do for the grauing of the ring; May not another man
do it, though, E.T. graue it not?

Mi: Cause them to be made up, (according to Instruction) by any
honest man.

Δ: What say you as concerning the Chamber, for our practise? May
my fardermost little chamber, serue, yf the bed be taken downe?

Mi: At my next Call, for the Chamber, you shall know what to do.

⁸⁶ (Videlicet) in Deo: "(namely) in God." -Ed.

Δ: Benedictus Deus in donis suis:

et sanctus in omnibus operibus eius.⁸⁷

Amen. ended hor. 4½⁸⁸

⁸⁷ Benedictus . . . eius: "Blessed is God in his gifts, and holy in all his works." -Ed.

⁸⁸ Betwixt the end of the 3rd book, whose last action was May 4, 1582, & the beginning of this 4th book whose first action was on Nov. 15, 1582, is a great chasme of time. Occasioned perchance by some falling out with E. Kelly which is implied in this mention of Reconciliatio Kelliana. This is the first time that Edward Kelly appears to bee the seer, at lest under that name, there beeing no account, neither in the printed nor Mss. books how hee came to Dee. Queue: If Edw. Kelly was not the same with Ed. Talbot this latter beeing his assumed name, perchance after he was in orders. For Weever in his *Funeral Monuments* speaking of Ed. Kelley the Necromancer, sayes hee also went by the name of Ed Talbot. -E.A. Dee's diary fills in some details of this period: "May 4th, Mr. Talbot went. May 23, Robert Gardener declared unto me hora 4½ a certeyn great philosophicall secret, as he had termed it, of a spirituall creatuer, and was this day willed to come to me and declare it, which was solemnly done, and with common prayer. July 13th, Mr. Talbot cam abowt 3 of the klok afternone, with whom I had some wordes of unkendnes: we parted frendely: he sayd that the Lord Morley had the Lord Mountegle his bokes. He promised me some of Doctor Myniver's bokes." James Halliwell, ed., *The Private Diary of Dr. John Dee* (New York: AMS Press, 1968), pp. 15-16. -Ed.



Quartus

Liber Mysteriorum

A^o. 1582

Δ

Nouembris 15.

Post reconciliationem Kellianam.

Miserere nostri Deus

Dimitte nobis, sicut et nos dimittimus¹

Quartus . . . dimittimus: "Fourth Book of the Mysteries. November 15, 1582. After Kelley's reconciliation. O God, have mercy on us, forgive us as we forgive." Compare with Matthew 6:12. Ashmole has written "Liber 5^{us}" on the bottom of the page. -Ed.

*Thursday. Nouembris 15.*²

...

At the first, Uriel pluckt a thing from under the Covenant Table: and it grew Rownd, Bigger & bigger, (of fyrie Cullour) bigger then all the world: and he sayd to me ^Δ:

Uriel: Ultima est hæc ætas vestram, quæ tibi revelata erit.³

Then cam swarming into the stone, Thowsand yea Innumerable people, Uriel sayd,

Est in mundo, et incipiet cum illo alter Mundus.⁴ and he bad,

Note the forme of the thing seen. Note the cullour. The forme of the thing seen was a Globe Transparent fyre within which the people seemed to stand, Towers and Castells. &c. did appere therein, likewise. This Globe did king CARMARA seeme to go uppon, & to measure it: and there appeared a very riche chayre to be set: allmost at the top of the Convexitie of the sayd Globe. wherein he sat down.

...

Michael: The Mysteries of God haue a tyme: and Behold, Thow art provyded for that tyme.

² In HM, this section is titled, "Some Notice of peculier formes, and attire, wherein, the Kings, Princis and Ministers Heptarchicall appeared, and of some their Actions, and gesture at their apperance. &c." The first leaf has been lost, but HM and CHM record the following actions of that day (order uncertain): In the first leafe were the offices of the two Kings Blumaza & Bobogel recited, as appears by the Note at the bottome of the 2d page: & also 5 May 1583 & perhaps this first leafe was lost before he drew up his Booke of *De Bonorum Angelorum invitationibus* because I find a Blank where Blumaza is placed. -E.A. *De Bonorum Angelorum*: "Concerning the invitation of good angels." -Ed.

³ Ultima . . . erit: "This age of yours is the last age, which shall be revealed to you." -Ed.

⁴ Est in mundo, et incipiet cum illo alter Mundus: "It (or he) is in the world, and another World will commence with that one." -Ed.

...

All those before spoken of are Subiect to thy Call....

Of friendship, at any tyme, thou mayst see them: and know what thou wilt.

Every one (to be short) shall at all times and seasons shew thee direction in any thing....

One thing I answer thee, for all offycis. Thou hast in subiection all officis. Use them whan it pleas thee, as thy Instruction hath byn.

...

King CARMARA⁵ - This king, (being called first by Uriel,) appeared, as a Man, very well proportioned: clad in a long purple Robe: and with a Triple Crowne of Gold on his hed. At his first coming he had 7 (like men) wayting on him: which afterwarde declared them selues to be the 7 Princis Heptarchicall. Uriel deliuered unto this king (at his first appearing) a rod or straight little rownd Staff of Gold: diuided into three equall distinctions, whereof, two were dark or blak: and the third bright red. This red he kept still in his hand.

...

King BOBOGEL appeared in a blak veluet coat, and his hose close, rownd hose with veluet upperstocks: ouerlayde with gold lace: On his hed a veluet hatcap, with a blak feather in it: with a Cape hanging on one of his sholders, his purse hanging about his neck and so put under his gyrdell at which hong a gylt rapier, his berd was long: he had pantofells and pynsons. And he sayd, I

⁵ This king onely, is the ordrer, or disposer, of all the doctrine, which I terme Heptarchicall, as first, by calling the 7 Princis and after that, the 7 kings: and by giving instructions for use and Practise of the whole doctrine Heptarchicall for the first purpose, and frute therof to be enioyed by me: of two other there was onely Mention made. -Δ (HM).

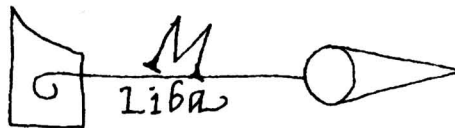
weare these Robes, not in respect of my self, but of my government, etc.



Prince BORNOGO appeared in a red Robe, with a Gold Cerclet on his hed: he shewed his Seale, and sayde, This it is.



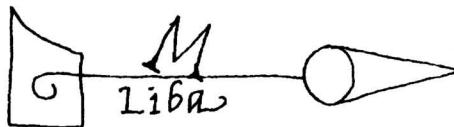
King BABALEL...



Prince BEFATES appeared in a long red robe, with a cerclet of Gold on his hed. He had a golden girdle: and on it written BEFATES. He opened his bosom, & appeared leane: and seamed to haue feathers under his Robes. His Seale, or Character, is this:



King BYNEPOR...

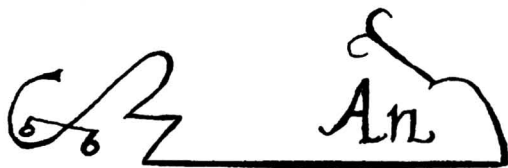


Prince BUTMONO appeared in a red Robe, with a golden Cerclet on his hed:

His Seal is this:



King BNASPOL...



Prince BLISDON appeared in a Robe of many Cullours: and on his hed a Cerclet of Gold. His Character, or seale:



King BNAPSEN...



Prince BRORGES appeared in his red apparayle: & he opened his Cloathes and there did issue, mighty & most terrible or grisely flames of fyre out of his sides: whych no mortall eyr could abyde to loke uppon any long while. His Seale, or Character is this:



King BALIGON...



King BLVMAZA...



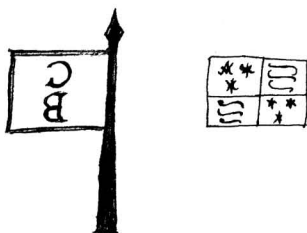
Prince BRALGES appeared in a red Robe with a Cerclet on his hed. This is the Seale of his gouernment:



One⁶ (of the 7 which was by him) he who stode before him, with his face from ward him, now turned his face to him ward.⁷

✠ Regnat potestas tua in filijs. Ecce signum Operis.⁸

Δ: There appeared these two letters, euersed and aversed, in a white flag and a woman standing by, whose armes did not appere.



✠ Note. My name is Carmara.⁹

Δ: On the other side of the flag appeared the armes of England. The flag semed old.

⁶ Note. For, of Hagonel we never had any thing before. -Δ.

⁷ To him ward: "toward him." -Ed.

⁸ Regnat . . . Operis: "Your power rules in the sons. Behold, the sign of The Work." Note the crown symbol drawn above the "H" (for "homo" or man) denotes royalty. Dee uses the crown symbol in his diary to signify the queen. -Ed.

⁹ Carmara, otherwise Baligon. Vide . . .

Adhuc duo, et tempus non est.¹⁰ (Δ: Sayd the man¹¹ which stode before Carmara,) and lifted up his hand and avaunced his body: and the other 6 gaue him place. He spred his armes abroad: and so turned rownd toward all the multitude (appering within the Globe:) as if he wold require audience. He sayd than thus,

The Sonnes of men,¹² and theyr sonnes, ar subiected unto my commaudent.¹³ This is a mystery. I haue spoken of it. Note it throwghly. They ar my seruants. By them thou shalt work mervayles. I gouern for a tyme:¹⁴ My tyme¹⁵ is yet to come. The Operation of the Earth is subiect to my powre:¹⁶ And I am the first of the twelve. My seale is called Barees: and here it is.



(Δ: This he held in the palm of his hand: as thowgh it had byn a ring, hanging allso over his myddle fingers¹⁷). With a great voyce he sayd, Come ô ye people of the erth:¹⁸

¹⁰ Adhuc . . . non est: "There is two to come, there is no more" (in John Dee's words, see below). -Ed.

¹¹ Prince HAGONEL. Note. All the Princis, seemed to be men, and to haue red Robes, but this Prince, his Robe was shorter then the others. All the Princis, had Cerclets, of Gold on theyr heds: not crowns not coronets. -Δ (HM).

¹² HM reads "light" in three places. -Ed.

¹³ Filij & Filij Filiorum, supra libro 2^o.-Δ. "See above in book 2 on the Sons and the Sons of the Sons." -Ed.

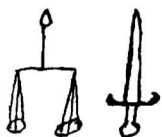
¹⁴ Δ: generally.

¹⁵ Δ: particular, or my government lasteth yet.

¹⁶ Kings of the erth &c.

¹⁷ HM reads, "This Prince held in the palme of his right hand, as yf it had byn a rownd ring, with a prick in the mydst: hanging allso over his myddle fingers, which he affirmed to be his seale: and sayd the name of it, to be Barees." -Ed.

¹⁸ All people of the erth etc.



1. (Δ: Then there cam a great Number of only Kings, from amongst the rest of the multitude within the Globe: They kneele down; and some kyssed his seale and some did stand frowning at it. Those kings that kissed it, had, eche of them, a sword in one hand, and a payre of Ballance in the other: the balances being euen, and counterpeysed.¹⁹ But the other had allso ballances, which hong uneven, the one scale lower then the other. The euen balanced kings were of glad cheare:²⁰ but the other wer of a sowre and hevy cowntynance.

It is, and shalbe so: And the workmanship of this, is to this ende.

2. Then cam noble men: (Δ: and he held up his hand,) and they parted them selues into two Companyes: and ouer the heds of them, appered these two wordes. Vera,²¹ over one Company: and Impura²² over the other.

Vera	Impura
.....
.....
.....&c&c

Verus cum veris, et Impurus cum Impuris.²³

¹⁹ Counterpoised: “balanced.” -Ed.

²⁰ Cheare = cheer: “disposition.” -Ed.

²¹ Vera: “true.” -Ed.

²² Impura: “filth.” -Ed.


²³ Verus . . . Impuris: “The true with the true, and the filthy with the filthy.” -Ed.


3. Come ô ye Princes of Nature. Δ: Then cam in Anncient and graue Cowtenanced men in blak gownes: of all manner of sortes.²⁴ Diuerse of them had bokes: and some had stiks like measures;²⁵ and they parted into two Cumpanies. Eyther cumpany had his principall. One of these Cumpanies fell at debate among them selues. The other Cumpany stode still. There appeared before eche of these Cumpanyes a great boke. Uppon the bokes was written; on the one, Lucem; and on the other, Mundi tenebras.²⁶ The Forman spred his hands ouer them, and they all fell down: and the boke with Lucem²⁷ on it waxed bright: and they which attended on that boke (Lucem) departed.

Gather, by these few spriggs the Cumpas of the whole field.

Δ: I demaunded of him, what his name was: and he answered,²⁸

I am Primus et Quartus²⁹ Hagonel.

Δ: This Pri. Quar, shewed his³⁰ seal  to the Multitudes and they beheld it, and of them some florish, som stand, and some fall.

1. [Δ: Then he sayd,] The first were the Kings of the earth; which tell the priks of the last , take place, are, and shall be. In this

²⁴ Philosophers.

²⁵ Geometry.

²⁶ Δ He hath recyted the offices of two Kings, as of Blumaza and Bobogel. And then he sayeth, Gather by these few spriggs &c: Which Bobogel is over the Nobility and Wisdome, of Metalls, & all Nature. -Δ. Lucem: "Light"; Mundi tenebras: "the darkness of the world." -Ed.


²⁷ Lucem: "light." -Ed.

²⁸ The foreman with the short [coat].

²⁹ Primus et quartus: "The First and the Fourth." -Ed.

³⁰ The.

thow mayst lern science. Note a myserie. Take a place, is as much, as, Ende with place.

Δ: Then he threw down a great many of them before him. Here is his name, (pointing to  [Δ = Carmara³¹] on the upper part of the Globe.) Not withstanding I am his Minister - [D in generall particularly Blumaza.]


There are kings fals and uniust, whose powre as I haue subuerted and destroyed, so shalt thow. Thow seest the weapons.³² The Secret is not great.

Δ: I know not what the weapons are. Pri. Quar. sayd, Write, and I will tell thee. Δ: The three, of eche side did syt down while Pri Quar did thus speake.

I am the first of the fowrth Hagonel.

Δ: I had thowght that ye sayd before, you had byn the first and the Fowrth of Hagonel.

Pri Quar. I am HAGONEL, and govern HAGONEL. There is Hagonel the first, Hagonel the second, and Hagonel the third, I am the first that gouern the three. Therefore I am the first and last of the fowre.³³

Δ: In the meane space of the former multitude some were falln deade, of some theyr mowthes drawn awry: of some theyr legs broken &c. And then, pointing to  (Δ: = Carmara) he sayd,

In his name, with my name, by my character and the rest of my Ministers, are these things browght to pass.³⁴ These that lye here, are lyers, witches, enchanters, Deceyvers, Blasphemers:

³¹ Carmara his Minister: forte Prince Hagonel.

³² Weapons wherewith to destroy.

³³ Note this First and last, bycause of Baligon ali. Carmara, his prince & tables.

³⁴ Practise with spirituall weapons.

and finally all they that use NATVRE, with abuse: and dishonor him which rayneth for euer.

2. The second assembly were the Gouverners of the Earth, whose glory yf they be good, the weapons which we haue towght thee, will augment: and Consequently, if they be euill, pervert.
3. The third assembly are those which taste of Gods mysteries, and drink of the iuyce of Nature, whose myndes are diuided, some with eyes looking toward heaven, the rest to the center of the Earth. Ubi non Gloria, nec bonitas nec bonum est.³⁵ It is wrowght, I say, it is wrowght (for thy understanding) by the seuen of the seuen which wer the sonnes of sempiternitie,³⁶ whose names thow hast written³⁷ and recorded to Gods Glory.³⁸

Δ: Then he held up his hands, and seemed to speak but was not herd (of EK³⁹) as he told me: and theruppon Pri Quar sayd, Neyther shalt thow heare, for it is Vox hominibus non digna. Illi autem cum filijs suis laudauerunt Deum. Benedictus est qui fil-
ius est unicus, et Gloria mundi.⁴⁰

³⁵ Ubi . . . est: "Where there is neither glory, nor goodness, nor good." -Ed.

³⁶ Sempiternitie: "eternity." -Ed.

³⁷ Note. Practise. Lib^o. 2^o, Filij Filiorum: ("In book 2, sons of the sons." -Ed)

E ----	1. These 7 are named in the great Circle
An ----	2. following
Aue ----	3.
Liba ----	4.
Rocle ----	5.
Hagonel ----	6.
Ilemese ----	7.

³⁸ Note. Prince Butmono sayd this: but the office is under king Bnaspol, whose prince is Blisdon. The Mystery of this I know not yet: For Blisdon will be fownd to be the proper minister of king Bnaspol. Vide Anno 1583 May 5th, of the Making of Mensa faeders, and my Golder Lamine. -Δ (HM). Mensa faederis: "the table (or altar) of the law (or covenant)." -Ed.

³⁹ In the manuscript, Dee has written this as "E.ꝥK." -Ed.

⁴⁰ Vox hominibus . . . mundi: "The voice not worthy for the people, but these with

EK saw like a black cloth⁴¹ come-in and cover all the forepart of the stone, so that nothing appeared in the stone. Then was hard a voyce saying, Loke for us no more at this tyme: This⁴² shalbe a token, (from this tyme forth) to leaue.⁴³

Δ: Laus et Honor sit Deo Immortali et Omnipotenti nunc et semp. Amen.⁴⁴

1582 Die ♀ A meridie: hora 5. Nouemb. 16.


Δ: He with the triple Crown on his hed, in the long purple robe, had now onely that part of the rod in his hand, which was clere red: the other two parts being vanished awaye. He shoke his rod, and the Globe under him did quake. Then he sayde, Ille enim est Deus, Venite.⁴⁵ Δ: All the 7 did bow at his speache. He holdeth up the flag, with the picture of a woman paynted on it, with the

their sons have praised God. Blessed is he who is the only son, and glory of the world.” -Ed.

⁴¹ The black cloth of silence and staying.

⁴² The Token to leaue of, by a black shadding all in the stone.

⁴³ Note: how he governeth Three, and Carmara (his King) hath also a Triple crown.

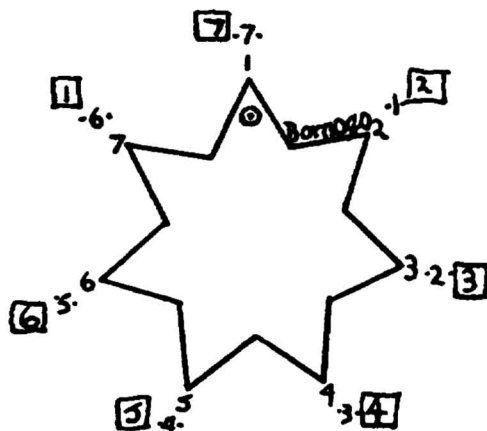
⁴⁴  This Character seemes to stand for Carmara, as apperes from severall places in fol .2.a. & b. & many other. It appears by a note of Dr. Δ (*De Heptarchia* &c: Cap. i.) that Michael & Uriel were present at the begining of these revealed Misteries & gave authority to Carmara to order the whole Heptarchicall Revelacon. Perhaps this authority was entred in the first lost leafe of this 4th booke (thowgh Dr. Dee calls it the 2d Booke in his Note.) see Chap: 2 at the begining. By a marginall note at the beginning of the first Chapter, it should seeme, that the Dr. meanes by the first Booke the Action only of the 16 of Nov. 1582, & by the 2d Booke the Actions of the 17, 19 & 20 of Nov. 1582. But his marginal note of 19 should be 20 of Nov. for so it appears by the Actions entred. The 21 of Nov: vizt: the action of that day he calls the Appendix of the 2d chapter. -E.A. Laus . . . semp.: “Praise and honor be to the eternal and omnipotent God, now and ever. Amen.” -Ed.

⁴⁵ Ille . . . Venite: “Truly he is God. Come.” -Ed.



(as before was noted) on the right side of her.

And on the other side of the flag, were the Armes of England. He florished with the flag very much, and went as though he did marche, in warlike manner uppon the upper and utterparte of the Globe. He pointed up to the Flag and sayde, There is two to come, there is no more.⁴⁶ All the people in the Globe seamed to be glad and reioyce. Now he setteth down the Flag, and sayd, Come, Come, Come; And the 7 cam all before him. They hold up all together, Heptagonum stellare, seeming to be Copper.⁴⁷



1: The first Holder,⁴⁸ sayd, Me nosti:⁴⁹ and so pulled his hand of from the Heptagonum.

⁴⁶ Δ: So he sayd in latin, in the forpart of the leaf before.

⁴⁷ Note. Copper apperteyneth to ♀. -Δ. HM reads, "All the Princis held up to gither, Heptagonon stellare, (as I terme it) and it seemed to be of Copper." -Ed.

⁴⁸ Δ Forte Bagenol / Hagonel, if H be for B. Then Bagonel conteyned Bagenol.

⁴⁹ Me nosti: "You have known me." -Ed.

- 2: The second of the .7. taketh his hand of and doth reverence and sayd, I am he which haue powre to alter the Incorruption of NATVRE. With my seale, I seale her and she is become perfect. I prevayle in Metalls: in the knowledge of them: I haue byn in Powre with many, but Actually with few. I am of the first of the⁵⁰ twelue the Second of the Seuen. Wilt thou know my name?

Δ: Full gladly.

I am BORNOGO: this is my Seale: This is my true Character. What thow desyrest in me shalbe fullfilled. Glory to God. Δ: He kneled down, and held up his hands toward the Heptagonum.

- 3: The next (or third) sayd, I am the Prince of the Seas: My powre is uppon the waters. I drowned Pharao: and haue destroyed the wicked. I gaue life unto the seas: and by me the Waters move. My name was known to Moyses. I liued in Israel: Beholde the tyme of Gods visitation. I haue measured, and it is '8'.⁵¹ This is a myserie. God be mercifull to his people. Behold, Behold Lo, behold, my mighty powr consisteth in this. Lern wisdome by my words. This is wrowght for thy erudition, what I enstruct thee from God: Loke unto thy charge truely. Thow art yet deade: Thow shalt be reuiued. But oh, bless God truely: The blessing that God giueth me, I will bestow uppon thee by permission.

Ô, how mighty is our god which walked on the waters; which sealed me with his name, whose Glory is without ende. Thow hast written me, but yet dost not Know me. Use me in the name of God. I shall at the tyme appointed be ready. I will manifest the works of the seas, and the miracles of the depe shalbe knowne. I was Glorified in God. I Skurged the world. Oh oh

⁵⁰ One of the first of the Twelue.

⁵¹ '8. Gods visitation. And it is 8: may be 8 yeres added to this tyme: and that maketh 1590. Nouemb. 16. That 8, or 88, I know not yet.

oh, how they do repent. Misery is theyr ende, and Calamitie theyr meat. Behold my name is print..... for euer: behold it. Δ: He opened his bosom and seamed leane: and seemed to haue feathers⁵² under his robes. He had a golden gyrdel: and on it, written BEFAFES. Than he sayd, Blessed be thow Ô God, God, God, for euer. I haue said.

Δ: He toke his hand of from the Heptagonum.

Δ: The blak Cloth was drawn: which is now appointed to be our token from them, that we must leave of for that instant.

Δ: Deo soli, omnis honor, et Gloria.⁵³ Amen.

Friday. After drinking at night, circiter horam 8 ã.

Δ: On the left side of H (sitting in the Chayre) appeared yet three, holding up the Heptagonum, on one on the other side below. He sat with his face from EK toward me. I stode and my face sowthward. EK he sat at the same table, with his face Northward.

4: The Fowrth⁵⁴ (holding below) Cryed: Earth, Earth, Earth.

EK: He speaketh Hollow, so that I understand nothing. Δ: Than he answered, They are the wordes of my Creation, which you are not worthy to understand. My Powre is in Erth:⁵⁵ and I

⁵² Prince Befafes with feathers under his robes.

⁵³ Deo soli . . . gloria: "All honor and glory to God alone." -Ed.

⁵⁴ Prince Butmono. -Ed.


⁵⁵ In earth.

kepe the bodies of the Dead.⁵⁶ Their numbers are in my bokes. I haue the key of Dissolution. Behold, Behold, All things, yea All things, haue theyr workmanship with me. For I am the ende of working. EK: He falleth down prostrate, and speaketh, I know not what, Δ: Than he sayd, I haue the light of his anger,⁵⁷ and I will destroy it. Ô, Ô, Behold, It is a light left within the bottomles pit. It is the ende and the Last. O blessed shall thy name be, Blessed shall thy name be for euer. Behold this is my seale:




Behold, the bowels of the earth are at my opening. Δ: Than I requested him to help me with some portion of Threasure hid,⁵⁸ to pay my detts withall and to buy things necessarie &c. He answered, O wordling thow shalt be satisfied with welth of this world. Behold Behold Lo, lo Behold, vehemently I say Behold. I haue, horded Threasure, for the sonne of perdition,⁵⁹ the first Instrument of his destruction. But, lo these Cauerns. Δ: He shewed to EK the Cavernes of the earth, and secret places therof and afterward sayd: **Mark this, All spirits, inhabiting within the earth, where, their habitation is, of force, not of will, (except the myddest of my self, which I know not), are subiect to the powre hereof.** Δ: Pointing to his Seale.⁶⁰ With this you shall govern,

⁵⁶ The Dead mens bodyes.

⁵⁷ The Light of his anger. 

⁵⁸ Threasure hid requested.

⁵⁹ Antichrist

⁶⁰ How can the middest of a spirituall creature be imagined? My dowt to ax. He meant the middest or center of the Earth. The middest of his Charge. 

with this you shall unlok. With this (in his name who rayneth) you shall discouer her entrayles. How say you now? Can you do it? Ar not your Magiciens acquaynted with me? Yt greueth me to regester the bones of the Wycked. Prayse him Butmono, Prayse him Butmono, prayse him. Δ: Is that your name, I pray you tell me. He answered, yea it is my name. It is the ende⁶¹ of all things. EK: Now he sitteth down.

5. Δ: Now the Fifth turned his face toward EK (Who [EK] sat before me, and opposite unto me) and stepped furth and sayd: I am life and breath in Liuing Creatures.⁶² All things liue by me, the Image of One excepted.⁶³ Behold the face of the Earth. EK: There appeareth all Kindes of brute beastes, fowles, Dragons, and other. Δ: He Clapt his hands to gither and they all, vanished away at ones: they cam agayn: and went then away and retorned no more. But the people within the Globe remayned still as from the begynning: he sayd while the beastes were yet in sight, Lo, all these, do I endue with life: my seale is theyr Glory. Of God I am Sanctified: I reioyse: (1) the Liuing, (2) The ende, and (3) begynning of these things,⁶⁴ are known unto me: and by sufferance I do dispose them untyll my Violl be run. EK: He taketh owt of his bosom a little vyol glass: and there seameth to be fiue or six sponefulls of oyle in it. Δ: He answered and sayde, That it is: and it is a myserie. Δ: I spake somewhat of this oyle, and he answered me, and sayd, Thow sayst true. In token of God his Powre and Glory, write down BLISDON.

⁶¹ Δ A great dowl . . . me yet, the diuersity of the 4th and fifth officers, and officis as they are here, and in the Repetition ensuing.

⁶² Δ: in *Animantibus* *bratij*. ("in living creatures." -Ed.) Sloane 3677 misreads "animantibus oratis."

⁶³ (Δ = man.)

⁶⁴ *Virtus officij sui* -Δ. ("The power of his office." -Ed.)

EK: He taketh his hand of from the Heptagonum.

6. The sixth pulleth open his Clothes and red apparell, and there yssueth mighty fyre oute of his sides. [Δ: Note, the cote of the first of these seuen is shorter⁶⁵ then any of his fellows coats are.] The sight of the fyre is very owgly, grisely, terrible, and skarsly of mans eye can be beholden. At length he pluckt his coates to gither, and sayd to EK, Ô I wold shew thee, but flesh and blud cannot see. Write shortly, (it is enowgh) Noui Januam Mortis.⁶⁶ Δ: Than sayd he to me in an earnest muse, Ô, Muse not, My words ar dark; but with those that see, light enowgh. Et per cussit Gloria Dei, Impiorum parietes. Dixi.⁶⁷

Δ: In mervaylous raging fyre, this worde **BRORGES**⁶⁸ did appeare, tossed to and fro in the furious flames thereof, so abundantly streaming out, as yf all the world had byn on fyre, so that EK, could not endure (without great annoyance to his ey sight) to behold the same. And finally he sayd, Mysteria in animis vestris imprimate.⁶⁹ And so the fyre vanished away.

7. EK: The stone semeth all Blew: and **onely One now beholdeth the Heptagonum: all the rest being set down: who semed now to extend theyr hands one toward an other, as thowgh they played, now being rid of theyr work.** Now the last putteth his hand to the Heptagonon and turned his face to EK hauing his face (all the while before) turned toward D. He sayd, The Creatures liuing in my Dominion,⁷⁰ ar subiect to my powre. Behold I am

⁶⁵ Short Coat. The first.

⁶⁶ Novi Januam Mortis: "I have known the Gate of Death." -Ed.

⁶⁷ Et percussit . . . Dixi: "And the Glory of God has struck the walls of the wicked. I have spoken." -Ed.

⁶⁸ Prince Brorges.

⁶⁹ Mysteria . . . imprimate: "Engrave these mysteries on your souls/minds." -Ed.

⁷⁰ Δ forte, in Aëre.

BRALGES.⁷¹ The powres under my subiection are Invisible. Lo what... are. EK: All the world semed to be in brightnes or w... fire: and therin appered Diuerse little things like little smokes without any forme.⁷² He sayd, This is the seale⁷³ of my Gouernment. Behold I am come, I will teache the names without Numbers. The Creatures subiect unto me shalbe known unto you.

¶ Beware of wauering. Blot out suspition⁷⁴ of us for we are Gods Creatures, that haue rayned, do rayne & shall raigne for euer. All our Mysteries shalbe known unto you.⁷⁵

EK: All the 7 vanished away, onely H remayning who sayd (being stand up, and leaning uppon his Chayre, and turned to EK), Behold, these things, and theyr mysteries shalbe known unto you, reseruing the Secrets⁷⁶ of him which raigneth for euer: [EK: The voyce of a multitude, answered singing,] Whose name is Great for euer. H Open your eyes, and you shall see from the Highest to the lowest.⁷⁷ The Peace of God be uppon you.

Δ: Amen. EK: The blak Cloth was drawn before all the things conteyned in the stone: which was the Token of Ceasing for that tyme:

⁷¹ But Baligon, als Carmara, in the ende of the boke sayeth it to be his office. Consider well. Prince Bralges hath Blumaza his king.

⁷² The powres under his Subiection are Invisible. They appeared like little white smokes without any forme. All the world semed to be in brightnese. -HM

⁷³ The seale.

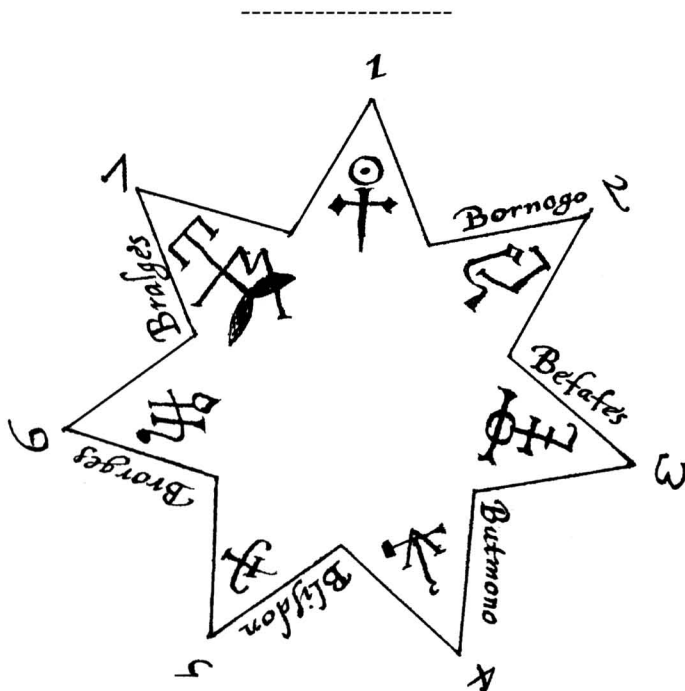
⁷⁴ Exchue Wauering or suspition.

⁷⁵ All Mysteries shalbe known to us. -Δ. The last of 7 Princes of the boke spoke hereof his words. -(HM)



⁷⁶ Secreta Dei, non sunt hominibus reuelanda. -Δ. ("Secrets of God are not to be revealed to men." -Ed.)

⁷⁷ Δ: Note Highest and Lowest to be understode perhaps in Tabula Collecta.

Sanctus sanctus sanctus Dominus Deus noster.⁷⁸



⁷⁸ BLUMAZA Rex est super Reges Terrae et illius sunt primus princeps, et illius Ministri, ut conycio.



Hanc partem primam vocat  unum Librum: in quinta pagina sequente, ad hanc Notam  .

It shold seme that this character shold be onely a Circle and a pryck fol.6.b. I haue forgotten how I cam by this Crosse annexed to it.

alr Remember. Obelison his promise to me of knowing and using. (This note is next to "Befafes" on the diagram. -Ed.)

Words: 9
9
9
7
11

45

Sanctus sanctus sanctus Dominus Deus noster: "Holy, holy, holy, O Lord, our God"; Blumaza Rex est ... Notam: "I conclude that Blumaza is the king, and rules the kings of the Earth, and they are his first prince and servants.  calls this first part one book in the fifth page following, marked with the symbol  ." -Ed.

*Anno 1582: Saterdag. Die 17. Nouemb: A meridie hora circiter 1 ã.*⁷⁹


Δ: The Cloth remayned drawn, a pretty while after we had done our prayers to God, and so was all the things in the stone kept from sight.

Δ: The Man with the Crowne,⁸⁰ (he onely) appeared first, and the transparent Globe with the people of the world in it, as before. The Diaphanitie, or (as it wer) the Shell of the forsaid Globe, was very glystring bright. The man⁸¹ shaked his hand toward me and the bak of the Chayre was toward EK. On the globe appered a trace like a seame, of two things ioyned to gither, or rather a very narrow path: which began below on the Convex superficies of this globe and went upward to the verticall point or (as it wer) the zenith prik of it: but from the lower part of the same to the place where the chayre stode, it seamed broder, and more worn, than from the chayre up to the vertex or top prik: for that part (which semed to be about the eighth part of the whole) did appere very smalle, and unworne, or unoccupied.

Δ: He turning his face toward EK, spake thus, I haue declared things past and present. And now I speak of things to come. The Whole shalbe manifest. Nam ipse unus et Indiuisibilis est. Gloria Gloria Creatori nostro.⁸² Two partes⁸³ are yet to come, the rest are finished allready. Δ: He shewed the rownd Table⁸⁴ with letters and numbers which master Kelly sent me: and than he toke it away agayn. Then he sayd,

⁷⁹ "Around one in the morning." -Ed

⁸⁰ Carmara al: Baligon

⁸¹ In the manuscript, this word has a crown drawn above it, i.e., . -Ed.

⁸² Nam ipse . . . nostro: "For he himself is one and indivisible. Glory, glory, glory be to our Creator." -Ed

⁸³ Δ forte, of this work.

⁸⁴ The rownd Table.

Venite gradatim repetamus,⁸⁵ opera Dei.⁸⁶

Δ: The first of the .7. which had yesterday appeared, did now appere with the short robe,⁸⁷ as he did before. Than H sayd smylingly (being turned to EK),

Hæc sunt documenta tua,⁸⁸ quæ nondum intelligis.⁸⁹

Δ: Than the man with the short robe, the Forman of the 7 (yesterday appearing) sayd,⁹⁰

Unus est Deus, et Unum est opus nostrum.⁹¹

Δ: Then cam very many uppon the Globe his convex superficies and they sayd,

Parati sumus seruire Deo nostro.⁹²

⁸⁵ NOTE this to be a REPETITION of the Heptagonon this little Treatise æffore. Lern to reconcile the 4th and the 5th. -Δ. In HM, Dee notes, “At the Call of King Carmara (in the Second handling of this Heptarchicall doctrine), whan he sayd, Venite, Repetamus Opera Dei, Appered Prince Hagonel.” Venite . . . Dei: “Come, let us renew the works of God step by step.” -Ed.

⁸⁶ Δ hā . . . bis dext . . . Adhuc duo, et tempus non est. (This reading is from Sloane 3677. It is illegible in Sloane 3188. -Ed.)

⁸⁷ Short Coat.

⁸⁸ Δ: I think he ment by the rownd table shewed, which Mr. K. had sent me &c, bycause the names cam out of that Table.

⁸⁹ Haec sunt . . . intelligis: “These are your lessons, which you do not yet understand.” -Ed.

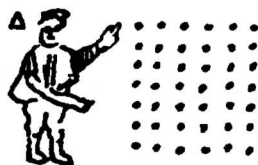
⁹⁰ According to HM this was Hagonel. -Ed.

⁹¹ Unus . . . nostrum: “There is one God, and there is one work of ours.” -Ed.

⁹² Parati . . . nostro: “We have been prepared to serve our God.” -Ed.

Δ: Eche of these had somewhat in theyr hands. Som had crownes, some garments &c.⁹³

The number of them was: 42: and stode in this order:



and sayd embracing (as it wer) the whole nûmber of this Cumpany,⁹⁴

Et nomen meum, numerus est totus

Nec est crimen in numero nostro

Moyses nos nominauit.

Potestas istorum, quàm istarum, quamvis non una,
tamen in uno sunt.⁹⁵

Δ: I sayd that I thowght there wanted at the begynning of this sentence, this word Tam.⁹⁶ He answered, it might be understode by his pointing to them there standing, and sayd farder in respect of this my dowt, Quatenus est hæc vanitas vestrorum? Tu nosti numeros hos esse in Deo, in Mundo, et in minori mundo. In Deo, id est Nobiscum. In Mundo, quantum apud vos: In minori Mundo, quantum in vobis.

(Combinatur animus tuus cogitatione.) Disseritur apud Phōs., idque maximè) de NATVRA, quæ non vobiscum, sed nobiscum (ah, ah, ah)

⁹³ Vide libro 3^o.

⁹⁴ Hagonel seamed to embrace the Cumpany. -Δ (HM).

⁹⁵ Δ: I dowl it shold be short coat holding or embracing all the Table with his hands, and not H. Note Istorum - Istarum, as if it were filias et filiare &c. (Et nomen . . . sunt: "And my name is a whole number, nor is their offence in our number. Moses named us. The power of these men is like the power of these women. Although they are not one, nevertheless they are in unity." -Ed.)

⁹⁶ Making the phrase, Tam . . . Quam: "as . . . so . . ." -Ed.

et in nostra potestate est. Videbis Deum. Vidisti opera nostra, Opera (inquam) manuum suarum: Digito Dei mouebimur. A Deo venit. Homo, et cum hominibus fuit: est enim cum illis. Illius namque potestas, vim, virtutem, et esse dat,⁹⁷ non nobis solum modo, sed operibus nostris.

Inhumata tibi anima tua, quid quærit?⁹⁸

Δ: I understand you now: He answered Ab humo, homine: Ab homine dictum est.⁹⁹ I axed thee, what thow desyrest.

Δ: Wisdom, and Veritie, I answered: // then, he answered, H: Thow shalt. Δ: There cam in a smyling fellow: and they pluckt him, and towsed him. He cryed he wold tell Newes: and they answered, that there was none for him to tell: and he skaped¹⁰⁰ from them, or they let him slyp, with all his clothes torn of: and he semed to crepe or get away under the globe, and (as it wer) to get behinde the Diaphanous Globe.

Δ: These 42 had all of them somewhat in theyr hands: as eyther whole Crownes, or 3/4 of Crownes, or robes &c. Six of them semed more glorious than the rest, and theyr Coates longer: and had cerclets (abowt theyr hed) of Gold: and these had perfect Crowns in theyr

⁹⁷ Dei potestas. -Δ ("God's power." -Ed.)

⁹⁸ Quatenus . . . quaerit: "How great is your vanity? You knew these numbers to be in God, in the world, and in the minor world. In God, that is, with us. In the world, that is, in our presence. In the minor world, that is among us. (Your mind/soul is combined with thought.) It is debated among philosophers, and above all) concerning NATURE, which is not with you but with us (ah, ah, ah) and it is in our power. You (singular form) will see God. You (singular form) have seen our work, the work (I say) of his own hands. We shall be moved by the finger of God. He came [or comes] from God. He was a man, and with men: and is yet with them. For truly his power gives might, strength, and purpose, not only to us, but to our deeds. What does your unburied soul seek for yourself?" Note the missing parenthesis probably belongs after Phōs, "philosophers." Unburied soul: "soul of a living person as opposed to a dead person's soul." -Ed.

⁹⁹ Ab humo . . . dictum est: "From the earth, from man; from man is the word." -Ed.

¹⁰⁰ Skaped: "escaped." -Ed.

hands. The second six had thre quarters of Crownes, the Third six, haue clothes¹⁰¹ in theyr hands.¹⁰² All the rest semed to haue balls of gold: which they toss from one to an other: but at the catching they semed empty wynde balls: for they gripe them, closing theyr hand, as yf they wer not solid, but empty, like a bladder.¹⁰³

Δ: The first six sayd, Our names cannot be expressed: neyther can the names of these that follow.

Δ: The first six made cursy to the man with the short robe: the second six made cursy to the first, and the Third to the second, and they all, and the short robed man, made cursy to H.

Our workmanship is all one. Δ: Sayd the short robed man.¹⁰⁴

H: The whole day is diuided into 6 partes:¹⁰⁵ Euery part occupyeth a part of them here. (Δ: Pointing to the 42 standing there.) Therefore yf thow wilt work with Kings (thow knowest my meaning), finally what so euer thow wilt do in theyr estate, Cast thyne eye unto the first place. In all good causes thow shalt work by six in generall. The rest are for Depriuatiou: I meane the next six. The residue all do serue to the entents and purposes apperteyning unto Kings. But bycause thow shalt not be ignorant, what they are, in name, they shall shew forth theyr Tables.

Δ: Than they, spedyly (eche of them uppon the place of theyr standing) made a square table: and euery table had but one Letter. The first of the first six did go away, and in his table appeared an O, &c, and so of the second six, orderly theyr letters appeared in theyr tables: But the Third six, they cowered down uppon theyr letters, and were loath to

¹⁰¹ HM reads, “robes or clothes.” -Ed.

¹⁰² Note this reckening by six and six.

¹⁰³ HM reads, “blown bladder,” i.e., inflated balloon. -Ed.

¹⁰⁴ So he sayd pagina praecedente, unum est opus nostrum. -Δ. (“On the preceding page (he said), ‘Our workmanship is all one.’ ” -Ed.)

¹⁰⁵ The diuision of the Daye.

shew them: but at length, did &c: and at the last of euery row, they all cam together &c.

O	F ^E	S	N	G	L	E	4 howres
A	V	Z	N	I	L	N	4 howres
Y	L	L	M	A	F	S	4 howres
N	R	S	O	G	O	O	4 howres
N	R	R	C	P	R	N	4 howres
L	A	B	D	G	R	E	4 howres

H: Remember how they stode, when they wer secondly disposed unto thee: They stode first in six rows; and next they wer turned into 7.¹⁰⁶ I speak of the greater number and not of the less. In speaking of the greater, I haue comprehended the lesser.¹⁰⁷

Δ: They went euer away toward the¹⁰⁸ hand.

The third row went of lamenting: being commaunded by the Short robed man. All parted in fire, falling into the Globe. The fifth row did synk into the Globe, euery one in a sundry fyre by him self. The sixth fell with smoke down into the Globe.


EK: Now remayneth onely the man with the Crown H : he made shew with his hands, beckning toward E.K., and sayd, I haue told thee, that theyr workmanship, is to gither. Theyr names are uppon these tables. The first letter, is the Second letter, of the first¹⁰⁹ name of the Table.¹¹⁰

¹⁰⁶ In sexto et 7^o sunt omnia, fol. 10. -Δ. "All things are in a sixth and a seventh, fol. 10." -Ed.

¹⁰⁷ Note. K. Car. There are but 6 Names that are in Subiection unto the Prince: The first 7 next him: are those which held the fayr & bewtifull Crownes. The first 7 are called by those names that thow seest: O E S &c. Note. This diversity of Reckening by 6, and by 7, I can not yet well reconcyle. -Δ (HM).

¹⁰⁸ There is a blank space in the manuscript. -Ed.

¹⁰⁹ Δ: How can Bobogel be accountd the first name?

¹¹⁰ Δ: Now he meaneth at Bobogel in that table collected from  made before.



Thow hast 49 names in those Tables. Those names thow hast in former Tables by thee written: in that of 7 tymes 7. Confer it with the rownd Table.¹¹¹

The first letter¹¹² from the point of his¹¹³ sword, is B. That B signifieth the number of the Bees, begynning the 49 names, environing that Circle. In the former Tables thow shalt fynde B.1. B.2. B.3. B.4. &c and so to B.49. Those Bees begynne the names of all the powres that haue governed, do gouern, and shall gouern.

The next letter hath his circle and numbers going rownd about it: which thow shalt fynde in the former Tables. The letter standeth in the myddest of euery square, of euery Circle: though some be turned upside down: Which onely signifyeth that they are Spirits of Destruction, wrath and Indignation in Gods Judgment. There are two numbers: that, on the right hand, over the letter, is the number pertayning to that letter.

O in the Circumference is the ninthe letter.¹¹⁴

Gather the former Tables to gither, which thow hast made before, conteyning 49, depending onely on B. Where thow shalt finde BOBOGEL, a name consisting on 7 letters, and so the rest. Reade my instructions as concerning those Tables, and thow shalt fynde the truth of them.-----I haue sayd.¹¹⁵

¹¹¹ Note. The Tablet  to be conferred with the rownd . -Δ. The latter drawing is reproduced from Sloane 3677, since the original is now lost. -Ed.


¹¹² In margin: Sent to me by E.K.

¹¹³ A sword in the mans hand within the Circle.

¹¹⁴ O in this Table OFS &c, is of the eighth name, the second letter, but the ninth here in respect of the circle of numbers.

¹¹⁵ Note who sayeth this. Δ: Note the like phrase: fol. 2. of Hagonel who sayd he had spoken of it, whereas we had receyved nothing of him before.

Mighty is thy name, O God of Hostes:
 Blessed is thy name, Ô Lord, for euer.
 Δ: Amen.

After 7 of the klok at night. die  .¹¹⁶

H: Lo, here I byd them do, and they do. I haue appointed them, and they are contented. My Charge is not of my self, neyther do I speak darkly, obscurely or without a truth, in affirming that I towght thee those Tables: For they are from him, which made and created all things: I am from them¹¹⁷ in powre and message, under whome I here rule¹¹⁸ and shall do, tyll the ende¹¹⁹ of all things be.¹²⁰ Ô, Great and bownti-
 full in his liberall mercy: The mercy of him, whome we prayse and laude and sing unto, with Joy for euer. Behold thow desyrest, and art syk with desire.¹²¹ I am the disposer though not the Composer of Gods medicines. Thow desirest to be cumforted and strengthened in thy labors. I mynister unto thee The strength of God.

What I say, is not of my self, neyther that which is sayd to me, is of them selues, but it is sayd of him which Liueth for euer.

These Mysteries hath God lastly, and of his great mercyes, graunted unto thee.¹²² I haue answered thy dowting mynde.

Thow shalt be gluttred, yea filled, yea thow shalt swell and be puffed

¹¹⁶ This is the symbol of Saturn/Saturday. -Ed.

¹¹⁷ Δ him.

¹¹⁸ Baligons rule and government.

¹¹⁹ Sup. fol. 1. b.2.

¹²⁰ Prodigious rule and government, the ende of all things.

¹²¹ Dee his languishing desire.

¹²² God graunt.

up with the perfect knowledge of Gods Mysteries, in his mercyes. Abuse them not. Be faithfull. Use mercy. God shall enriche thee.

Banish wrath: yt was the first,¹²³ and is the greatest¹²⁴ Commaundement.

I rayng in him, and liue by him which rayngneth and liueth for euer.

Δ: I pray you make some of these last instructions, more playne, and euident.

H: I haue shewed thee perfectly. Behold I teache thee agayn. O how mercifull is God that revealeth so great secrets to flesh and blod? Thow hast 42 letters. Thy Tables, last, conteyn so many. Euery letter is the name particular by him self of the generall actions, being, and doing of these 42, which appeared with theyr workmanship. The first, was theyr Prince: and he gouerneth onely¹²⁵ the estate, condition and being, limited by God unto Kings of the earth. The 7 next him,¹²⁶ are those that are Messagers of God his good gifts to those that beleue him, and faithfully serue him: wherof few re . . . and rayng now frutefull in his sight.¹²⁷

Regnat, Regnat, Regnat ô regnat Iniquitas super faciem totius terræ
Cor hominis impletum est malitia, et nequicijs. Incipit, incipit enim
noua illorum potestas, illis non sine re dedita,¹²⁸ nec dis . . .¹²⁹

Vide quæso.¹³⁰ Δ: He pointed down to the people, in the Globe, all being sore and diseased of some sore, ulcer, botch, &c.

¹²³ Δ I understode not this to be so: tyll he called to my remembrance and made me turne my bokes to that Parcell which he called the Prologe declared by Annael: which Saul skryed: &c.

¹²⁴ Δ: = hardest, for me, in respect of my Imperfections.

¹²⁵ In the manuscript, this word is heavily underscored. -Ed.

¹²⁶ Those — as he seemed to Embrace them. fo. 5.

¹²⁷ The Prince and his first 7.

¹²⁸ = data.

¹²⁹ Istorum Noua potestas incipit. -Δ. ("Their new power begins." -Ed.)

¹³⁰ Regnat . . . quæso: "It rules, it rules, it rules; O wickedness rules over the entire

H: All the residue of the Angels, (for so they are in dede) ar ministers of God his wrath and indignation uppon the Faythless:¹³¹ whose myserie is most lamentable. 7 onely, haue 7 letters comprehending the dignitie of theyr vocation:¹³² The rest are particular, not onely in powr, but allso in theyr vocation. Like leaves they spring and grow from one branche.

These words which thow seest in the last Table, some of them unhable to be pronownced, are notwithstanding the names of those 7¹³³ which held the fayr and bewtifull Crownes. Which names (as I sayd before) do comprehend not onely the powre, but allso the Being of the rest.¹³⁴ The whole Composition is the truth of the words. I will ones more teach. There were 42 that appeared, besides him, which was theyr prince. The first 7,¹³⁵ are called by those names, that thow seest, as OFS &c.

Δ: And so of AVZNILN &c. H : Thow hast sayde.

There are but 6 names,¹³⁶ that are in Subiection. I teache breifly. Doost thow not remember the Circle and the prick in the myddest: which was on the right hand¹³⁷ of him, that was theyr Prince? That onely representeth 7 in number which being added unto the rest maketh 49. Read the letters. Δ: I red OF &c, and he willed me to strike them out.

H: That is the name of those of the first of the 7,¹³⁸ which held the Crownes in theyr hands.

face of the Earth. The heart of man is filled with malice and iniquity. Please consider.” -Ed.

¹³¹ Angels, ministers of Gods wrath.


¹³² Consider the reckening here by 7, but before he had a reckening by 6. 

¹³³ There were but 6 holding bewtifull Crownes.

¹³⁴ The Powre and being of the rest. 

¹³⁵ Now by 7.

¹³⁶ Δ: each of .7. letters. Six names in subiection.

¹³⁷  on the right hand.

¹³⁸ Δ forte “of the first 7”. Δ videlicet.

Note: The second line,¹³⁹ is the name of the second, and so to the ende of the table. 42 letters: 42 names: 42 persons.

The first, where his fote stode, is both his Name and Character.¹⁴⁰ And so of the second, Third &c.

Notwithstanding, Generally these are the names, the first 7, the One presupposed, the rest being six in order.

This is the truth, and the some of the Tables. Yt is easy to be understode and perfect.

Whan thou wilt work for anything apperteyning unto the estate of a good King: Thow must first call uppon¹⁴¹ him which is theyr prince. Secondly the ministers of his powre ar Six:¹⁴² whose names conteyne 7 letters apeece: as thy Tables do manifest: by whome in generally, or by any one of them, in particularitie, thou shalt work for any Intent or purpose.

As concerning the letters particularly, they do concern the Names of 42 which 42, in generally, or one of them do and can work the destruction,¹⁴³ hindrance or annoyance of the estate, Condition or degree, as well for body as government, of any Wicked or yll Liuing Prince. In owtward sense, my words are true. I speak now of the use of one of the first, that I spake of, or manifested yesterday. Sayd I not, and shewed I not, which had the gouernment of Princes?¹⁴⁴ For, as it is a Mystery to a farder matter, so is it a purpose to a present use. Yf it rule worldly princis, how much more shall it work with the Princis of Creation?

Thow desyrest use, I teache use, and yet the Art is to the further

¹³⁹ Δ: of the six lines.

¹⁴⁰ Note, Name and Character.

¹⁴¹ Praxis. Call. -Δ. (Praxis: "exercise, practise." -Ed.)

¹⁴² Prince, Ministers. 6.

¹⁴³ Destruction or hurt.

¹⁴⁴ = Kings. -Δ. HM reads "princes," without the qualification. -Ed.

understanding of all Sciences, that are past, present or yet to come.¹⁴⁵

Frute hath a further vertue than onely in the eating: Gold his further condition, property, and quality, then in melting, or common use. Kings there are in Nature, with Nature, and above Nature.¹⁴⁶

Thow art Dignified.¹⁴⁷

Δ: Yf I wold haue the King of Spayne his hart to be enclined to the purpose I haue in hand, what shall I do?

H: First Cast thyne ey unto the Generall prince,¹⁴⁸ Gouernor or Angel that is principall in this world.¹⁴⁹ [Δ as yet, is BALIGON or Carmara.]

Secondly consider the circumstances of thy Instruction.¹⁵⁰

Thirdly place my name,¹⁵¹ whome thow hast all ready.

Fowrthly, the name of him, which was shewed thee yesterday, whose garments were short, and of purple.¹⁵²

Fifthly, his power,¹⁵³ with the rest of his six perfect Ministers.¹⁵⁴ With those thow shalt work to a good ende. All the rest thow mayst use to Gods Glorie. For euery of them shall minister to thy necessities. Moreouer, when thow workest, Thy feete must be placed uppon those tables¹⁵⁵ which thow seest written last comprehending 42 letters, and

¹⁴⁵ . . . Sciences past present or to come.

¹⁴⁶ Diuers kings.

¹⁴⁷ Dignification.

¹⁴⁸ Δ: Is it not Annael with whome I began?

¹⁴⁹ Δ Who is that?


¹⁵⁰ HM does not include this instruction. -Ed.

¹⁵¹ Δ: Ergo it shold seme to be his office to deale with Kings: but in the ende he declareth his office to be of all Aëreall actions.

¹⁵² Δ: Hagonel.

¹⁵³ Δ Character. HM has no such notation. -Ed.

¹⁵⁴ Of 7 letters a pece.

¹⁵⁵ The placing of my fete in practise. 

names. But with Consideration, that the first Character, which is the first of the 7, in thy former boke,¹⁵⁶ be placed uppou the top of the Table,¹⁵⁷ which thow wast, and art, and shalbe commaunded to haue, and use.

Last of all, the Ring, which was appointed thee: with the Lamine comprehending the forme of thy own name: which is to be made in perfect gold, as is affore sayd.¹⁵⁸

Euen as God is iust, his iudgments true, his mercies unspeakable, so are we the true messagers of God: and our words are true in his mercy¹⁵⁹ for euer.

Glory, ô Glory be to thee, ô most high God.

EK: Now commeth Michael and heaveth in his hand out of the stone and sayeth, **GOD Bless you.**

H: As concerning the use of these Tables, this is but the first step. Neyther shalt thou practise them in vayne.¹⁶⁰

And whereas thou dost use a demaunde, as concerning thy doings to a good intent and purpose: and for the prayse and advancement of Gods Glorie, with Philip the Spanish King: I answer that whatsoeuer thou shalt speak, do or work, shalbe profitable and accepted, And the ende of it shalbe good.¹⁶¹

Moreouer wheras thou urgest the absence of thy frende, as an excuse for the ring, No excuse can preuayle: Neyther canst thou shew the frutes of a iust mynde, but of a faynting stomack with this excuse. God hath retorned him, and wilbe mercifull unto you both. Thy Chargis in worldly affayres, are not so great, that God cannot Minister

¹⁵⁶ ☉ Note former boke.

¹⁵⁷ Δ The Table of practise of a yard square: libro: 1^o.

¹⁵⁸ The stone was not yet brought.

¹⁵⁹ HM reads "Mercies" in one place, and "Mercy" in another. -Ed.

¹⁶⁰ I shall not practise these Tables in Vayne.

¹⁶¹ Dei Misericordia magna ipi Δ concessa. ("God's great mercy granted to Dee himself." -Ed.)

help to theyr necessities. Thow shalt be comforted. But Respect the world to come¹⁶² (1); (whereunto thou art provided) and for what ende (2); and that, in (3) what tyme.

Serue God truely: Serue him iustly. Great Care is to be had with those that meddle with Princis affayres. Much more Consideration, with whome thou shalt medle or use any practise. But God hath shadowed¹⁶³ thee from destruction. He preserueth his faithfull, and shaddoweth the iust with a shield of honor.

None shall enter into the knowledge of these mysteries¹⁶⁴ with thee but this Worker. Thy estate with the Prince (now rayngning,¹⁶⁵) shall shortly be amended. Her fauor encreased, with the good wills of diuerse, that are now, deceyuers.

Thy hand, shall shortly be theyr help:¹⁶⁶ and thou shalt do wonderfull and many benefits (to the augmenting of Gods Glorie) for thy Cuntry. Finally, God doth enriche thee with Knowledge: and of thy self, hath giuen thee understanding of these worldly vanities.¹⁶⁷ He is Mercifull: and we his good Creatures,¹⁶⁸ neyther haue, do, nor will forget thee. God doth blesse you both: whose Mercy, Goodness, and Grace, I pronownc and utter uppon you. I haue sayd:

Δ: Laus, honor, Gloria, virtus et Imperium,
Deo opto. Max^o.¹⁶⁹
Amen.

¹⁶² Respice ista Tria. -Δ. ("Respect these three things." -Ed.)

¹⁶³ Shaddowed: "sheltered." -Ed.

¹⁶⁴ Secresy.

¹⁶⁵ Queen Elizabeth -Ed.

¹⁶⁶ God graunt.

¹⁶⁷ Worldly vanity.

¹⁶⁸ Good Angels.

¹⁶⁹ Laus . . . Max^o.: "Praise, honor, glory, power, and sovereignty be to God, all good." -Ed.

H: Yf you will stay¹⁷⁰ one half howre, I will say farder unto you.

Δ: We will: by gods leave.

Δ: After that half howre passed, (being 10½ noctis [†] :) he sayde,

H: Venito BOBOGEL Rex et princeps Nobilitatis¹⁷¹

Venito cum ministris: Venito (inquam) Venito cum
satellitibus tuis munitus.¹⁷²

Δ: I fele: and (by a great thundring noyce, thumming thuming in myne eares) I perceyue the presence of some spirituall creature abowt me.

EK: And I here the thumming.

H: Behold, Before this work be finished,¹⁷³ (I meane the Manifestation of these Mysteries) thou shalt be trubbled, with the Contrarie Powres and beyond any accustomed manner. But take heade,¹⁷⁴ they prouoke thee not to work agaynst our Commaundements. Both thy ey and hand shall be manifest witness of it: well, this is true.

EK: They that now come in are ioly¹⁷⁵ fellows, all trymmed after the manner of Nobilitie now a dayes: with gylt rapers, curled heare: and they bragged up and down. BOBOGEL standeth in a blak veluet coat, and his hose close, rownd hose of veluet upperstoks: ouer layd with gold lace: he hath a veluet hat-cap, with a blak feather in it: with

¹⁷⁰ Stay: "delay." -Ed.

¹⁷¹ Noble men.

¹⁷² This I note for the form of calling. -Δ. Venito ... munitus: "Come, O Bobogel, king and noble prince. Come with your ministers. Come (I say), come fortified with your guards." -Ed.

¹⁷³ Note.

¹⁷⁴ Cave -Δ ("Beware." -Ed.)

¹⁷⁵ Ioly = "jolly: handsome." -Ed.

a cape on one of his sholders his purse hanging at his neck and so put under his gyrdell, his berd long: he had pantofells and pynsons.¹⁷⁶ Of these, in Company, are 42. 7 of them, are apparayled like BOBOGEL: sagely and gravely: All the rest are ruffyn like. Some, are like to be men and women: for, in the foreparte they semed women, and in the bakpart, men, by theyr apparayle, and these were the last 7. They daunsed, lept and kissed.

EK: The stone is brighter, where the sage and graue 7 do stand, and where the other do stand the stone is more dark.

EK: Now they come to a circle, the sage and the rest, but the sage stand all to gither.

Δ: The first of the sage, lyft up his hand a loft, and sayde:

Faciamus secundum voluntatem Dei: Ille Deus noster est verè nobilis & æternus.¹⁷⁷ He pluckt up his right fote, and under it appeared an L.

1.	L
Then the Second moved his fote, and	E - appeared.
Under the third, likewise,	E
&c.	N
	A
	R
	<u>B</u>

Then the last .B. and immediately they grew all to gither in a flame of fyre and so sonk down into the former Globe.¹⁷⁸ Of the rest the first pluckt up his fote, and there appered an L &c.

¹⁷⁶ BOBOGEL his apparayle.

¹⁷⁷ Faciamus . . . æternus: "May we act in accordance with God's will. He, our God, is truly noble and eternal." -Ed.

¹⁷⁸ HM reads, "sonk down into the Transparent fyry Globe of the New World." -Ed.

2. L
N
A
N
A
At the last, they fell down like
drosse of metall. E
B

Then whipped out fowr in a cumpany.

3. R
O
E
M¹⁷⁹
N
They clasp to gither, and fall down A
in a thick smoke.

4. B
L
E
A
O¹⁸⁰
R
I
They ioyne to gither and vanish
like drops of water.

¹⁷⁹ In the manuscript, the first four are indicated with a brace. -Ed.

¹⁸⁰ In the manuscript, the first four are indicated with a brace. -Ed.

5.

B

N

E

I¹⁸¹

C

I

They fall down like a storme
of hayle.

A

B¹⁸²

6.

A

O

I

D

I

A

The last vanished away.

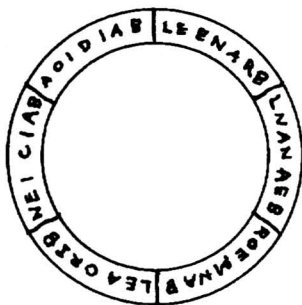
B

¹⁸¹ In the manuscript, the first three are marked with a brace. -Ed.

¹⁸² In the manuscript, the last four are marked with a brace. -Ed.

Δ: This I fashioned thus after my first dictata penning of my own fantasie:

L	E	E	N	A	R	B
L	N	A	N	A	E	B
R	O	E	M	N	A	B
L	E	A	O	R	I	B
N	E	I	C	I	A	B
A	O	I	D	I	A	B



Δ: Then he sayd, Well, I will shew thee more of these things at the next time.

God be with you: God bless you both.

Δ: Amen.

Δ: When shall that next tyme be? A voyce spake, On monday.

Δ: Deo soli omnis Honor et Gloria.¹⁸³ Amen.

¹⁸³ Deo soli . . . Gloria: "All honor and glory to God alone." -Ed.

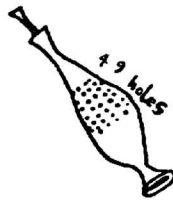
*Monday. Nouembris 19: Circiter 1 ã horã a meridiē*¹⁸⁴

Δ: Long after our comming to the stone (abowt half a quarter of an howre) the Cloth of sylence remayned drawn: and nothing appeared: but EK heard a far off very pleasant Musik the while.

H: He seamed to take the cloth away with his hands. After that (abowt 6 minutes), Nothing altered or shewed, other than the standing furniture, usually of late appearing there.

EK: Now come in 7 men with Musicall Instruments: and before them cam one with a veluet Coate,¹⁸⁵ and a hat-Cap, with a sword by his syde, and a Cloke or Cape hanging on one sholder: and a blak feather in his hat. &c. Afterward cam 42 more, seeming to be very far behynde the first 7. Their Melody sownded very swetely and pleasantly all the while from the begynning.

The forme of theyr Musicall Instrument:



These Musiciens did play, one with an other, iestingly: they bobbed one an other, and than played agayn. The 42, which semed a far of, cam nerer and nerer, and seamed to bring a rownd thing, like a table¹⁸⁶ in theyr hands. The 7 pipers went away: and the Man with the Cape hanging on one of his sholders (somwhat like a Nobleman) remayned. Then wer they come at hand, the 42 with the rownd table. These seamed to be of two sortes: Of which, the last 7: on the forepart to

¹⁸⁴ "Around 1 in the morning." -Ed.

¹⁸⁵ BOBOGEL Rex.

¹⁸⁶ A rownd Table.

behold seamed rather wemen,¹⁸⁷ with fardingales¹⁸⁸ very much sprowting out, but theyr face had no peculier attyre of wemen. The 42 held the circle¹⁸⁹ (or rownd Table) up, over theyr hed, flat wise. Then they layd the Circle down, and stode rownd abowt it.

H sayd, Tam mali, quam boni, laudant te,

Deus, Deus, Deus noster.¹⁹⁰

Δ: The letters appeared to EK, and he told me them, and I began to write:

L E E N A R B

H: Thow writest in vayne. Thow hast written them already.

Δ: It is true: I see them now last before noted down.

H: Loke the eight name in the Tables. [Δ: of 49, collected.]. Δ: That eighth is Bobogel. Loke to his Character in the great Circle. Loke the second name in the Table with 7 angles.

Δ: That I finde to be Bornogo.

EK: He with the cape on his one sholder, sayeth, Nomen meum est Bobogel:¹⁹¹ And he that is my subiect, is Governor of the second Angle of the 7.¹⁹²

Bob: I weare these robes, not in respect of my self, but of my **Government**. I am the Prince, Chief; [EK: He falleth down on his knees

¹⁸⁷ Women-like.

¹⁸⁸ Farthingale: "hoop skirt." -Ed.

¹⁸⁹ The Circle.

¹⁹⁰ Tam mali . . . noster: "Both the wicked and the good praise you. God, God, our God." -Ed.

¹⁹¹ Nomen . . . Bobogel: "My name is Bobogel." -Ed.

¹⁹² Δ: in Heptagonum.

Bobogel -----	Rex
Bornogo -----	Princeps

(Rex: "king"; Princeps: "prince." -Ed.)

and speaketh wordes which I understand not.] yea the only distributer, giver, and bestower of Wisdome and Science.¹⁹³ I weare this apparayle, for that in dede, being a Prince I am a Cownsaylor¹⁹⁴ to estate and dignitie. All Dignitie and gouernment that is not cownsayled by me, and my subiects, is frustrate, voyde, and cleane¹⁹⁵ without firm grownd.

Those which thow sawest, (being pipers) signifie praters,¹⁹⁶ with unaccustomed, and not usuall Instruments: which allwayes seame to sownd that, which None but I my self, with my subiects, (yea not all of them, but the fewest) can performe. But I am true Philosophie. I am true understanding. Oh my descending from him which rayngneth, is euen uncomprehensible of the Angells. Neyther do I know, my self: But what I think, I utter, and What I measure, I am.

He sayd, Ordinationem Infinitæ potestatis eleuate.¹⁹⁷

EK: Now come Three¹⁹⁸ out of the 42, and layd theyr fingers uppon the three first letters: and,

The first sayd, O Unitas in Natura et in Deo.¹⁹⁹

The second sayd, O Æqualitas Dei et Naturæ. Deus
in Deo.
Natura a Deo et se.²⁰⁰

¹⁹³ Wisdome & Science: “true nobility.”

¹⁹⁴ Councell.

¹⁹⁵ Clean: “completely.” -Ed.

¹⁹⁶ Praters: “fools.” -Ed.

¹⁹⁷ Ordinationem . . . eleuate: “Raise up the government of infinite power.” -Ed.

¹⁹⁸ LEE.

¹⁹⁹ O Unitas . . . in Deo: “O Unity in nature and in God.” -Ed.

²⁰⁰ O Aequalitas . . . et se: “O equality of God and Nature. God in God. Nature from God and itself.” -Ed.

The Third sayd, Concentus eius, est sine numero:
 Tamen nobiscum est in Uno, Fons et
 Caput Naturæ²⁰¹

EK: They ioyned them selues to gither and become, all One Man; most beawtifull to behold: Whose hed and to the brest, seamed to be neare to heven. His brest and myddle part, in the ayre: His feete seamed to stand on the earth. There cam like a Fire, oute of the Crown of his hed, and to enter into the heven, hard, by it: This great high and fayre man sayde,

Veritas quæsita, nostra est.²⁰²



²⁰³EK: His apparayle is diuided into two halfes: from the crown of his hed to his fete. The one half seemed to be most fresh flourishing herbes: The other half seemed to be of diuerse metallis:²⁰⁴ and his right fote seamed to be Leade.²⁰⁵ He sayd (with an Aposiopesis) thus,

Beatus est qui Lumen capitis mei &c.²⁰⁶

EK: The rest, all, quake. He sayd farder,

Unus in Capite, unus in pectore, unus in pedibus.²⁰⁷

EK: Then stept oute 9, at ones.

EK: Then the great man returned, or was restored to his former

²⁰¹ Concentus . . . Naturæ: "His harmony is without number. Nevertheless he is together with us, the source and head of nature." -Ed.

²⁰² Veritas . . . est: "Ours is the truth which is sought after." -Ed.

²⁰³ Note, this is an example of what William Sherman calls a "face bracket" (*John Dee*, Amherst, MA: University of Massachusetts Press, 1995, p. 88). Dee drew them often in the margins of texts, and they only seem to mark alchemical passages (as here) or natural philosophical texts. -Ed.

²⁰⁴ Vegetible, Minerall.

²⁰⁵ 𐄂

²⁰⁶ Beatus est . . . mei: "Blessed is the light of my head." -Ed.

²⁰⁷ Unus . . . pedibus: "One in head, one in heart, one in feet." -Ed.

estate of three particular men agayn: and they three leaned to the Gentleman²⁰⁸ with the Cape on his sholder - BOBOGEL - who sayde,

Dee, Dee, Dee, at length, but not to late.²⁰⁹

EK: In the place of the former first thre, appeared L E E.

EK: Of the 9, which stept out, they of the first Ternarie²¹⁰ sayde, eche thus orderly,

1 Volumus.

2 Possumus.

3 Quid non.²¹¹

This Ternarie sayd, Faciamus, quæ fecerunt, nam nos Tres sumus Adam; societate.²¹²

EK: They become One man, as the other before, but a slender and a weak one, neyther so high as the first, euer laboring or striving with it self to stand up right, but still it bended, bowed, and inclined downward, as thowgh it wold fall for feblenes. The Body of this Compownd man, seamed to be of Gold glittering. When they retorned to theyr distinct shape: they semed naked and to be sorry, and lament: And Bobogel did put them from him, with his sworde, skabbard and all, as it hanged by his side. Theyr letters were ----- N A R.

²⁰⁸ Gentleman = gentleman: “nobleman.” -Ed.

²⁰⁹ Note. King Bobogel said this of my attaying to such mysteries, as the mysteries under him made shew of. -Δ (HM).

²¹⁰ 2. NAR.

²¹¹ Volumus: “we wish”; Possumus: “we can”; Quid non: “What not?” -Ed.

²¹² Faciamus . . . societate: “Let us do what they did, for we three are Adam, by association.” -Ed.

EK: Then cam the Ternarie—B L N,²¹³ and orderly they sayd thus,


- { 1 Ab illo.
- { 2 Per illum.
- 3 Cum illo²¹⁴

Bob: Qui caret hijs tribus,²¹⁵ [EK: He whispereth to the first Three leaning to him: and with all, seeing me muse at the Aposiopesis, he sayd,] No No, Thow shalt not dowe [pointing to me.]

In ecclesia Dei, laborabit in Vanum.²¹⁶

EK: This Ternarie of men becam to haue one onely hed, and three bodyes and that one hed was in good proportion.

EK: The side of the Diaphonous Globe opened, and this Transformed Ternarie did point into it, toward the multitude: and the people had theyr brests naked, and semed to wepe:²¹⁷ and to wipe theyr brests, and where they wiped the place becam fayre.

EK: This Ternary did seme to stand uppon a triangular stone , and to turn (as a horsmyll doth, abowt one axeltree) orderly agaynst, and by, the hole of the Globe so opened. And euery of the three bodyes, in theyr turning, as they cam agaynst the open place of the Globe, they extended, and stretch out theyr hands toward the people: The first seamed to hold a rownd ball in his hand being little, but very fayre white. The second body, his hand had in it, a little sword flamming with fyre. The third had a thing like a hatt band of lawn,²¹⁸ of many cullours, which ever as his turne cam to be agaynst the opened hole, he seamed to cast toward the people, and the people did seme to be drawn to him ward, by the Casting of it toward them.

²¹³ 3. BLN.

²¹⁴ Ab illo, per illum, cum illo: "from him, through him, with him." -Ed.

²¹⁵ Qui caret hijs tribus: "Who lacks these three." -Ed.

²¹⁶ In ecclesia . . . Vanum: "In the church of God, he will work in vain." -Ed.

²¹⁷ Penitence.

²¹⁸ Lawn: "thin fabric." -Ed.

These three bodyes, thowgh they turned contynually, yet did the face or Cowntenance of that One Compownd hed, stedly and immoveably regard or loke into the Globe at the forsayd hole therof.

H: A wonder to behold the heuen, much more this.

EK: Now this Ternarie separated it self, and the hole or clyft in the Globe did shut to. These three did sit down by Bobogel.

H: Sunt semper, et Cibus illorum est unus.²¹⁹

Δ: Note: The first Ternarie, they semed to stand leaning to Bobogel. The Third Ternarie was set orderly and vicissim,²²⁰ close by Bobogel his feete, one of these betwene two of the first; euer so that orderly one of the first, and one of the Third ternarie, one of the first and one of the third; one of the first and one of the third.

EK: Then cam the Ternarie A N A.²²¹

They sayd, orderly thus,

1. Ab illo sed.

2. Cum illo sed,²²² looking on his own belly.

Δ: Then I demaunded of theyr Apparayle: and EK sayd that these were brauer than the former Ternary. Bobogel sayd, Aliqui a dignitate, Cæteri talia quia non sunt Digni.²²³ This he sayd, pointing to theyr apparayle. Then the third sayd,

3. Per illum, Per illum, Per illum,²²⁴ with a frowning cowntenance thrusting furth his hand.

²¹⁹ Sunt semper . . . unus: "They are always, and their food is one." -Ed.

²²⁰ Vicissim: "in turns." -Ed.

²²¹ 4. ANA.

²²² Ab illo sed. Cum illo sed: "from him only; with him only." -Ed.

²²³ Aliqui . . . Digni: "Some from worthiness, others are not worthy of any sort." -Ed.

²²⁴ Per illum, Per illum, Per illum: "Through him, through him, through him." -Ed.

EK: They ioyned to gither into one hed and three bodyes. The Hole of the Globe opened very wyde now. This one Compownd Hed had many eyes, many noses, many mowthes, as though it were a Cahos²²⁵ of Faces, in one hed, but three bodyes. One of this bodyes had in his hand a little Ball, like the other before, very white, but with twynkling brightnes in it. The other two bodyes, theyr hands were emptie.

EK: They turn in order agaynst the Hole of the Globe: But the People regarded them not: but at the comming of the hand with the Ball, against the hole, the people loked a little up at it.

Bob. sayd, Et quia carebant in ardentibus ignis.²²⁶

EK: These, being dissolued into theyr former state, go and sit (with hevy chere) by them that sat affar of from BOBOGEL. Theyr apparail semed to be simple: theyr good apparayle was gone.

Δ: Here I fownd a certayn error in my writing of the first Notes: which I haue amended in the writing of this: But while that error did trubble me, the spirituall Creature sayd these wordes. Bob: The Fawt is in EK his remembrance, and not in his will. Note this,

LEE ar the Three that stand with me.

NAR are the Three that I reiect.

BLN are the Thre which are enterlincked with me.

ANA are the Three that are reiected.²²⁷

²²⁵ Cahos: "chaos." -Ed.

²²⁶ Et quia . . . ignis: "And because they were lacking in blazing fires." -Ed.

²²⁷ In the manuscript there is a line drawn from LEE to BLN, and another line from NAR to ANA. -Ed.

Bob. sayd, Omnes naturam ad, Sed, Nôn in illo.²²⁸

EK: The 30 remaying,²²⁹ cam all away, and satt betwene Bobogel and the reiected Cumpany: and from that Cumpany²³⁰ cam onely 7 to the Circle agayn. Euery of these 7, sett theyr feete, eche uppon a letter of the Circle, which letters are these,²³¹

AOIDIAB.

EK: They say, In use,²³² we are perfect; Misused, we are Monsters. Sumus septem Januæ Naturæ, et sui ipsius qui novit Deum.²³³

EK: These 7, seme to vanish into wynde, or white smoke, and to fall into the Globe. And the six reiected, turn into a black smoke: and the rest of the 30²³⁴ semed also converted into black smoke, and to fall into the Globe.

Bob. sayd, In sexto et septimo sunt omnia.²³⁵

EK: The six that were next him, semed to clyng hard and close to Bobogel. (Bob: Behold.) EK: They be ioyned all into One body, and becam like the sonne, into the forme of a bowle or Globe: and so moved up or rowled up the small narrow race, or line unworne, which remayned higher then the chayre, toward the top of the Diaphanous Globe, as before is declared, so that this Princely Noble man, and his six adherents [LEE:BLN], in this manner went out of sight.²³⁶

²²⁸ Omnes . . . in illo: "Everything towards nature, but not in him." -Ed.

²²⁹ Δ There remayned 10 tymes Three.

²³⁰ Δ of 30.

²³¹ Note, by theyr sitting that they are indifferent: and so they say.

²³² Δ They semed therfore to sit betwene the perfect and reiected: as indifferent.

²³³ Sumus . . . novit: "We are the seven gates of Nature, and of him who knew God." -Ed.

²³⁴ Δ: beside AOIDIAB.

²³⁵ 6, 7. -Δ. In sexto . . . omnia: "All things are in the 6th and 7th." -Ed.

²³⁶ NOTE the narrow path, above the chayr.

H: Formator horum, Secundus²³⁷ est in Heptagono.²³⁸

They are diuided into the day, as the other wer, before: But wheras the other are chiefly uppon that day which you call Monday, so ar these to be used onely on the Sabaoth day.

Theyr use, is onely thus (obseruing the former order) with the Circle uppon the grownd.²³⁹ The first six,²⁴⁰ with theyr King and the seale of theyr Prince, taketh place in the whole body of the day: The other being 6 tymes six,²⁴¹ are diuided into the partes of the day as before. The Letters onely where they stode, are theyr names and Characters. What doth the heven behold or the earth conteyne, that is not (or may be) subdued, formed and made by these. What lerning, grownded uppon wisdome, with the excellencies in²⁴² Nature, cannot they manifest? One in heuen they know.

One and all in Man, they Know.

One and all in erth, they know.

Measure heuen by a parte, (my meaning is, by these few). Let God be Glorified: His name prayed. His Creation²⁴³ well taken, and his Creatures, well used.²⁴⁴

²³⁷ Δ Bornogo.

²³⁸ Formatur . . . Heptagono: "The maker of these is the second in the Heptagon." -Ed.

²³⁹ Note former. ergo. There is allso a circle on the grownd. Vide ante 3 folia: of my fete placed uppon the Tables: Ergo they shold seme to be on the grownd. -Δ (Vide ante 3 folia: "See three folios earlier." -Ed.)

²⁴⁰ Δ: of the six orders.

²⁴¹ Practise. by 6.

²⁴² Sloane 3188 reads, "excellencies of" in Ashmole's handwriting, but CHM, HM, and Sloane 3677 all read, "excellencies in." -Ed.

²⁴³ This boke sometymes called liber Creationis, & sometymes Tabulae Creationis. -Δ. ("The Book of Creation," the "Tables of Creation." -Ed.)

²⁴⁴ HM cites this: "King Carmara, Novemb. 19, of King Bobogel, his princis Ministers." -Ed.

Δ: I craued for some playner Instruction, as concerning the use of the . . . and he answered,

H: Behold: Are thy eyes so blynde? Dost thou see and wilt not see? Thy mynde telleth thee. Thy understanding fundereth, and thy Judgment doth establish it. That as thou sawest a Body in three places, and of Three Compositions: Though but two in forme, So shall this work haue relation to 1: tyme present and present use, to 2: Mysteries far exceding it, And 3: Finally to a purpose and intent, wherby the Maiestie, and Name of God shall and may, and of force must appeare, with the Apparition of his wonders, and mervayles, yet unhard of.²⁴⁵

Dixi.²⁴⁶

Δ: Than immediately after he began agayne, as followeth,

H: Venito, veni (inquam) adesto Veni Rex. O Rex, Rex, Rex Aquarum,²⁴⁷ Venito, venito inquam. Magna est tua; maior autem mea potestas. Deus noster, restat, regnat, et est, Quod, et sicut fuit.²⁴⁸

EK: Then cam one and sayd,

----- Parati sumus nomen eius Creatoris nostri, nomen, nomen laudare Nomen (inquam) Unius nunc et viuentis.

Obscura sunt hæc animis obscuris. Vera et manifesta Veris et perfectis. Ecce adsunt.²⁴⁹ EK: He that sayd this, is as though he were a king,

²⁴⁵ A Threfold use of this Doctrine.

²⁴⁶ Dixi: "I have spoken." -Ed.

²⁴⁷ Rex Aquarum. -Δ. ("The King of the Waters." -Ed)

²⁴⁸ Venito . . . fuit: "Come, come (I say), be present. Come, O King. O King, King, King of the waters, come, come I say. You are great, but my power is greater still. Our God stands firm, rules, and is, that which he was." -Ed.

²⁴⁹ Parati . . . adsunt: "We have been provided his name from our Creator, the name, to praise the name, the Name (I say) of One now [blank space in manuscript] and

with a Crown on his hed: His apparayle was a long robe whitish: But his left arme was very white, and his right arme, black.²⁵⁰

EK: There cam after this King a Cumpany of 42: and euery one of them had a letter in his forhed, and they were 7 in a row, and six, downward.

.....

The King had written in his forhed, BABALEL.²⁵¹

The first 7, (begynning from EK his left hand toward his right) had these letters, and the second, Thirdth &c had these letters as here appeare.

E	I	L	O	M	F	O
N	E	O	T	P	T	A
S	A	G	A	C	I	Y
O	N	E	D	P	O	N
N	O	O	N	M	A	N
E	T	E	V	L	G	L

H: At the next tyme, more.

living. These are dark/obscure to dark minds, but true and clear to true and perfect minds. Behold, they are present.” -Ed.

²⁵⁰ Note this Kings apparayle, and shew.

²⁵¹ King BABALEL

Δ: Omne quod viuit laudet Deum unum et trinum, in omne æuum.²⁵² Amen.

EK: The cloth draws.

Nouemb. 20 Tuesday, a meridie circa 2ã.

Δ: After a great half howre attending, and diuerse tymes our prayers to god, The black Cloth was pulled upward: and so vanished away. H appered sitting in his chayre, and his face toward me: and so looking about he paused a while: half a quarter of an howr. In the meane space cam one skypping lightly, a little boy, in a grene coate, and sayd, He is here, at an ynche.²⁵³ Than he sayd, Hark. To me he sayd, Ha-sir-ha. Δ: What wilt thou say to me? [Grene Coate:] I am Multin his minister, wilt thou any thing with me? I cannot tarry. Δ: Then this skipiak²⁵⁴ espyed a spirituell creature comming, and sayd, Ha, ar you there? Δ: And so went out of sight.

Δ: This was King BABALEL, with a crown of Gold on his hed, his garment whitish, and his right sleue on his arme, blak: and the left sleve very white. He seamed to stand uppon water.

The other 42 cam likewise and stode.

Bab: Veni princeps²⁵⁵ 7 principum qui sunt Aquarum Principes. Ego sum Rex potens et mirabilis in aquis: cuius potestas est aquarum visceribus. Princeps iste²⁵⁶ (Δ: pointing to a Prince, new come to sight

²⁵² Omne . . . æcium: “May everyone living praise God, one and three, into all time.” -Ed.

²⁵³ At an ynche: “nearby.” -Ed.

²⁵⁴ Skipjack: “a dandy, skipping fellow.” -Ed.

²⁵⁵ He calleth Befafes.

²⁵⁶ Veni . . . iste: “Come, O prince of the seven princes, who are princes of the Waters. I am the king, mighty and wonderful in the waters, whose power is in the depths of the waters. That prince . . .” -Ed.

which had a red long robe, and a cerclet of gold on his hed²⁵⁷) est Tertius principum in Heptagonon.²⁵⁸ Δ: I sayd Heptagono: he replied, Heptagonon,²⁵⁹ and sayd: Verè planè, et perspicuè dixi.

Bab: Mensurasti aquas?²⁶⁰ Befafes answered, Factum est.²⁶¹

Δ: I seemed to dowl of some matter here, and Befafes sayd, Thow shalt be answered in any dowl. I am thy frende. I haue fauored thee in many things.²⁶² Ph'ers²⁶³ haue imagined vaynely of my name. For thy loue towards me, Thow shalt know my name. I was with Salomon; I was also (unknown) with Scotus.²⁶⁴ I was, in respect of my powr: unknown, in respect of my name. He called me Mares. Since, I was not with any. And I preserued thee from the powre of the wicked, when I told thee things of truth to come. When I rid thy howse of wycked ones, and was with thee in extremities. I was with thee. Behold I was with thee throughly.

Δ: Then he bad EK Ax me, yf I knew Obelison. Δ: I had to do with Obelison, but by reason of my Skryers nawghtynes, I was in dowl what I might credit. Bef: Thow shalt know this for a most manifest truth hereafter. I am Obelison, the fifth of the Seuenth,²⁶⁵ which haue the skowrging of Obelison the wicked: but not wicked for euer, neyther

²⁵⁷ The Prince his apparayle.

²⁵⁸ . . . est Tertius principum in Heptagonon: “. . . is the third Principality in the Heptagon.” -Ed.

²⁵⁹ Heptagono: “(in) the Heptagon.” Dee seems to be checking or correcting Kelley here. -Ed.

²⁶⁰ Vere . . . aquas: “I have spoken quite plainly and distinctly. . . . Have you measured the waters?” -Ed.

²⁶¹ Factum est: “It is so.” -Ed.

²⁶² Prince Befafes, my old frende unknown of me.

²⁶³ Philosophers. -Ed.

²⁶⁴ John Scotus Erigena (815?-877 theologian)? Michael Scot (introduced translations of Aristotle)? John Duns Scotus (1265?-1308 theologian)? -Ed.

²⁶⁵ Δ The fifth of the seventh. I understand not this yet. Vide lib. 5. A^o 1583 Maij 1.

accursed to the ende. We Angels haue tymes, and our faultes are amended.²⁶⁶

Δ: Shall I Note your name, by Befafes? He answered, My name is so, in dede: The Ægyptians called me Obelison in respect of my nature. Δ: I pray you what is the Etymologie of Obelison? Bef: A pleasant deliuerer.²⁶⁷

EK: The former 7, haue Crownes.²⁶⁸ Theyr letters stand betwene theyr feete.²⁶⁹

E I L O M F O &c.

Bef: Thow hast receyued these letters allready.

EK: The water seameth, contynually to pass ouer these letters.

Bab: I Gouern uppon Tuesday.

1. EK: The first seuen take the water and throw it up, and it becometh clowdes.
2. The second throweth it up, and it becommeth hayle and snow. One of the first 7 sayde, Behold, Behold, Behold: All the motion of the waters, and the saltnes thereof is æqually assured by us. We giue good success in battayles, reduce ships & all manner of vessells that flote uppon the seas: Our make is great. Muse not [Δ], For whan the seas are trubbled, with the wickednes or uprore of man, our Authoritie giueth victory from him that is most Victorious. Fishes and Monsters of the sea, yea all that liueth therein, are well known with us. Behold we are (generally) the Distributers of Gods Judgments uppon the waters that couer the earth.

EK: Than stept furth all the rest.

²⁶⁶ NOTE: of wicked spirits, some restitution to favor.

²⁶⁷ See. 4th Enochian Call: “obelisong” is translated “as pleasant deliverers.” -Ed.

²⁶⁸ Or Cerclets perhaps.

²⁶⁹ HM reads, “Euery one of the 42 had a letter in his forhed. They were 7 in a row:

3. The Third seuen sayd, Some of us conduct the waters through the earthe. Other of us, do beawtify Nature in her Composition. The rest of us ar distributers and Deliuers of the Threasures and the unknown substances of the seas.²⁷⁰

Bab: Praysed be God which hath created us, from the begynning with Glory. His Glory be augmented.

EK: Now the 42 diue into the Water and so vanish away: and Befafes, and Babalel also wer suddaynly gon.

H standing up sayd, LO, Thus thow seest the glory of Gods creatures: Whome thow mayst use,²⁷¹ with the consideration of the day, theyr king, theyr Prince, and his Character. The King and prince gouern for the whole daye.²⁷² The rest according to the six partes of the day.

Use them, to the glory, prayse, and honor of him, which created them to the Laude and prayse of his Maiestie. A day is 24 howres. Δ: But whan doth that Day begyn?

H: Thow shalt be towght the rest.

H proceded, and sayd, Vitam dedit Deus omnibus Creaturis. Venite Veni Ignis, veni Vita mortalium (inquam) Venito. Adesdum. Regnat Deus. Ô Venite. Nam unus ille Regnat, et est Vita Viuentium.²⁷³

and 6, downward. But of the first 7 the letters became to be between theyr feet, and the water seamed contynually to pass over these letters.” -Ed.

²⁷⁰ Threasures in the seas.

²⁷¹ Practise.

²⁷² King and Prince govern the whole day.

²⁷³ Δ: Whereas in the former Treatise, ther was a dowl of Butmono the fowrth, and Blisdon theyr offyces, being assigned here clere contrary: The dowl may be answered by the notes A. 1583, Maij 5 of the Table and my Character. Therefore I suspect some Intruder to have first -Δ. Vitam . . . Viuentium: “God gave life

EK: Now there commeth a King,²⁷⁴ and hath a Prince²⁷⁵ next him and after them 42, like ghostes, or smokes, with out forme; hauing euery of them a little glittering spark of fire in the myddest of them.

The first 7, are red, as blud.	}	The sparks of these were
The second 7, not so red.		greater then of
The third 7 like whitish smoke.		the rest.

The fowrth 7	}	are of diuerse cullours: All had firie sparks
The fifth		in theyr myddle. Euery spark had a letter in it.
The sixth		

Verè beatus²⁷⁶ (sayd this King that
now cam.)

	B B A R N F L
Δ: I pray you to tell me your name.	B B A I G A O
King: I am the fowrth King in the Table	B B A L P A E
and the two* and twentyth in number.	B B A N I F G
Δ: I understand in the Table of the names	B B O S N I A
collected from the 7 Tables of 49.	B B A S N O D

And in those tables taking of the first septenarie, Baligon for the first King; and in the second septenarie, Bobogel for the second King, and in the third septenarie, taking Babalel, so accownted the third, and in the fowrth septenarie, the first of septenarie is Bynepor, and so accownted the fowrth: but accownting euery one from Baligon he is the 22th: and so the fowrth and the two and twentieth.

to all creatures. Come ye, come O fire. Come, O life of mortals Come (I say). Be present. God rules. O come. For he alone rules, and is the life of the living.” -Ed.

²⁷⁴ HM identifies this as King Bynepor. -Ed.

²⁷⁵ Butmono. -Ed.

²⁷⁶ Verè beatus: “Truly blessed.” -Ed.

EK: A Voyce I here, saying, You shall begynne to work agayn, at 6 of the klok next.

Δ: Omnium bonorum largitori, laus perennis et immensa.²⁷⁷

Amen.

Δ: Abowt half a quarter of an howre after 6: we retorned to the work and the cloth was drawn away: H sitting in the chayre.

EK: There appeared a little ronning water very clere chrystalline: and on this side the 42 last specified.

Bynepor sayd: Lo, [and than he kneled down, and semed to pray, a prety while]. The generall state and condition of all things resteth onely and dependeth uppon the distribution, and participation of my exalted most especiall and glorified powr. My sanctification, glory, and renowne, allthowgh it had begynning, cannot, shall not nor will haue ending. He that Measureth, sayd,²⁷⁸ and I was the ende of his workmanship. I am like him, and of him, yet not as partaking nor adherent, but distant in One degree. The Fire that holdeth, or is, the first Principle of all things in generally,²⁷⁹ hath his universall and unmeasurable powre in the workmanship of my Creation. Visible and Invisible, were not, withoute my record. When he [Ipse²⁸⁰] cam, I was magnified by his comming, and I am sanctified, world Without ende.

Vita suprema,

Vita superior,

²⁷⁷ Omnium . . . immensa: "Perpetual and unlimited praise for the giver of all good."
-Ed.

²⁷⁸ Ipse dixit. -Δ. ("He himself said." -Ed.)

²⁷⁹ Generaltye.

²⁸⁰ Ipse: "himself." -Ed.

et Infima, sunt meis mensurata manibus.²⁸¹ Notwithstanding, I am not of my self, Neyther is my powre myne owne, Magnified by his name: Behold I dubble life from One, unto a thowsand of Thowsands: and One thowsand of thowsands, to a number, exceding cownt: I speak in respect of mans Capacitie. I am in all and all hath some being by me: yet my powre is nothing in respect of his powre, which hath sent me. Write this reuerently. Note it with Submission: What I speak hath not byn reuealed, no not in these last tymes, of the second last world.²⁸² But I begynne new worldes, new people, new kings, & new knowledge of a new Gouernment.²⁸³ To be short,

Vitam tradidit; deditque mihi potestatem
esse, Viuere, et in perpetuum glorifica...
Omnibus et ubique.²⁸⁴

As these cannot be comprehended, what they are, with mor...

So cannot any thing be browght to pas in me, without a living sight, and a perfect mynde.²⁸⁵ I Gouern uppon Thursday. For Instruction, the rest as before. Thow shalt work mervaylous mervaylously, by my workmanship in the highest. To whome²⁸⁶ (with overshaddowing thy light with life, and blessing you both, in his name of whome I am the Image,) I prayse God.

EK: Now he descendeth into the Globe, and it becam very bright there among the people: which, allso, at his comming, seamed to be more cherefull.

²⁸¹ Vita . . . manibus: "The highest life, the higher life, and the lowest life are measures by my hands." -Ed.

²⁸² Note second last world.

²⁸³ Ecce, omnia Noua. -Δ. ("Behold, all things are new." -Ed.)

²⁸⁴ Vitam . . . ubique: "He surrenders life, and gives me power to be, and to live in perpetual glory. Everything and everywhere." -Ed.

²⁸⁵ Note.

²⁸⁶ Δ I dowt, I did not here perfectly at this writing down.

H stode up and moved his hand, aboue his hed, cumpassing with it a loft.²⁸⁷ After that cam a Cumpany, with a King,²⁸⁸ and after him a prince.²⁸⁹ The king had a red robe on, and a crown on his hed. The Prince had a robe of many cullours, and on his hed a Cerclet. The Cumpany [42] seemed to stand rownd abowt a little hill of Claye. Behynde this Cumpany seamed to stand an innumerable multitude of ugly people, a far of:²⁹⁰ Those which seeme to stand rownd abowt the little hill seme to haue in the palmes of theyr hands, letters, in order as here appereth.

Δ: The king spake, Beholde, All the Earth with her bowells and secrets what soeuer, are deliuered unto me. And what I am there thow mayst know. I am great, But he, in whome I am, is greater then I. Unto my Prince, (my Subiect) are deliuered the keyes of the Mysteries of the earth. All these are Angells that gouern under him: whose Gouvernment is diuided, as before. Use them, they are and shalbe at thy commaundement.²⁹¹



Those that stand afarr off are the Spirits of perdition, which kepe earth with her Threasure, for him &c: and so furth.²⁹² I haue sayd.

²⁸⁷ Cumpassing with it a loft: circling it around in the air. -Ed.

²⁸⁸ Δ Bnaspol.

²⁸⁹ Δ Blisdon.

²⁹⁰ An Innumerable Cumpany of ugly Creatures, a far of.

²⁹¹ Vide Lib^o. 5, 1583 Martij 26.

²⁹² Vide de istis in libro Cracoviensi Junij 26. Treasure hid in earth, kept by wycked spirites. -Δ. See TFR, p. 180. -Ed.

H, standing up, sayd, His name is the fifth and the 29th: and his Prince his name, the fifth, and the 23th.²⁹³ Δ: The first name, I understand in Tabula collecta, The second name I understand, for the fifth to be in Heptagono and the 23th to be so fownd the same, in Tabula collecta.

H: Venite, ubi nulla quies, sed stridor dentium.²⁹⁴

EK: Then cam the man agayn, with ugly fyrie flames out of his sides, which was here before, the last day.²⁹⁵ H beckened with his hand unto him, and his coates went to gither, and so couered that horrible sight.

EK: There appeareth a rownd Table, which 42 hold and toss, all in fyrie flames.

H: Write quickly, thow [EK] canst not behold it.

EK: The first seameth to be a King²⁹⁶ with a crown on his hed, and the &c.

Lo I gouern (as I²⁹⁷ haue sayd before) All enchanters, Coniurers, witches, & Wicked spirites that are hated of God, and included for euer, in owteward darknes (except a few which remayn in a second payne, which gape and grone for the mercies of God, and haue tyme of Joye, whose measures I haue, and kepe accownt of) are all at my gouernment.²⁹⁸ By me, thow shalt cast oute **the powre of all wicked spirits.** **By me thow shalt know the doings and practises of euill men, and more then may be spoken or uttred to man.**

²⁹³ Bnaspol, Blisdon.

²⁹⁴ Venite . . . dentium: "Come here, where there is no peace, but only the gnashing of teeth." -Ed.

²⁹⁵ Prince Brorges. -Ed.

²⁹⁶ The King.

²⁹⁷ Mark who sayd so before. -Δ. This was Carmara at the beginning of Book 4. -Ed.

²⁹⁸ Note a great Secret of spirits in payn expecting release.

H: Of these, I am Gouernor my self.³⁰⁵ Behold I am of tyme present. I am of the last Ternarie.³⁰⁶ Loke what may be wrowght, in all aëriall Actions, I can distribute and bestow at my pleasure: my tyme and day, is Friday. The day of the last before, is Saterday. The day of the Fifth is Wensday.



H: Behold,

I haue towght thee. His name be blessed who raigneth and liueth for euer.

Δ: Amen, Amen, Amen.

H: I will answer thee of all Dowtes herein (being demaunded of me) to morrow. For, so I call it, for thy sake: Not, for that, it is so to me.

Δ: So he went away.

Δ: Then cam URIEL and MICHAEL, and an other (I think RAPHAEL) and the chayre and table appered, as in the first boke hath byn shewed: And also H had his peculier chayre, at his tymes of teaching me.

MICHAEL (sayd,³⁰⁷) **Mercifull is our God, and glorious is his name Which chuseth his creatures, according to his own Secret Judgment and good pleasure.**

³⁰⁵ HM notes, “Prince Bagenol appeared not, by that name, yet. Note, the king him self [Baligon, aka CARMARA] is governor ouer these.” -Ed.

³⁰⁶ The last Ternarie. That is expounded lib^o. 5. Maij 5.

³⁰⁷ Note, As Michael and Uriel, at the begynning of these revealed mysteries, were present, and gaue Authority to Carmara, to order the whole Heptarchicall

This Arte is the first part of a Threefold Art,³⁰⁸ ioyning Man (with the Knowledge of 1. the WORLD, 2. the GOVERNMENT of his Creatures, and 3. the SIGHT of his Maiestie.):

Unto him (Ô, I say) unto him; which is
Strength, Medicine, and Mercie³⁰⁹
to those that feare him:
Amen.

Δ: Gloria, laus, honor, et perennis Jubilatio,
sit Deo nostro Omnipotenti,
Optimo, Maximoque.³¹⁰ Amen.

Δ: Note, Remember, and enquire what it meaneth, that no Mention is made of Bralges the Prince, Nor of Blumaza his king in this Treatise, being a certayn Repetition of the Heptagonum stellare, going next before.³¹¹

Reuelation, so, at the Conclusion, they appeared agayn and Raphael with them, and Michael concluded the second boke (of this particular Reuelation Hep-tarchicall,) with these words following. -Δ (HM).

³⁰⁸ Prima pars Artis Triplicis: he termeth this afterward of three proportions in Esse. Consider these three principall points here. -Δ. Prima pars Artis Triplicis: "The first part of a triple art." -Ed.

³⁰⁹ Annael.

³¹⁰ Gloria . . . Maximoque: "May glory, laud, honor, and eternal thanksgiving be to our God, almighty and all good." -Ed.

³¹¹ 1588. On twelfth day at night as I considered the Method of this boke, this cam to my mynde. -Δ. Dee's diary fills in some of the events between this action and the next: "[1582] Nov. 22nd, E.K. went to London, and so the next day conveyed by rode toward Blakley, and within ten dayes to returne. Nov. 24th, Saturday night I dreamed that I was deade, and afterward my bowels wer taken out I walked and talked with diverse, and among other with the Lord Thresorer who was com to my howse to burn my bokes when I was dead, and thought he looked

Wensday: Nouemb 21. hora 7 a meridie

Δ: There appered the first table, covered with a cloth of silk changeable cullour red and grene:³¹² with a white cloth under it: all hanging very low. The first Chayre allso: wherein Michael used to sit. And H did appere likewise, and his peculier chayre:³¹³ and he standing by it. But the Diaphanous Globe, and the people or world in it, did not now appere, and, bycause no voyce or word cam from those spirituall creatures, yet: I declared that I did attend theyr pleasure first, as a scholer comming in the presence of his Master, and whan they had sayd those things which were for us first, (at this instant) to lerne, that than, I wold move some dowtes of the premisses, as I was yesterday advised to do. H, he held up his rod (which had two portions or partes of it black and one, red): and sayde,

Ô quanta est hōis infirmitas et Corruptio, qui Angelis, idque suis bonis, fidem autem Deo, vix habet? Omnia mundana, fæces: Mundi Corruptiones in se habent: Deus noster, Deus noster, Deus (inquam) ille noster verus, cum Veris suis angelis, eique³¹⁴ **inseruientibus Semper verus est. Pete quæ vis? Dixi: et quod dixi, obumbratum est veritate, iusticia et perfectione.**³¹⁵

sourely on me. [1583] Feb. 26th, I delivered my boke to the Lord Threasorer for the correction of the Calender. March 6th, I, and Mr. Adrian Gilbert and John Davis, did mete with Mr. Alderman Barnes, Mr. Townson and Mr. Yong and Mr. Hudson, abowt the N.W. voyage. March 18th, Mr. North from Poland, after he had byn with the Quene he cam to me. I receyved salutation from Alaski, Palatine in Poland; salutation by Mr. North who cam before to the Quene, and next to me was his message, hor. 12." Halliwell, ed., *The Private Diary of Dr. John Dee* (New York: AMS Press, 1968), pp. 18–19.

³¹² Note. The cullour red and grene of the Table of Covenant. Two chayres.

³¹³ Two Chayres.

³¹⁴ Idque.

³¹⁵ O quanta . . . perfectione: "O how great is the weakness and corruption of mankind, that has little faith in angels and their good deeds, but hardly any faith in God. All worldly things contain the corruption of the world within them. Our



Ecce, (Δ: holding up the rod³¹⁶).

Hic (Δ: pointing to the ende of the rod).

Per hoc (Δ: pointing to the middle of it).

Et a Mensuræ fine, nos nostramque mensurabis
potestatem. Age (inquam) Quid vis?³¹⁷

Δ: I, than, of the premisses used a little discourse: how they might parabolically,³¹⁸ betoken other more profownd matter, and litterally other: yet what sense so euer the premisses had, that they first rudiments and Text was to be made somewhat playner to me, then yet they were: bycause I dowted as well of the understanding of some of that, I had written, as allso of mys writing: eyther throwgh EK his mys reporting to me matter shewed to him, or by my mys-hering or negligent writing &c. To some part therof he sayd these words ensuing.

H: In umbra mortis non est æqualitas. Obscurum enim nihil est quod per illum [EK] recepisti. Age.³¹⁹

H: Thow hast a work of three proportions in esse;³²⁰ of 7 in forme: which is of it self diuided by a number septenarie, of the course, estate and determination of things aboue, things next, and things below:

God, our God, he (I say) our God is true, and is true with his true angels and those who ever serve him. Ask for what you wish. I have spoken, and what I have spoken that was obscure, was in truth, justice, and perfection.” -Ed.

³¹⁶ Note of this Rod.

³¹⁷ Ecce . . . Hic . . . Per hoc . . . Et a Mensurae . . . vis? “Behold . . . here, . . . and here. . . And from the end of the measure you will measure us and our power. Practice (I say). What do you wish?” -Ed.

³¹⁸ Parabolically: using parable. -Ed

³¹⁹ In umbra . . . Age: “In the shadow of death there is no equality. Nothing is obscure which you have received through him (E.K.). Practice.” -Ed.

³²⁰ A Threefold work.

which, of it self is pure perfect and without blemish.³²¹ Notwithstanding I will answer thee thus.

The 7 Kings are orderly conteyned in the first of the Seuens diuided in generall numbers: whose names are expressed; published and perfectly formed within the first grownd and fowndacion of this Threefold work.³²² The kings I meane with theyr Characters,³²³ and the names of theyr 7 liuing and semper adherent Ministers:³²⁴ Whose names thou mayst see not onely there written, but openly, and most playnely, truely, and sincerely spoken of before:³²⁵ as, by due examination of thy bokes thou shalt manifestly perceyue. Notwithstanding, as euery king, in his Maiestie, doth comprehend the dignitie of his whole seat and estate, so I of my self being the First, haue the gouernment of my self perfectly, as a mysterie known unto my self: which is a thing unlawfull to be published unto man and lawfull³²⁶ in respect of the charge committed unto us: and the slender Dignification of mans frayle estate; Which thou mayst see in the Heptagonon: where, there wanteth a name: the rest of the Cr... the utter Circumference of the Globe, are the Six Kings Or . . . following: according as they are written in the Mysteries of the . . . which do begynne the³²⁷ Powres, with theyr Prince,³²⁸ and theyr Characters orderly taken, by and uppon the Heptagonon . . .

Ô God, how easy is this first understanding. Thou hast byn told

³²¹ In HM, Dee attributes this to “Carmara, Nouemb. 21. in appendix of the second boke.” -Ed.

³²² Threfold Work.

³²³ The Kings with their Characters.

³²⁴ An, Aue, Rocle, Liba. I understand of Il, An, Aue, &c in the characters of the 7 kings.

³²⁵ Filij Filiorum - An, Aue, &c. Examination to be made of these bokes. -Δ. Filii Filiorum: “Sons of the Sons” -Ed.

³²⁶ Δ fortè “Unlawfull” and was myshard.

³²⁷ Forte: “their.” -Ed.

³²⁸ Princis.

perfectly, playnely and absolutely, not onely the Condition, dignitie, and estate of all things that God hath framed: But also withall, thow wart deliuered the most perfect forme and use of them.³²⁹

But this will I tell thee (to the intent thow shalt know: and forby cause I wold not, thow sholdest be ignorant in true Wisdome) that those Six Names in and uppon the Heptagonum are Collected, do growe and are gathered from the names in generally aforesayd.³³⁰

Take the Names, I will teache thee to know them, which els, [without] by direction³³¹ thow canst not fynde.



Loke thy First Table. I am called BALIGON with men. Thow hast Noted my name (which is secret) among the Angels,³³² begynning with this letter M, consisting of 7 letters, the last being an A.

I am called MARMARA: but otherwise CARMARA : but that letter M, shall not be expressed, &c.

Thow seest, next, BOBOGEL, He it is that is the Second King. Thow seest the name BORNOGO, to be the first³³³ uppon the Heptagonum: it is his Prince. And therfore I did Note him with a Coronet, and not with a Crown: nay rather, but with a Cerclet about his hed. &c³³⁴

³²⁹ Liber Creationis. Note, what hath bin tawght in this boke. -Δ. HM attributes this saying to Carmara, Nouemb. 21. Liber Creationis: "Book of Creation." -Ed.

³³⁰ Δ: as may appere by the 49 names Collected.

³³¹ Δ: I suspect this to be an imperfect phrase.

³³² Name among Angels

³³³ Δ = name expressed.

³³⁴ Note Attire.

Δ: I concluded (of his instruction) the Kings and theyr Princes, theyr names to be thus lerned out of the Table Collected of 49, names, it is to weete,³³⁵

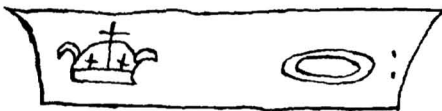
1	--Δ--	44	
8	----	2	
* 15	----	9	} modo retrogrado quasi ³³⁶
22	----	16	
29	----	23	
36	----	30	
43	--Δ--	37	

** As far as I remember, he sayd, My Prince is in my self: which is a mysterie

~~My Coniecture~~

~~(hereuppon, and uppon this retrograde respect to finde the princis among the 49 names in Tabula~~

~~*** Collecta) is, that Baginol is the Prince under BALIGON: bycause the letters are all one: but the order of theyr places diuerse: and so is his prince conteyned in him self.~~



Rex Princeps

~~Δ He then allowed of my Coniecture for these .6. but of his Prince~~

~~Δ I than sayd nothing: tyll at the fayr writing hereof, this, here added, cam into my mynde. How well, I know not yet: Novemb .23.~~

³³⁵ It is to weete: "that is to say." -Ed.



³³⁶ Modo retrogrado quasi: "now as if going backward." -Ed.

* Addendo 7 - fit hic processus. Ergo addendo 7, numero 43, proueniet 50: numerus: major 40 quam 49 per .1. qui respicere pt illum: primum Regem Baligon.³³⁷

** addendo 7, fit processus hic g^o. Si 7 addantur numero 37: inde emerget 44. pro proximo principe.³³⁸

~~*** It is not Baginol, but Bagenol, with e not i, and therefore consider.~~

and farder he sayd, The Characters of Kings, are in the Globe,³³⁹
and of the Princis, in the Heptagonon.

Δ: Note: from the  on the last side, untill these words finished, he was out of sight: and whan he had ended these words, he cam in sight agayn: and browght a thing in his hand like a sterre:  or Heptagonum.

H: Beholde. Euery one of these Princis hath³⁴⁰ his peculier Table.
Thow hast Noted the First Table which begynneth, as I will tell thee.

1. 2: In BOBOGEL, that O, (the second letter) is the first of the Table OESNGLE and the second of Befafes, is the second, and the thirdth of the third: and the fowrth of the fowrth and the fifth of the fifth, and the sixth of the sixth, and E, (in the

³³⁷ Addendo . . . Baligon: "This course is made by adding 7. Therefore adding 7 to the number 43 results in 50: a number one greater than 49, which may indicate the first king, Baligon." -Ed.

³³⁸ Addendo . . . principe: "This course is made by adding 7. Therefore if 7 is added to the number 37, from there results 44 for the next prince." -Ed.

³³⁹ Δ: Note that he calleth that contynually A Globe. Uppon such a globe Nalvage shewed out all the Calls.

³⁴⁰ HM reads "must have." -Ed.

seuenth. Bnagole is the seuenth and last of this first seuen of this first Table: accownted the first. ¶ AVZHILN.³⁴¹

The second seuen by like order is gathered of Babalel, and the rest of his septenarie. And so furth, to the ende downward as thow didst before &c.

2. 3: In the second Table; L (the first letter therof) is out of Bobogel his last letter, the second letter, is the sixth of Befafes; the third, is the fifth of Basmelo &c and so you haue LEENARB.³⁴² For the rest kepe that order downward to the ende of the last Name Bamnode. Tranversim, quasi retrograde.³⁴³
3. 4: In the Third, begyn at the lower³⁴⁴ letter [of the latter³⁴⁵ worde] of the last of the second seven: and so upward, toward the right³⁴⁶ hand: Δ: The last word is of second seven is Bnagole: the last letter therof is e: which is the first of this Third Table: and the i, in Brisfli, is the second, and the l in Branglo the thirdth, and than so furth, upward, overthwart, toward the left hand: till ye come to Bobogel, his second letter, being O. Then to N in Bonefor: e in Bermale: o in Bragiop. &c.
4. 5: For the Fowrth, loke, Bobogel. Then loke to this fowrth Table the first B of the Table is the first B of Bobogel. The second B of this Table, is the B of Befafes. The third letter is a, the second letter of Basmelo. The fowrth letter, R, is the thirdth of Bernole. The fifth is the fowrth of Branglo. The sixth, is the fifth of

³⁴¹ King . . . first . . . answering to Blumaza as I perceyued 1583 Maij 5, manè by meditation: and of Necessity must be: yf the last be for Baligon.

³⁴² The next l is the last letter of Babalel, and then transversim as before, &c.

³⁴³ Traversim quasi retrograde: "Going crosswise as if backwards." -Ed.

³⁴⁴ Last.

³⁴⁵ Last.

³⁴⁶ Left.

Brisfli. The seuenth is the sixth of Bnagole. And so in to the next sevens downward orderly for the rest of the table.

5. 6: The Fifth begynneth from Bnagole upward: begynning at the last letter being e: and then upward croswise exactly tyll the B of Bobogel. And so of the next seuen, for the next: begynning at the n of Bonefon, and so furth.
6. 7: In the sixth, (the Infernall Table) The first is B of Bobogel, The second is A of the 15th: The third is N of the 22th: the fowrth, is the fowrth of the 29: The fifth of the 36: the sixth of the 43: and the seuenth of the 49: being E in Bamnode, two letters being taken in that last septenarie. The second septenarie begynneth at the first of the 15th, the second at the second of the 22th, (being Y), the third at the thirdth of the 29th, then the 4th of the 30th,: the 5th of the 43th.
7. 1: The Seuenth: the first A, is the A, of Baligon, and so downward all the second letters of the 7 kings: Then all the third letters, then all the fowrth letters, then all the fifth letters, then all the sixth letters only and finally the seventh and last letters of the first names of the Septenaries.

Δ: Note, this Table is made all of Kingly substance &c.

Δ: Now I trust I understand (meterly well,³⁴⁷) the making of the 7 Tables. I wold gladly here som instruction of the great Circular table (which you call the Globe) which hath the Kn... with theyr Characters; and so within, 7 tymes 7, seuen tymes . . . 7 tymes 6, seuen tymes furnished with letters and numbers . . . sorts.

H: That doth apperteyn to an other tyme.³⁴⁸

EK: The Cloth was lett down, and the stone did yield voyce but nothing visible but the forsayd blak cloth.

³⁴⁷ Meterly well: "fairly well." -Ed.

³⁴⁸ The use of the Circular Table (here before often called a Globe) at another tyme.

H: One thing is yet wanting: a mete receptacle &c. There is yet wanting a stone &c. One there is, most excellent, hid in the secret of the depth &c. In the uttermost part of the Roman Possession.

H: Write. All lawd, Glorie and honor be unto him, which rayneth for euer. Amen. Be of good Cumfort.

Lo, the mighty hand of God is uppon thee.

Thow shalt haue it. Thow shalt haue it, Thow shalt haue it. Dost thow see, loke and styr not from thy place: EK pointed toward it.

Δ: I see it not.

H: It is sanctified, blessed, and³⁴⁹ in the use of his Creatures.

Thow shalt preuayle with it, with Kings, and with all Creatures of the world: Whose beauty (in vertue) shall be more worth then the Kingdomes of the earth.

Loke, if thow see it: But styr not, for the Angel of his powre is present.

EK loked toward my west wyndow, and saw there first uppon the matts by my bokes a thing, (to his thinking) as bigg as an egg: most bright, clere, and glorious: and an angel of the heyth of a little chylde holding up the same thing in his hand toward me: and that Angel had a fyrey sword in his hand &c.³⁵⁰

H: Go toward it; and take it up.

Δ: I went toward the place, which EK pointed to: and tyll I cam within two fote of it, I saw nothing: and then I saw like a shaddow on the grownd or matts hard by my bokes under the west wyndow. The shaddow was rowndysh, and less then the palm of my hand. I put my hand down uppon it, and I felt a thing cold and hard: which, (taking up, I) perceyued to be the stone before mentioned.³⁵¹

³⁴⁹ I omitted a word, and our memories could not yeld it, this perhaps, Dignified.

³⁵⁰ An angel holding up the stone.

³⁵¹ This stone brought by the Angel is said to bee an nich thick in the following Mysteriorum Lib. 5. Ms. p. El. Ash: conceives it to have been of a lenticular

H: Kepe it sincerely.

Veritas in veritate: Deus in Deo, Unus in uno est.³⁵²


Let no mortall hand towche it, but thyne owne:³⁵³

Prayse God.

Δ: Illi qui venturus est Indicare Sæculum per ignem sit omnis honor, laus, et gloria, in sempiterna sæcula.³⁵⁴ Amen.

forme, included in a circular limb upon the top of which a cross, & edgewise sett in the frame. -E.A. See action of 5 May 1583. -Ed.

³⁵² Veritas . . . uno est: "Truth is within truth, God within God, One is within one." -Ed.

³⁵³  caue. -Δ. ("Beware." -Ed.)

³⁵⁴ Illi . . . saecula: "May all honor, praise, and glory be to him who is to reveal the age through fire, forever and ever." Perhaps *indicere is intended: "to inflict (the age with fire)." Ashmole reads Iudicare: "to judge." -Ed.

Liber Mysteriorum

Quintus

1583 Martij 23.

Liber 6^{us}.

Liber 7^{us}¹

¹ The words “Liber 6^{us}. / Liber 7^{us}.” are in Ashmole’s handwriting. -Ed.

Jesus †.

Anno 1583 Martij 23. Saterdag a meridie.

Δ: EK being come, with Mr John Husey of Blokley. (on the 22 day of marche) and EK being desirous to understand somewhat of our spirituall frendes as concerning such matter as had falln out very strange to him and Mr Husey: abowt a certayne moniment of a boke and a skroll fownd in Northwik hill² by the direction and leading of such a spirituall Creature, as when they had gotten the same, and they endeouored by art to haue some exposition of the skroll, written in strange characters, they wer willed to repayre to me, and there they shold be answered: &c. which thing now they did.³

Being therfor now ready to receyue instructions of our frendes, there appered in the stone One,⁴ in a foles cote, going abowt a clowde, which appered first in the stone. I charged him if he were the enemy of God to depart. He tore his clothes all, and appeared all hery under: and sayd, Penetrasti vim iniusticæ meæ.⁵

Δ: Glorifie God and depart. He sayd, Feci, Nam decedo.⁶ He went away as it had byn a bunsh of fethers pulld in peces. The Clowd waxed bigger, and went all to the right hand. At length the Table appeared, But the Chayre seamed not to be of the same sort it was, but more Glorious. There appeared three, of which, two went away, and one tarried behynde.

He sayd-----Auete.

² The boke fownd in Northwik hill.

³ The scroll is shown below before the April 11th Action. It shows the locations of ten hidden treasures. -Ed.

⁴ Pilosus. -Δ ("Hairy." -Ed.)

⁵ Penetrasti . . . meae: "You penetrated the power of my iniquity." -Ed.

⁶ Feci, Nam decedo: "I am done, for I depart." -Ed.

Verum est, et incredibile.⁷ He kneeled to the Chayre and spake, but his words could not be discerned.

Via, veritas, et virtus, unum sunt: et multiplex et admirabilis est eius magnitudo: Et venit ab ore tuo flatus, (et vitam habet) quo viuunt omnia, nutu, et illuminatione tua.

Aue Verbum, Aue rerum formatrix⁸ et mensura eorum quæ fuerunt, sunt, et erunt: Illuminasti oculos creaturarum monimentis et admonitionibus planis: Vita bonis, mors autem impijs, et a consideratione tua abiectis. Quanta et innumerabilia sunt (Iustitia) dona tua? O remiges varpax. Kyrie eleyson.⁹

Δ: All this he sayd Kneeling to the chayre; and then he rose; and I sayde, O beata Trinitas, mitte lucem et veritatem tuam, ut ipam me ducant ad montem sanctum, et ad tabernacula tua.

Me: Ubi, non increduli.

Δ: Nos non sumus increduli: sed spes nostra viuit æterna et Omnipotens est Veritas, fons vitæ.

Me: Adduxi vobis aquam¹⁰ ex eodem riuulo. Medicina verò est imperfectionibus et necessitatibus vestris. Intelligite nunc et quis sum, et quibus ornatus. Bibite, et accipite Ossibus vestris pinguedinen. Multæ namque sunt mortalium imperfectiones. habeo, et habebitis: Adduxi, et videbiter. Verbum est Lumen illud quo omnis imperfectio

⁷ Auete. Verum est, et incredibile: "Greetings. It is the truth, and incredible." -Ed.

⁸ Iustitia. -Δ ("Justice" -Ed.)

⁹ Via . . . eleyson: "The way, the truth, and the virtue are one, and his greatness is manifold and wonderful. And the breath comes from your mouth (and has life) from which everything lives, by your command and your light. Hail the word, hail the creator of things and of their measure which have been, are, and will be. You have illuminated the eyes of the creatures by reminders and plain warnings. Life to the good, but death to the wicked, and those cast from your consideration. How great and innumerable are your gifts? O remiges varpax. Lord have mercy." -Ed.

¹⁰ Aqua. -Δ ("Water." -Ed)

aboletur. Credentes introibu... in Sanctum eius. vbi potio, et Medicina sempiterna.¹¹

Cogitasti verè. Sum etiam, et Credas. Nam veritate et iustitia, vera et perfecta sunt verba et disciplina eius.¹² What wilt thou?

Δ: Recte sapere.¹³ Me: Thow hast it.

Δ: I perceyue it not otherwise, then that I beleue, it may be the decree of the highest.

Δ: He shewed a Tree, and a great deale of water at the roote or botom of it: and he sayd, Me: Hath this Tree, now, any frute?

Δ: I see it not. But the skryer may say.

EK: The water commeth up the tree, and it swelleth, and it hath frute, great, fayre, and red.

Me: Lo I eate of it my self, and it lighteth the harts of those that are chosen. [He semeth to eate.] So is it in thee.

Δ: Ecce seruus Domini, fiat Decretum eius in me (iuxta misericordiam eius) de me pronunciatum.¹⁴

Me: **Go and thow shalt receyue. Tary, and you shall receyue slepe, and you shall see, But watch, and your eyes shall be fully opened. One**

¹¹ Loquitur de mea cogitatione, quod esset Raphaël. -Δ. ("He speaks concerning my thought that he may be Raphael." -Ed.)

¹² O Beata Trinitas . . . eius: "O blessed Trinity, send your light and your truth, that they may lead me to the holy mountain and to your tent. Me: Where, O unbelievers? Δ: We are not unbelievers, but our hope is alive, and the eternal and almighty truth is the fountain of life. Me: I brought you water from that same stream. It is a true medicine for your imperfections and needs. Understand now both who I am and for whom I was adorned. Drink and receive the abundance for your bones [can also be figurative: innermost part, soul]. For many are the imperfections of mortals. I have and you (pl) will have. I brought, and he shall be seen. The word is that light that blots out all imperfections. The faithful will enter into his blessedness. Wherein is the potion and eternal medicine. You thought correctly [see previous footnote]: I am indeed as you believe. For by truth and justice, his words and teachings are true and complete." -Ed.

¹³ Recte sapere: "To perceive correctly." -Ed.

¹⁴ Ecce seruus . . . pronunciatum: "Behold the servant of the Lord, Let his decree be for me (like his mercy) as was declared about me." -Ed.

thing, which is the grownd and element of thy desyre, is allredy perfyted.¹⁵

Yt seemeth that you beleue not.¹⁶ But I haue sayde, as he hath sayd and his worde shall endure for euer. For he shall, and will performe it, for he liueth for euer. **Oute of Seuen thow hast byn instructed most perfectly of the lesser part,**¹⁷ the rest I haue browght you, in this my vessell; A medicine sufficient to extinguish and quenche oute the enemy, to our felicitie: Muse not, though I say ours: for we all liue in tasting of this liquor. His Hed is a marble stone.¹⁸ His hart is the blud of a dragon. His leggs are the tops of the Northen Mowntaynes. His eyes are bright, and his face of many Cullours, eche substance amongst the turmoyle and trubble of nothing. For as then, they were Nothing: Had a forme applyable and necessary according to theyr quantitie and secret qualitie. The heuens are lightened by his two eyes: wherof the one sight is brighter then the other. Aboue and in him self which is by him self, and in no other, is this great and vertuous fowntayne. In nature Intellectuall he hath watred the plantes of her beauty, and stroked up the garments of her felicitie. In her darkest members entreth in the taste and sauour of this percing Medicine; reviving and recalling all things past present and to come, unto theyr lively and dignified perfection. My words ar sentences. My sentences, wisdom; My wisdom the ende in my message of all things. Mighty and glorious is the Vertue of it, whose springs do endure, and are clere for euer: Whose name be blessed.

Δ: Amen. I respect the tyme. God be with you.

¹⁵ Perfyted: "perfected." -Ed.

¹⁶ Increduli. -Δ ("Unbelievers." -Ed.)

¹⁷ HM identifies this as Raphael. -Ed.

¹⁸ A parable.

Martij 24. Sonday: morning about 8.

Δ: The Table appeared, and the Chayre: and he who appeared yesterday: kneeling or rather lying prostrate on his face, as if he were a slepe: He lay a long while.

A thing like a lambs hed did seeme to lik him, and then he rose and wiped his face, as though he had wept.

Me, he sayd, Signa sunt hæc vobis, humilitatis et pænitentia; quæ facio omnia, vestra, non mea sunt.¹⁹ Laudetur verbum eius in Cælo, laudetur etiam et in terris: Investigate potentiam in humilitate loquelæ eius, et videbitis gloriam frontis eius. Misericors namque et omnipotens est gloria virtutis eius. Vana sunt, corruptionibus suis; Necessaria verò Necessitatibus vestris. Nam fecit omnia ad laudem eius: et opera manuum suarum (Ecce) collaudant lumen vultus eius. Adinvicem diligite Humilitate viuite. Medicina verò mea (quæ eius est) omnia resanabit.²⁰

The feldes wither without the drops of his Mercie. Mans Memorie is dull, unleast it taste of the sprinkling of this vessell. [EK: He hath a great thing under his gown.]

Nature and reason²¹ haue disputed profowndly and truely by the sauour hereof: it perceth therfore depely. But understanding and reason haue eleuated and lifted up the dignitie and worthynes of Mans Memorie, by taste hereof. The Immeasurable and unspeakable begynnings (yea with

¹⁹ Note hereby to consider theyr actions, gestures and other circumstances.

²⁰ Signa sunt . . . resanabit: "These are signs to you (pl) of humility and of repentance; which (signs) I make everything yours; they are not mine. May his word be praised in heaven, and may he also be praised on earth. Discover power in the humility of his speech (or language) and you (pl) will see the glory of his brow. For the glory of his power is merciful and almighty. Vanities exist in his seductions; Necessities exist in your true needs. For he made all things for his praise: and (behold) his handiwork praises the light of his face. Love one another; live with humility. Truly, my medicine (which is his) will convey everything." -Ed.

²¹ Nature ∴ Reason ∴.

the begynner and Principle therof), are exactly (after a sort) and perfectly known of them. Yt hath towght from the earth unto the heauens: from the heven, unto his seat: from his seate, into his Diuinitie. From his Diuinitie, a Capable measuring of his unmeasurable mercies. It is true, most true, and true shalbe for euer. That from the lowest grass to the highest tree, [from] the smallest valley, to the greatest mowntayn; yea, euen in the distinction, betwixt light and darknes: the measure whereof is the deapest: yea (I say) it hath towght a Iudgment. When he axed wisdome, and forsoke the world, he receyued it: and it measured the things of the world. Great are the inward eyes, and greater are the meanes, which deliuer things subiect or obiect unto them.

Finally it procedeth from him, that procedeth: Whereunto the first was formed, after, and not like. Whose fote slipping hath dassed his hed in peces, and it becam dark: untill agayn, the Medecine which I haue browght, revived his slombring. Hereby, he, not onely knew all things,²² but the measure and true use therof. Yf the body haue no inward fyre, it presently falleth. Euery Organ is voyde of qualitie, unleast a meane be adiected. So, is all that thow hast before, more wonderfull, then, as yet, profitable, unleast thow be directed and led-in unto the true use and order of the same.²³ Great are my words, and great is thy thought: Greater shalbe the ende of these Gods Mercies.

New worlds, shall spring of these.

New manners: strange men: The true light, and thorny path, openly seen. All things in one, and yet, this is but a vision. Wonderfull and great are the purposes of him, whose Medicine I carry. I haue sayde.

Δ: He lay down agayn, a good while, and at length he rose: after my long prayer and confession made to god, and my discourse to him, &c.

²² Note Adam, before his fall, knew all things.

²³ The true use and order of the premisses.

EK: He plucketh out a boke: all the leaves are, as thowgh they were gold, and it semeth written with blud, not dry.

Δ: He sayd, Cownt. Δ: He turned ouer the leaves, but EK could not well cownt them: whereuppon he sayd: I will raze out²⁴ thy dulnes, and at length, make thee clere.

EK: There are 48 leaves.

Me: Et finis est.²⁵ One is one; neyther is, was or shalbe known: And yet there are iust so many. These haue so many names, of the so many Mysteries, that went before. This is the second and the Third: The Third and the last.²⁶ This is the measure of the whole.

Ô what is man, that is worthy to know these Secrets? Heavy are his Wickednesses, Mighty is his synne. These shallt thow know: These shall you use.²⁷ The One is a Master, the other is a Minister. The One, is a hand, the other is a finger: Grutch not. Neyther let wickednes tempt you: loue together. Be contented with your calling: For, all beasts see not a like: yet are they all Creatures: Vessels, not of one bignes, yet are they all full. Both, most sufficient, but according to fayth, and understanding of Conscience. Yet must there be a third; whom, God doth not yet chuse. The tyme shalbe short: the matter great, the ende greater. Ask now what thow wilt and he shall answer thee.

EK: There appered one like my self laying his two armes, one, on EK his sholder: and the other on a man his sholder, unknown to us, but somewhat like to Mr Adrian Gilbert,²⁸ &c.

²⁴ Raze out: "erase." -Ed.

²⁵ Et finis est: "And it is the end." -Ed.

²⁶ Note of this boke.

²⁷ J Dee, and EK.

²⁸ Adrian Gilbert, half-brother to Sir Walter Raleigh, was a frequent visitor to Mortlake. He eventually was allowed to participate in some of the actions. Earlier in this same year (1583), Dee started plans to colonize North America with Adrian Gilbert and John Davis. During subsequent actions, Dee consults the angels about this proposed venture.

Δ: Ys it your will to procede in this matter, you now haue begonne withall: or will you of these characters and places of Threasure hid (here portrayed by picture), say any thing?

Me: As thou wilt. Δ: As the will of God is, so will I. The will of God you know, better than I.

Me: The æternall liquor be uppon you. Ones more, what wilt thou?

Δ: I do prefer the heuenly liquor, before all things, and do desire to be bedewed, with the supercælestiall dew thereof.

Me: Consider the former tree.

Δ: The tre with the water at the fote?

Me: Thow hast sayd. His growing powre, bringeth furth Act.²⁹ Remember the Prince and Subiects, which haue powre (as is told thee) of Erthly Bowels (The thing there, [~~whose~~] which you desire of me, is no parte of my charge), Call him: It is his office: for by his ministers it hath byn shewed.³⁰ God doth impart his mercy, to those he loueth, in all necessitie: whether of the one, or of the other, where it is dew: I leave it: his Office is to speak it. Notwithstanding liue in truth and humilitie: Use God his Creatures, to his glorie, and thy Necessitie, the proffit of thy own lymms, and cutting out of all Canker and rotten flesh. Thow understandest: For thy eyes shalbe opened. Amen.

EK: He spreddeth his hands abroade, and goeth away, and putteth his boke in his bosom as he goeth.

Δ: Gloria patri.³¹ &c. Amen.

²⁹ Potentia, Actus. -Δ ("Power, Deed." -Ed.)

³⁰ Δ Blisdon is the prince under Bnaspol the king. Vide sup. Lib. 4: A°. 1587. Circa Maiu: Quidam Ben, (spiritualis Creatura) dixit ipi EK, se custodinis illud pulverem et librum Dunstani, &c. -Δ. (Vide sup. ...: "See above in book 4. Around May 1587 one Ben (a spiritual creature) said to EK that he himself had guarded that powder and Book of Dunstan.") See TFR Actio Tertia, May 23, p. 27 (pages separately numbered). -Ed.

³¹ Gloria patri: "Glory be to the Father." -Ed.

Martij 26. hor. 10 ante Meridiem.

First, appered a clowd: and that vanished away: Three cam in, they made Cursy to the chayre: and two went away. Then the third which remayned, lay down on the grownd, as before. There cam like a lambs hed,³² and licked him. He sayd then, as followeth: being stand up,

Magna sunt, Alla quæ dixisti,³³ making cursy to the chayre. There was a sownd hard before. After a while he sayd,

Me: Thy Kingdom is established in eternitie. Thy hands are invisible, and no man can distinguish thy mercies. I attend your desire.

Δ: As concerning the Characters, and shew of the ten places, we are desirous to know whyther we may require now Bnaspol, or other under him, to say unto us, that, which may content us, for the Case as it standeth with us.

Me: The buylder of the Temple was riche, before it was adorned. With Wisdome, cam the Instruments necessarie for mans worldly use. He hideth no light from those he loveth: neyther shutteth up his tents from such as seke him. Yf one be great, Ô how small is the other? How small therfore is the mynde, and how much weakened that desireth those trifles? But as the smallest thing is feefest to the smallest use, so is the existimation of things of light accownt, necessary for the lightnes and vanitie of this world. A part (Notwithstanding) may beawtify the whole, and a small thing, may cure a great infirmitie. I told thee before, that my fete are not placed uppon such brittle and crakling sand, neyther are my lipps occupied with the vanitie of nothing. I will not³⁴ manifest in any point, the thing which thow desyrest, neyther is it any part of my charge.

I haue byn thy scholemaster and director to the Sterne, to rule the

³² A lambs hed, may be a token of our humilitie required, &c.

³³ Magna . . . dixisti: "Great are the things that I have said." -Ed.

³⁴ Note.

reason therof, with those, which can reache the Iudgment therof. All those before spoken of, are subiect to thy call.³⁵ This vessell at all tymes they greatly accept. Yet haue they times and seasons:³⁶ When order breaketh in her self, the labor is in vayne. Euery thing is for and to an ende. Of frendship, at any time,³⁷ thow mayst see them, and Know what thow willt.

But One thing differeth, the Ende, and the Begynning. That onely, is the El, rod, or measure which all ready is deliuered. The stroke of which, bringeth all things, in theyr degree, to an ende: as far as the seven (magnificencie of euery Seuen) stretcheth out it self.

Euery one, (to be short) shall at all times and seasons,³⁸ shew thee direction in any thing. But, SO, thow canst not use them, in the determination, and full ende of euery practise. It is one thing to affectionate; and an other to effect. What thow seest, is true, and to a former³⁹ commoditie: For, with Furderance, euery thing in Nature is ayded.

Δ: ---

Reade ouer that, which now, lastly, I declared: Then see, if you be not answered.

Δ: ---

Therefore mayst thow know, what that is, allthough thow do not, yet, or presently, put it in practise, by him, whose Charge it is, to deliuer it.⁴⁰

Δ: Of your so greatly commended liquor I am desirous to haue farder understanding.

³⁵ NOTE.

³⁶ Note. All tymes, Speciall tymes.

³⁷ Of frendship, at any tyme.

³⁸ Note.

³⁹ Furder.

⁴⁰ NOTE Whose charge it is to deliuer it.

Me: What liquor is more liuely then the dew of Truth, proceeding from a fowntayn most swete and delectable? Euen that veritie which thy mowth hath preached of.⁴¹ What water recreateth more, or cooleth ignorance deeper than the knowledg of our Celestiall speche?⁴² your voyces are but fayned: shaddows of the wordes and voyces that substantially do comprehend euery substance in his kinde. The things which you do loke on, bycause you see them not in dede, you allso do name them amysse: you are confownded, for your offenses: and dispersed for your punishments: But we are all one, and are fully understanding. We open the eare, and the passage thereof, from the sonne in the morning to the sonne at night. Distance is nothing with us, unleast it be the distance, which separateth the wicked from his mercy. Secrets there are none, but that buried are in the shaddow of mans Sowle.

We see all things: and Nothing is hid from us: respecting our Creation. The waters shall stand, if they here theyr own speche. The heuens shall move, and shew them selues, when they know theyr thunder. Hell shall tremble, whan they know what is spoken to them.⁴³ The first⁴⁴ excepted, No man euer was, is, or shall be (excepted where I except) that euer shall understand, hath or doth know the least part (ô it is incomprehensible) of this Vessel. He named all things (which knew it) and they are so in dede, and shalbe so for euer.

Thow shaltt speak with us;⁴⁵ And we will be spoken with, of thee. Three they are excepted, which taken from amongst you, as they were, do yet speak with us, which are provided in the three laws to destroy

⁴¹ Veritas. -Δ. ("Truth, verity." -Ed.)

⁴² Lingua et Vox Angelica. -Δ. ("Angelic language and voice." -Ed.)

⁴³ The Powre of the primitiue diuine or Angelicall speche.

⁴⁴ ADAM.

⁴⁵ Angelorum Colloquia -Δ. ("Conversation of angels." -Ed.)

that Monstre.⁴⁶ They are fed with cælestiall fode, and they, talking, speak all understanding. This it is, I take God, (onely him that created me) to recorde. It is determined: else wold I not: And may be undetermined, yf you break his commaundements.⁴⁷

A Stone it is that perceth⁴⁸ down all things before it; and kepeth them under him, as the heuens do a clowde. What art thou, (O god,) and how mighty ar the drops of thy mercy, that preparedst man before to examin thy Mysteries? The plagues of those that plagued them selues, shall fall uppon you, **yf you transgress**⁴⁹ one iote of your eyesight:

For, What you desire, is graunted: and if you loue him, you shall endure for euer. I am not as a clowde, sheuered⁵⁰ with the wynde: nor as a garment, that waxeth olde, and torn in peces: But I am for euer (bycause my message is such) and my truth, shall endure for euer.

Beholde, Beholde, yea let heven and earth behold: For with this, they were created: and it is the voyce and speche of him, which proceeded from the first, and is the first; whose glorious name be exalted in his own horn of honor.⁵¹ Lo, this it is. [EK: He sheweth a boke, as he did before all gold.] And it is truth; Whose truth shall endure for euer.

⁴⁶ Tres ab hominibus in cælos rapti cum Angelis conversantes. Fortè, 'Enoch, Elias, Jo . . .' -Δ. ("Three carried off to heaven keeping company with angels. Perhaps Enoch, Elias, and John [the Baptist]." -Ed.)

⁴⁷ NOTE. -Δ. In the manuscript this last sentence is heavily underscored. -Ed.

⁴⁸ Fortè: "presseth."

⁴⁹ Note.

⁵⁰ Shivered: "shattered." -Ed.

⁵¹ The boke, the first Language of God Christ.

~ . 7 . 2 . 4 . 6 . 2 . 7 . 3 . 15 . 12 . 4 . 3 . 2 . 4 . 7 . 8 . 8 . 5 . 6 . 4 . 12 .

EK: He toke from under the Table, a thing like a great globe, and set that in the chayre: and uppon that Globe, layd the boke. He pointeth to the characters: and cownteth them with his finger, being 21, and beginning from the right hand, toward the left. He putteth-off the Crown of gold, from his hed: and layeth it, on the Table. His here appereth yellow. He maketh cursy: and from under the Table taketh a rod of gold in his hand, being diuided into three distinctions.⁵⁴ He putteth the ende of the rod on the first of the Characters, and sayeth, Pa:

54 Δ By his often taking things from under the table it shold seme that there shold be some shelf made under our Table.

and there appered in english, or latin letters, Pa: He sayd, veh: and there appered veh in writing: Then Ged: and after that he sayd, Unus Unus Unus, Magnus, Magnus, Magnus, es.⁵⁵ Then he pointed to an other, and sayd Gal, and there appeared Gal: Then or [the voyce seemed Orh.] Then un [the sownd semed und.] Then Graph: [The sownd as Grakpha, in the throte.] Then Tal, [in sownd stall or xtall.] Then gon. Then na [but in sownd Nach as it were in the nose.] Then ur, [in sownd our or ourh.] Than mals, [in sownd machls.] Then Ger, [in sownd, gierh.] Then drux, [in sownd drovx.] Then Pal: the p being sownded remissly. Then med. He sayd, Magna est gloria eius.⁵⁶ Ceph, sownded like Keph, But before that, was Don: Then van, Fam, Then Gisg.

V — Pa — b
 K — Veh — c
 G — ged — g
 Y — gal — d
 Z — or — f
 S — un — a
 J — graph — e
 L — Tal — m
 C — gon — i
 M — na — hat
 F — vr — l
 U — mals — p
 T — ger — q
 D — drux — n
 P — Pal — x
 B — med — o
 C — don — r
 H — cep — z
 X — van — u
 ? — fan — s
 N — Gisg — t

Then he lay down before it: and there cam two lines and parted the 21 letters into 3 partes, eche being of 7. He sayd, Numerus ô perfectissimus, Unus et Trinus. Gloria tibi,⁵⁷ Amen.

⁵⁵ Unus . . . es: "You are One, One, One, Great, Great, Great." -Ed.

⁵⁶ Magna . . . eius: "Great is his glory." -Ed.

⁵⁷ Numerus . . . tibi: "The number, O most perfect, One and Threefold. Glory be to you." -Ed.

EK: Now the Capteyn appeared alone, on fote, in his harness. He hold-eth up his hands to heven: He is now vanished away. I meane the Capteyn in white and grene. Now appeareth the red cloth before the chayre. There come in three: they all make cursy: and two of them went away.

Δ: Our desyre is to know what we are to think of the Man which cam out of my Oratory and layd the fyry Ball at Mr Adrian Gilbert his fete yesterday, as he sat in my study with Mr Kelly and me: whether it were any Illusion, or the act of any seducer?

Me: No wicked powre shall enter into this place.⁶⁰ Neyther shall Iniquitie range where the fyre of his percing Judgment and election⁶¹ doth light, which shall quicken his deadness, and revive his courage to the auancement of the name of him, which liueth now. He chose with fire and lightened theyr harts, and they immediately understode and felt the Illumination of his glory.⁶²

What wilt thou?

Δ:

To the performance of the glorie and encreasing of his name, which shortly maketh an ende with for euer.

Δ: This phrase, for euer, is somewhat dark.

Me: With this world, for euer. Δ: This giveth some light.

EK: The stone is become very dark.

Me: As the Buylding is grownded and ended uppon Three, So must the mysteries hereof be practised With Three. The fowrth is the Boke, which, Lo, is here present.

Δ: Must Adrian Gilbert, be made priuie of these Mysteries?

Me: Thow hast sayde.⁶³

⁶⁰ NOTE.

⁶¹ Election.

⁶² The Apostles on Whitson Sunday.

⁶³ A. Gilbert may be made priuie, but he is not to be a Practiser.

Δ: May I note to your name any peculier Character or Syllable to distinguish your speches from ours or others?

Me: Medicina sum.⁶⁴

Δ: I may then use this syllable Me, to Note Medicina or Medicus Dei.⁶⁵

Me: Behold, these things, shall God bring to pass by his hands whose mynde he hath now newly set on fyre.⁶⁶ The corners and streights of the earth shall be measured to the depth: And strange shalbe the wonders that are Creeping into new worldes. Tyme shalbe altred, with the difference of day and night.⁶⁷ All things haue grown allmost to theyr fullness. But beware of Pride. We teache duty, Humbleness, and submission. Shortly shall these things come to passe.

Δ: Than, this Adrian Gilbert shall cary the name of Jesus among the Infidells to the great glory of god, and the recouery of those miserable people from the mowth of hell into which, for many hunderd yeres past, and yet contynually they do fall, &c.

Me: Who made thy mowth to prophecy? or, who* [Of God] opened the eyes of thy understanding? Who annoynted thy Jaws, or fed thee with unknown meate. Euen he* it is, that pricked these things forward, and shall use you as his Instruments to a mightie honor.

Δ: May we require description⁶⁸ of the Cuntries, for his better instruction, &c.

Me: Let darknes go behinde thee, and tempt him not, that iudgeth.⁶⁹ These things belong not to my charge. Thow knowest them, which are

⁶⁴ Medicina sum: "I am the medicine." -Ed.

⁶⁵ Medicina or Medicus Dei: "God's medicine or doctor." -Ed.

⁶⁶ A Gilbert, his task.

⁶⁷ Note, a prophesy.

⁶⁸ Description geographicall.

⁶⁹ Tenebrae post dorsum. -Δ ("Darkness behind the back." -Ed.)

sufficient,⁷⁰ whan short time shall serue, for the whole instruction.⁷¹ Greater nede were to enquire How or by what meanes thow mayst be made worthy;⁷² and, so, consequently, haue knowledge for the know-ing, hauing and using of this cælestiall medicine.

Forget not.

I instructed thee before-hand, and told thee, that both of you must iointly⁷³ lerne those holy letters (For, so, I may boldly call them) in memory: with theyr names: to the intent, that the finger may point to the hed, and the hed to the understanding of his charge:

Δ: You perceyue that I haue diuerse affayres which at this present do withdraw me from peculier diligence using to these Characters and theyr names lerning by hart: And therfore I trust, I shall not offend, if I bestow all the convenient leysor⁷⁴ that I shall get, abowt the lerning hereof.

Me: Peace, Thow talkest, as thowgh, thow understodest not. We know thee, we see thee in thy hart: Nor one thing shall not let an other. For short is the time, that shall bring these things to profe: Wherein he that liueth, shall approve him self aliue.⁷⁵ Beautifull are the footesteps of his comming, and great is the reuenge of the wicked.

O Liber, Liber, Liber, bonis vita, malis vero mors ipsa. Magna sunt mirabilia in te inclusa: et magnum est nomen Sigilli tui

Lumen Medicinæ meæ, vobis.⁷⁶

⁷⁰ For discoveries making of the seas and theyr bownds.

⁷¹ Instruction requisite.

⁷² Note.

⁷³ Both ioyntly EK and J:D:

⁷⁴ Leysor: "leisure." -Ed.

⁷⁵ God will shew himself aliue.

⁷⁶ O liber . . . vobis: "O book, book, book, life to the good, but truly death itself for the wicked. Great are the wonders sealed up inside you, and great is the name of your seal. The light of my medicine, for you." -Ed.

EK: He holdeth his hands abroad. He draweth the Curten.

Δ: Gloria Laus et honor Deo patri et F. et SS.⁷⁷ Amen.

Martij 28. Thursday morning. Mawndy Thursday.

A voyce: Pereant omnes qui insidiantur⁷⁸ virtuti nominis mei: et qui Lumen absconderunt Iustitia mea.⁷⁹

EK: Now the veale is pluckt away.

Three appeare, as before time.

All three sayd,—Multa nos, quia multa patitur ipem.⁸⁰

EK: The two go away, and the Third remayneth who is like in all points to him, who yesterday to me alone, in your absence had declared himself to be an Illuder. Δ: NOTE, for the better understanding of this dayes Act it may be remembred that E. Kelly, while I, (John Dee) was at London, yesterday (being wensday) had used meanes to haue conference, with the good Creatures, with whome we haue dealing iointly: and that there appeared one very like unto our good frende, who toke upon him to be the same, and now semed to be constrayned⁸¹ by EK to tell the truth: and therfore his outward beautifull apparell semed to go of, and his body appered hery and he confessed that he was an Illuder⁸² &c. Whereuppon EK was in a great perplexitie of mynde, and was

⁷⁷ Gloria Laus et honor Deo p<at>ri et F<ilio> et S<piritui> S<ancto>: “Glory, praise, and honor to God the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit.” -Ed.

⁷⁸ Insidiatores. -Δ. (“Traitors.” -Ed.)

⁷⁹ Pereant . . . mea: “May everyone perish who betray the virtue of my name: and who have hidden the light of my justice.” -Ed.

⁸⁰ Multa . . . ipem: “Reprove us, because he himself suffers much.” -Ed.

⁸¹ Constrayned: “forced.” -Ed.

⁸² Pilosus. -Δ (“Hairy.” -Ed.)

ready to haue gone his way. And at my comming home told me a long processe of this Tragicall Act. But I comforted him, and wold not yeld to his opinion, But did declare my confidence in the goodnes of God: for that we craved at his hands, things good and necessarie: and that therefore he wold not giue his childern a stone for bred, or a scorpion for nedefull food required &c.⁸³ And this morning the matter was propounded by me, and thereuppon the former sayings wer used, and all the consequences of matter, which hereafter is recorded.

Δ: The veritie I require of yesterdays doings with EK on my absence.

Camikas zure, he sayd, holding his hands to heuen.

EK: He walketh up and down and semeth angry: and did beat his hands together. There commeth a little streame of fire whitish from aboue: and cam to his hed. He kneleth down before the Chayre, and loketh up, and sayde,

Me: Oh how brittle are the works of thy hands [he looked up] whose Imperfections are now more innumerable then the sands of the sea: or clowds that were lifted up since the begynning of the world. Darknes dare presume to place him self in Lightnes: yea dishonor, (o God) to dwell in place of glory: His lying lipps presume against Truth: whilest thou suffredst his old and withered face to be garnished with thy beawty. Heaviness⁸⁴ is his seat; yet are his lipps myrthfull: and little there that separateth him from the dignitie of honor: But his ponishment is sufficient, his dishonor unspeakable, and his damnation for euer: which how bitter it is, great and unspeakable, Thow, ô thow (I say) that liuest (which hast estranged him so far from thy glory) makest onely manifest. But yet how long shall the sonnes of men puff up them selues with bragging and boasting of that they see not? But (alas) All

⁸³ See. Matthew 7:9; Luke 11:11–12. -Ed.

⁸⁴ Heaviness: "sorrow." -Ed.

things are confownded, and are contrary to thy commaundements: some onely which differ, remayn with concordant myndes praying thee, and lifting up thy name, as much as strength performeth. But herein is thy glory and long sufferance manifest, in that thou dost not onely with greif behold theyr synnes, but like a iust iudge, fauorably doth ponder the greatnes of theyr enemies, which infect theyr myndes, and blynde the light, which thou hast given unto theyr understanding, with inflammations bodyly, instigations worldly, and tentations innumerable. Great therfore and most great, and none greater can be, which deridest the Aduersarie, and healest the weak: whose smallnes of habilitie thou canst augment, wherein the mysteries of thy great glorie and might, is manifest. Thy seal yeld prayses, with incessant and dutifull obedience. Thy name be magnified, thy mercy published to thy glory: Holy Holy, yea great and most holy, is thy euerlasting kindenes for euer.

EK: Now he standeth up, and sayd,

Me: As I haue all ready told,⁸⁵ from whome I cam, so haue I not hydden, what I am, or what message I bring; why it is sent, it is allso written. How long shall I perswade to stedfastnes? But the greater your measures are the greater shalbe the quantitie. These afflictions are necessary. For herin is a measure to distinguish⁸⁶ from falshode, light from darknes, and honor from dishonor. The more they are like us, or shew them selues so, (for, nothing can be more dislike) the more they are Judges of theyr own damnation. Yea, if his strength had byn great, he wold haue deuoured thy sowle. [Loking to EK.] But whome God hath chosen, shall none overturne. Brag not: eyther Credyt my words by thyne owne reason. But Consider that diuerse may be dishonored, yea though they be in honor: yet shallt not thow neyther be ouerturned

⁸⁵ Raphaëlis officium. -Δ. ("Raphael's office." -Ed.)

⁸⁶ Fortè, truth.

with the one wynde nor the other: though the afflictions that shall follow thee, be great and hard.⁸⁷ In my words are no error: neyther haue you fownd my lipps untrue. Whan I kneeled, I spake for you. But I haue promised that No unclean thing shall prevayle within this place. Neyther am I a revenging spirit nor of any such office. I quicken the dead, revive them that are falln and cure or sow up the wowndes, which they are permitted to work uppon man, as tokens of God his Iustice.

I call the same god, (whome I haue called before) to recorde, that these words are true, my sayings iust, and his mercies more perfect. Whilest heven endureth and earth lasteth, never shall be razed out the Memorie of these Actions.⁸⁸ Use Humilitie: Reioyce whan the enemy is discomforted in his traynes,⁸⁹ and inventions: A ponishment so great, Et cætera. Whan I yoked your feathers⁹⁰ to gither, I ioyned them not for a while. Your flying is to be considered in quantitie, qualitie and Relation.

Thank God: Be mercifull: forget your synnes: and prepare your selues, For great and wonderfull is the immediate powre of him that illuminateth from aboue. It shall light apon you: For those that are present with him, liued with him, eat and drank with him, [and] were instructed by him, Were but hearers onely: At length God was glorified, in one instant all things browght unto theyr remembrance: yea some of them taken to behold the heavens, and the earthly glory. I haue sayd.

Δ:

Me: Behold. Veniat vindictum dei, et percutiat linguam mentientem.⁹¹

⁸⁷ Afflictions to EK.

⁸⁸ Note the durance of these Memorialls.

⁸⁹ Traynes: deceits. -Ed.

⁹⁰ Note of the vision which was shewed A^o. 1582.

⁹¹ Veniat . . . mentientem: "May the vengeance of God come, and may it may smite the lying tongue." -Ed.

EK: He goeth his waye and taketh all with him, Table, Chayre, and Curten and all. There cam in a great many with flaming swords, and bring in the wicked spirit, who yesterday delt so diuillishly with EK. One of them holding him by the arme, sayde, Speak now for your self, you could speak yesterday. They all drew theyr swords: they sknorked fire. And there seamed a water to com in, but it went away again.

A voyce:—Dicat, nam nrm non est.⁹²

EK: Now is the Skroll with the Characters browght in, which was fownd by spirituall direction this month, the 12 day, abowt 10½ after none by Mr Kelly and Master Husy.⁹³ He semeth now as like our good frende, as may be. Our frende cam with a sponge and annoynted the wicked spirit his lipps.

A voyce:—Els could I not speak.

Δ: Seing now thow canst speak, answer me.

The wicked, sayd:—Ask quickly.

Δ: What is thy Name?—The wicked answered, Gargat.

Δ: What is the sentence of that skroll?— Gar: I know not.

Δ: In the name of Jesus, I charge thee to tell me the truth as concerning That roll here shewed.—Gar: I haue cownterfeted this roll, and browght it: for it is not the true roll.⁹⁴

Δ: After many words betwene him and me, and the more, bycause he denied that he knew of any Glorie belonging to God, I urged him so, at length with short and euident argument, that he answered, he must confess the powre and glorie of god: and sayd, that he was damned for euer: and did wish damnation to me. And I requested God to use his Justice on him, for the glory of his name. Then he entreated me somwhile, and somwhile derided me, saying, Art thow so lusty? &c.

⁹² Dicat . . . non est: "He may speak, for he is not one of us." -Ed.

⁹³ The finding of the skroll, of the Treasures.


⁹⁴ Cownterfeted Roll. -Δ. Vide infra pag. 152, 153 &c. -E.A.

Δ: All the Cumpany fell on him, and hewed him in peces: and digged a hole in the earth, with theyr swords, and he fell in, and after that was a myghty roaring hard.

A voyce:—Sic soleo iniustis.⁹⁵

Δ: The Cumpany went away. There cam a fire and seamed to burn all the howse.

A voyce:—Purifica Domine sanctum tuum, et dele iniquitatem inimicorum nostrorum.⁹⁶

Δ: Then returned our frende, , and all seemed light and bright agayn: likewise all the furniture, of Table, Chayre, Globe in the chayre covered with a red covering &c.

Me: Visio vera, verè denotatur. Denotetur etiam ad gloriam Dei.⁹⁷

 Δ: Master Kelly, is your dowl of the spirit, now taken away?

EK: Ye truely, I beseeche God to forgive me.

Me: Dixisti, et factum.⁹⁸

Δ: As concerning Adrian Gilbert, there might be some dowte in common externall Judgment, of his aptnes to the performance of the voyage with the appertenances, But the Secret of God his prouidence, I will not meddle withall: for he can make infants speak, and the dum to shew furth his glory &c.

Me: Yf God be mighty, acknowledge his powre. Who made the Sonne of nothing? or man, so brittle a substance? Nature thrusteth up her sholders amongst trees and herbs, like a ientle fyre: In beasts and all the creatures of the feelde, waters, and earth, in a palpable imagination: Amongst the sonns of men, she auanceth her self, wholly in

⁹⁵ Sic soleo iniustis: "So I am accustomed to unrighteous people." -Ed.

⁹⁶ Purificata . . . nostrorum: "Cleanse, O Lord, your holy one, and destroy the wickness of our enemies." -Ed.

⁹⁷ Write. -Δ. Visio . . . Dei: "The true vision is truly noted, and it will be noted for the glory of God." -Ed.

⁹⁸ Dixisti, et factum: "I have spoken, and it is so." -Ed.

the light of understanding. In all these she walketh by her own qualitie, mixing the quantities, with her before iudged proportion. Amongst all these is some distinction, yet all in theyr kindes are perfectly and substantially norrishd. Yf Nature haue such powre, What powre hath our God, and how great is his might in those in whome He kindleth a sowle, understanding. The strength of 1. body, and 2. inward man, with 3. the strength of him that allso leadeth him,⁹⁹ are augmented and diminished at his pleasure. Yf earth, in myxture become fyre, hom much more shall he encrease, whome God hath strengthened: yf he wold haue conquered with thowsands, he wold not haue sent back the dogged harted people. Yf riches or renown were his felicitie, he wold haue kindled the twelue Lamps¹⁰⁰ of his æternall light, on a higher mowntayne: But he chose them in the Valleys, and from the watering places. I think this be sufficient to confirme your understanding.

Δ: I trust, God be not offended with this matter propownded &c.

Me: He is pleased: And it is enowgh. Eternitie is mighty and glorious to the righteous.

Δ: Whan shall I make him¹⁰¹ priuie of these things?

Me: Whan thou wilt. For euery thing is acceptable with those that are accepted. See thow cownsayle him, and be his Father.

Δ: As concerning John Daus,¹⁰² we are to ax somewhat &c.

Me: John Daus, is not of my Kalender. Lern of them, of whome

⁹⁹ Δ Note Body, sowle, spirit.

¹⁰⁰ The 12 Apostles.

¹⁰¹ A. G.

¹⁰² John Davis is mentioned in Dee's diary as early as 1577, but Dee probably knew him as a boy. He was evidently one of Dee's pupils, and one of the principal players in the search for the Northwest Passage. He stole at least seventy books from Dee's library after Dee left for Europe in 1583. See Julian Roberts and Andrew Watson, *John Dee's Library Catalogue* (London: The Bibliographical Society, 1990), p. 50.

it is necessary. Be not negligent, in lerning the things before prescribed.¹⁰³

God be emongst you.

EK: He hath drawn the curten of red.

Δ: Soli Deo sit omnis honor et gloria.¹⁰⁴ Amen.

Mawndy Thursday, after None. hor 3½

Δ: The Veale being drawn away after a quarter of an howre (almost) after the first motion made by me. Three cam in, and made obedience to the chayre. Two went away, and the third remayned there, as before.

Δ: As concerning the Kalender to be reformed, I am grieved that her Maiestie will not reforme it in the best termes of veritie.¹⁰⁵ And as for the priuiledge for Mr Adrian Gilbert his voyage, I think not well of it, that Royalties shold not be graunted. Therfore both these points, respecting her Maiestie, I wold gladly haue cownsayle, such as in the Judgment of the highest might be most for my behofe, to follow.

Me: In one gouernment there are sundry principall partes: Euery part in subdiuision conteyneth many and sundry offices. Many Offices

¹⁰³ Lern the Alfabet.

¹⁰⁴ Soli . . . gloria: "May all honor and glory be to God alone." -Ed.

¹⁰⁵ The reformation of the Kalendar. -Δ. On 24 February 1582, Pope Gregory XIII ordered the use of the "Gregorian" calendar, and the English court deliberated over its response. Dee was one of the authorities commissioned for a report. According to his diary, Dee delivered his proposal to reform the calendar to Lord Burghley, Treasurer of England on 26 February 1583. It caused considerable controversy. The court opinions were all favorable, and the Queen approved a draft proclamation to adopt the reform, but it was rejected by the bishops because they didn't want to appear to be following the Catholic lead. -Ed.

require many disposers: yet hath euery disposition continually some partition in his qualitie. All things, one thing: And one thing, something: some thing, many things, and many things, most innumerable. The heuens in proportion are gouerned universally of a few; particularly of many: eche place possesseth his diuision: and euery thing diuided, his propertie. Princis ar governors which move and stir them up to work, as it is provided, and to behold in speculation How euery particular Action, shall haue due, perfect, and appropriated Locall being, motion and Condition. Subiects, (yea, the Highest) are stirred up, by theyr propre Angels:¹⁰⁶ The inferior sort do follow the disposition of theyr leaders. Vertue and Vice dwell euery where. Light and darknes, are allwayes intermedled.

Consider, How I speak it.

The myndes of all that move, euen unto the least qualitie in Nature, haue of them selues propre vertues: and therefore propre Instigators.¹⁰⁷ I call to memory thy words, the manner of thy speche, and the secret purpose or meaning, whereunto it is uttred. I see thy Infirmities, and know what thow desyrest. But mark me, whom God commonly choseth,¹⁰⁸ shalbe whom the Princis of the Erth do disdayn. Consider, how the prophet that slew that Monstrous Gyant, had his election.¹⁰⁹

God respecteth not princis, particularly, so much as the state of his whole people. For in Princis mowthes, is there poyson, as well as proverbs. And in one hart, more Synne, then a whole world can con-teyn. Yt is not myne office to meddle with theyr vanities, neyther is it a part of my pageant to towch any thing that tasteth not of Medicine. But, what? doth thy mynde reply? Dost thow think, that my cownsayle

¹⁰⁶ Angeli proprii. -Δ ("Proper angels." -Ed.)

¹⁰⁷ Peculier and propre Instigators.

¹⁰⁸ God his Elect.

¹⁰⁹ The reference is to David and Goliath. -Ed.

herin, to a grieved mynde, is, (thowgh it can be) Medicinall? Peradventure¹¹⁰ thow thinkest I am not, [in] thy marrow: yes I haue byn long in the highest part of thy body,¹¹¹ and therfore ame something perswaded of thy meaning.

Δ: In dede, I thowght that your good Cownsaile, was or might be a remedie and a medicine to my afflicted mynde, for this unseamely doing, in the two former points expressed.

Me: Behold, where unto thy earthly man wold seduce thee. Dost thow think, that if it pleas god, it shall not please the Prince? if it be necessarie, all ready prepared?

Secretum dico.¹¹²

For all things are Limited, with a full measuration, and unserchable foresight: yea, I say, all ready, unto the ende. Be not discomforted. Quayle not at the blast of a small tempest: For those that speak thee fayre,¹¹³ haue dissembling harts, and priuilie do they shote at thee, with arrows of reproche. Whan they¹¹⁴ shall haue nede of thee: I meane, of the help of God, throwgh thee, (some shut up, some entangled, some gadding¹¹⁵ like masterles Doggs,) Than shall they gladly seke thee and desire to finde thee. They shall smell oute thy fote steps, and thow shalt not see them. The key of theyr Cares shalt thow be Master of: And they them selues shall not unlok theyr own grievousness. Yea they shall say, Oh let the earth devowr us. But I am to long. I

¹¹⁰ Peradventure: "perhaps." -Ed.

¹¹¹ Δ: Raphael long tyme visiting my hed.

¹¹² A secret. -Δ. Secretum dico: "I declare a secret." -Ed.

¹¹³ Lingua dolosa. -Δ ("Deceitful speech." -Ed.)

¹¹⁴ England.

¹¹⁵ Gadding: "wandering." -Ed.

answer thee, all though it be not my office,¹¹⁶ to declare that thou desirest: yet for that thou desirest my Medicine. I say, Thou shalt preuayle agaynst them,¹¹⁷ yea euen agaynst the Mightiest. As thou wilt, so shall it be in God his blessings.

Beware of Vayne glory. Use few wordes.

Thy weapons, are small, But thy Conquest shalbe great. Lo. Doth this satisfy thee? Haue a firme faith. It is the greatest lesson. Be it unto thee as thou hast deliuered. One thing, I answer thee, for all Officis. Thou hast in Subiection all Offices. Use them when it pleas thee, And as thy Instruction hath byn.

I haue sayde.

Δ: As things be planted here, for preparation of Table, Sigillum Dei &c, which things are not portable with eas: So, bycause I think, that some seruices to be done in gods purposes by me, will require other places than this howse, so shall diuerse my practises haue (as I think) a more compendious manner, and redy, to be executed in any place &c.

Me: Truely thou hast sayd, and so shall it fall unto thee. As I am here in this place, and yet in dede not, So, here: So shall it fall oute, and follow in the Mysteries of your Associated Operation.

The other¹¹⁸ shall be, but, as a necessary help to the first Practises, to plant the Tree: which being confirmed and strongly rooted shall bring furth frute, most abundantly.¹¹⁹ The Erth and the tree, can not be separated. This is the ende, and true it is. Let him be record, whom I beare record of here,

¹¹⁶ Note, each in his Office.

¹¹⁷ Præualescentia. -Δ ("Prevailing against." -Ed.)

¹¹⁸ Δ: and EK, and A. Gilbert.

¹¹⁹ The erth — 1. EK
The Tree — 2. Δ
The planter — 3. AG

And so, with thee, Amen.

I must help thee. Lerne ioyntly the Elements or grownds of this heuenly doctrine;¹²⁰ the ende and Consummation of all thy desired thirst: in the which God shall performe thee, thy Philosophicall Harmonie in prayer.¹²¹ Thow knowest what I mean.

The Æternall physitian minister his heuenly grace and continuall blessings uppon you, to the Glorie of his name, execution of your proceedings, and holy and insatiable desires.

Δ: Amen: Omnipotenti Deo, nostro,
 Creatori Redemptori et
 Santificatori, omnis honor
 laus et gratiarum actio.¹²²
 Amen.

Jesus.

On good friday; After None


Δ: There was a savor of fire felt by EK. There semed one with a sword, suddenly to thrust out of the stone at EK his hed. Whereat he started; and sayd he felt a thing (immediately) creeping within his hed, and in that pang becam all in a sweat. And he remayned much misliking the

¹²⁰ Note Lerne The Alfabet.

¹²¹ Δ Philosophicall Harmonie in prayer, is ment by the prayer which I dayly use, & often: Deus in a m i n d a m f G P e F e S &c. -Δ. Apparently “Deus in adiutorium meum intende: Domine ad adiuuandem me festina: Gloria Patri et Filio et Spiritui Sancto” (“O God, be pleased to deliver me; O Lord, hasten to help me. Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit”), based on Psalm 70. Compare with Dee's prayer at the beginning of Liber 1. -Ed.

¹²² Omnipotenti . . . actio: “All honor, praise, and thanksgiving be to our almighty God, creator, redeemer, and sanctifier.” -Ed.

moving and creeping of the thing in his hed. At a quarter of an howre ende it cam to one place: and so ceased somewhat: & then the Curten was drawn away: and there appeared the Table, and the chayre covered. Then cam three, two went away and the one remayned: as before was used.

EK held the paper of the letters in his hand: and  Me bad him put it out of his hand.

Me: The taste of this mercifull potion, yea the savour onely of the vessell worketh most extremely agaynst the maymed drowsines of ignorance. Yf the hand be heavy, how weighty and ponderous shall the whole world be? What will ye?

Δ: This he sayd uppon our silence after his former words. I answered, we desyred to lerne the Mysteries of the boke. The Boke now appeared (the cover of the chayre being taken away) the boke lying uppon a rownd thing: which EK, was not yet able to discern what it is.

The first side of the first leaffe of the boke appeared full of the former letters, euery side hauing 49 tymes 49 square places, with letters: some more then other.

Me: Euery side conteyneth 2400 and one od letter.¹²³

EK: All the letters semed to be of bluddy cullor, and wet. The lines betwene the squares, semed to be like a shaddow. In the first square were 7 letters.

Me: Say after me: But pray first, ere you begynne. Δ: We prayed.

EK: All became blak as pych in the boke.

Then it becam light agayne.

¹²³ 49

49

441

196

2401



Now he pointeth up, with his rod of gold diuided into 3 equal parts, which rod he toke from under the Table.

Me: 1. { Keph van [He lifted his face to heven.]
Don graph fam veh na

EK: Now he kneleth down; and holdeth up his hands:
The letters of the first square, ar 7.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1

Now he pointeth to the second.

2. Med gal [EK: He turneth him self abowt.]

3. un gal un Mals na.

Me: Twise seven, Thre and All one: and his mercy endureth for euer.

4. Tal un vrh.
5. Fam graph Fam.
6. Ged graph drux med.
7. un van.
8. Tal un don ur un drux. Sownded as δρυξ
9. Med.
10. Tal van fam mals un.
11. un ged gon med gal.
12. Mals un drux.
13. Ged un.
14. Fam graph fam.
15. ged un tal mals graph gal un keph
16. veh un mals veh drux graph na [capcneh]
17. ged med.
18. med gal.
19. Fam graph tal graph ur un pa van ged graph drux
20. Gal med tal drux un.
21. mals na gon un tal
22. ged un
23. van un drux veh don un drux.¹²⁴
24. Van don graph mals don graph fam

EK: Now he seemeth to wepe, and knock his brest. He pointeth with the rod, up, agayn, and sayd,

25. un gal graph mals gal
26. un keph graph
27. Gal don van keph
28. Gisg un don gal graph tal un na.

¹²⁴ 100.

29. van un
30. veh graph fam gisg fam
31. ged don un mals un gal. He stayed here a good while.
32. fam graph gal
33. van drux pa un don
34. gal med tal gon med urh
35. un gal graph mals med un gal
39. 38.37.36. veh na graph van un veh na / Tal un na / Med fam
fam na graph / gal un mals na /
40. med drux gon keph gal un don. This is a word.
41. mals un drux ged graph mals na gon.

EK: Now he walked up and down before the chayre: and cam agayn and pointed. The letters now following seme to be written with Clay.

42. Med gal un tal na
43. ged graph tal graph gal fam un ur: eight letters¹²⁵
44. un
45. gal gon drux med keph un
46. na med pal mals med don. Now he walketh agayn, and loketh upward.

Then he pointed agayn.

47. Un gal mals van drux
48. Gal un don
49. ged un don tal graph fam: He walked betwene the shewing of tal and graph. There are six letters in that word.

Me: Say after me (Shall I speak the Mysteries of thy glory, which thow hast secreted from the Inhabitants uppon the erth? Yea lord, it is thy will, whose hed is high, and fete euery where, redy to revenge the blud of Innocents, and to call home the lost shepe.)

Say after me,

1. zuresk¹²⁶ od adaph mal zez¹²⁷ geno au marlan oh muzpa agiod pan ga zez¹²⁸ gamphedax¹²⁹ Kapene¹³⁰ go[le] od Semelábugen donkna¹³¹ fian¹³² ga vankran vrepres¹³³ ádeph¹³⁴ arxe¹³⁵ drux¹³⁶ Tardemah va tzests¹³⁷ grapad. zed unba¹³⁸ domiól ade-póad chieuak mah oshe daph Onixdar¹³⁹ pangapi adamh gemedsol a dinoxa hoxpor adpun dar garmes.¹⁴⁰

Me: I teache. Let this lesson instruct thee to read all that shalbe gathered out of this boke hereafter. It is not to be

¹²⁶ Zuresch. Veresk and Zuresk are all one. Δ Perchaunce Zuresch, with ch, for k, and so the word shalbe of 7 letters.

¹²⁷ Ses: the letters giue.

¹²⁸ Ses.

¹²⁹ Gampedaz.

¹³⁰ Kaphene.

¹³¹ Domka.

¹³² Phiam

¹³³ Vrepres

¹³⁴ Adepd.

¹³⁵ Aze.

¹³⁶ Druz.

¹³⁷ Keztz/cests.

¹³⁸ Unbar.

¹³⁹ Onizdar.

¹⁴⁰ Gharmes.

spoken,¹⁴¹ but in the time of his own time. It shalbe sufficient to instruct thee: Fare well.

EK: Now he couereth the boke with the veale.

Δ: Prayses and Thankes be rendred to god, of us his sely¹⁴² ones, now and euer. Amen.

Δ: Note. All the former letters and words in the squares, were onely in the first or upper row, begynning at the right hand, and so going orderly to the left. And secondly Note that this lesson he red, pointing with his rod orderly uppon the same forsaid first row.

Martij 31. Easter day after none about 4.

EK hard first a sownd of Musicall harmonie.

Δ: The Veale was pluckt away.

Three cam in, two went away, as was before accustomed.

EK: Now he lyeth down. He riseth and pulleth the veale from the chayre. That veale was of cullor as a raynbow. The boke appeared playne and evidently on the globe in the chayre. EK felt the thing ronne in his hed as the other day it did. Me taketh out the rod from under the Table: He sayd,

Æternitas in Cælo.

Δ: Uppon my staying from speche, he sayd, What wilt thou?

Δ: The proceding instruction necessary for understanding of the boke.

¹⁴¹ Δ It is not to be spoken or interpreted, but whan the time appointed is come.

¹⁴² Sely: "pitiable." -Ed.

Me: Mensuratur.¹⁴³ Δ: He putteth up his rod to the boke.

Me: Sint oculi illorum clari, ut intelligant.¹⁴⁴ [He held up his hands and semed to pray.] He pointed now to the second row of the 49 rows of the first page of the boke, and sayd,

Secundus a primo.¹⁴⁵

1. Gon na graph na van fam veh na [Now he walketh up and down.]
2. Ged don med drux na un gal med Keph [He walketh agayn.]
3. Un don gal graph drux [He walked agayn.]
4. med
5. drux un [He walked.]
6. ged graph tal mals [He walketh.] un ur med. [7 letters.]
7. med gon veh un fam tal un drux
8. van un drux gal don graph fam
9. med don gal un
10. van graph van graph gon un na
11. drux med fam
12. mals ur gon ged drux un mals na graph
13. Keph un tal mals med drux med drux
14. un drux graph mals na
15. med mals na graph ~~veh~~ gal [Here, veh or gal is indifferent.]
16. un
17. Tal graph gal med ~~[Keph]~~ [or rather] pal [So it shalbe better understode.¹⁴⁶]
18. Tal un don van drux graph

¹⁴³ Mensurator: "It is measured." -Ed.

¹⁴⁴ Sint . . . intelligant: "May those eyes be clear, in order to comprehend." -Ed.

¹⁴⁵ Secundus a primo: "The second from the first." -Ed.

¹⁴⁶ Note this diuersity of sownd and writing: as x for z.

19. ged graph drux un
20. mals don graph fam [Now he walketh.]
21. drux med
22. gal un fam tal un gisg
23. van med don gisg fam
24. tal un drux ged graph gisg [So it is.]
25. un

gal graph van drux graph

26. gal un tal mals na
27. drux un pal gisg
28. med fam
29. van un drux gal graph tal na drux un pal un gisg [12 letters.]
30. med don med mals na un fam
31. van med don
32. tal gon drux med gal un ur
33. un tal van gal un fam
34. ged graph don
35. mals un
36. med
37. gal un pal keph van tal
38. pa un drux veh graph fam
39. med don gal un drux [Now he maketh low obeysance to the chayreward.]
40. Mals un Incomprehensibilis es in æternitate tua.¹⁴⁷
41. Mals don graph fam
42. van tal pa ur med fam gal un
43. van med don pal
44. drux un gal med drux

¹⁴⁷ Incomprehensibilis . . . tua: "You are incomprehensible in your eternity." -Ed.

45. mals un gisg don med mals na graph fam.
46. van drux gal graph fam.
47. un gal med drux.
48. ged un drux graph pa drux¹⁴⁸ fam.
49. gon na graph na van gal keph

Me: Shall I rede it? Δ: We pray you.

2. Ihehusch Gronadox¹⁴⁹ arden, o na gémpalo micasman¹⁵⁰ vanderes orda beuegiah¹⁵¹ noz¹⁵² plígnase zampónon aneph¹⁵³ Ophad¹⁵⁴ a medox¹⁵⁵ marúne gena pras¹⁵⁶ no dasmat. Vorts manget a-deüne¹⁵⁷ damp. naxt os vandeminaxat.¹⁵⁸ Oróphas vor mínodal amúdas ger pa o daxzum banzes¹⁵⁹ ordan ma pres umblosda vorx nadon patróphes undes adon ganebus Ihehudz

Δ: Gehudz consisteth of 6 letters: But, Gon na graph na van gal keph, consisteth of 7. I wold gladly be resolved of that dowt if it pleas you.

EK: He boweth down, and put the rod away, and than Kneled down.

¹⁴⁸ Δ: Fortè, van. Axe this dowte.

¹⁴⁹ Gronhadoz.

¹⁵⁰ Oicasman.

¹⁵¹ Veueiah.

¹⁵² Nos.

¹⁵³ There is a stop.

¹⁵⁴ Ophed.

¹⁵⁵ Medoz.

¹⁵⁶ Pres.

¹⁵⁷ Δ: Note: A-deüne must be pronownced as one worde: like as Res-publica, in latin: els here wold seme to be 50 words but, A-deüne, cam out of one square.

¹⁵⁸ Vandemhnaxat.

¹⁵⁹ Bances.

Δ: He rose and axed me, What wilt thou?

Δ: The former question to be soluted. Me: Thow hast written fals: for, it must be Ihehudz, and so it is of 7 letters.

Δ: Yf euery side conteyne 49 rows, and euery row will require so much tyme to be receyued as this hath done it may seme that very long time will be requisite to this doctrine receyuing: But if it be gods good liking, we wold fayne haue some abridgment or compendious manner, wherby we might the soner be in the work of Gods service.

EK: The Chayre and the Table are snatched away,¹⁶⁰ and seme to fly toward heven. And nothing appeared in the stone at all: But was all transparent clere.

Δ: What this snatching away of Chayre and Table doth meane we know not: But if the Lord be offended with his yonglings, and Novices in thes Mysteries, for propownding or requiring a compendious Method &c, Then we are very sorry, and ax forgiveness for the rashnes of our lipps: and desyre his maiestie not to deale so rigorously with us: as thowgh we had sufficient wisdom or warning, to beware of such motions or requests making to his ministers. Let it not be so sayd of the holy one of Israel: but let his mercies abownd with us to his glorie. Amen.

EK: Now commeth all down agayn, as before.

Me: What are the Sonnes of men, that they put time in her own bosom? or measure a Judgment that is unsearchable?

Δ:

Me: I help thy imperfections: What, man thinketh wisdom, is error in our sight. But bicause my Nature is to cure, and set up those that fall, Thus much understand.

As I haue sayde: The 49 partes of this boke¹⁶¹ - 49 voyces,

¹⁶⁰ Δ Note and take hede from hence forward.

¹⁶¹ Of the boke.

Whereunto the so many powres, with theyr inferiors and subiects,¹⁶²
haue byn, are, and shalbe obedient.

Euery Element in this mysterie is a world of understanding. Euery one knoweth here what is his due obedience: and this shall differ thee in speche from a mortall creature.¹⁶³

Consider with thy self, How thou striuest against thyne own light, and shaddowest the windows of thyne own understanding.

I haue sayde: Be it unto thee, as God will. I am not a powre or whirlewynde that giueth occasion of offence.

Longe sumus a peruersitate destructionis.¹⁶⁴ Thus much I haue sayd, for thy reformation and understanding.

Δ:¹⁶⁵

Me: Lo, untill the Secrets of this boke be written, I come no more: neyther of me shall you haue any apparition. Yet, in powre, my office shall be here.¹⁶⁶

Say, what you here, for euery word shall be named unto you: it is somewhat a shorter way, and more according to your desyre.

Euery Element¹⁶⁷ hath 49 manner of understandings. Therin is comprehended so many languages.¹⁶⁸ They are all spoken at ones, and seuerally, by them selues, by distinction may be spoken. Untill thou come to the Citie, thou canst not behold the beawty thereof.

Nihil hic est, quod non est perfectum.¹⁶⁹

¹⁶² 49 Powres with theyr Inferiors, vide sup. 48 after a sort: and 1. vide Martij 24.

¹⁶³ Angelicall Language.

¹⁶⁴ Longe . . . destructionis: "We are far away from the perversity of destruction." -Ed.

¹⁶⁵ There are approximately three blank lines here. -Ed.

¹⁶⁶ Raphaël is to be absent for a certayn time: but his powre shall be here.

¹⁶⁷ Of the boke.

¹⁶⁸ Languages.

¹⁶⁹ Nihil . . . perfectum: "Nothing is here which is not perfect." -Ed.

I go. I haue sayde, (and it is true,) No unclean thing shall enter: Much less, then, here: For, it is the sight of whose Maiestie we tremble and quake at. He shall teache, of himself; for, we are not worthy.¹⁷⁰ What then, of your selues? But such is his great and singular fauor, that, he is of him self, and with those, whom he choseth.¹⁷¹ For, the ende of all things is at hand,¹⁷² and Powre must distinguish, or els nothing can prevayle. What you here, yea what thow feelest, by thy finger, Recorde; and seale sure. This is all, and in this is conteyned all, that comprehendeth all, The allmighty powre and profunditie of his glory.

What els?

As thow seest, and till he see, whose sight,¹⁷³ is the light of this his own powre, His might is great. The dew of his stedfastnes and glorious perfection hold up and rectify the weaknes of your fragilitie: Make you strong to the ende of his workmanship to whome I commit you.

EK: He plucketh the veale ouer all.

A voyce afterward:—Ne Ne Ne na Jabes.

Δ: Sanctus Sanctus Sanctus Dominus Deus Zebaoth: Pleni sunt cæli et terra gloria Maiestatis eius. Cui soli omnis honor, laus et gloria.¹⁷⁴

Amen.

¹⁷⁰ Δ Note, that we shalbe Theodidacti, of god him self and no Angel herein. -Δ. Theodidacti: "taught by God." -Ed.

¹⁷¹ Potentia. -Δ. ("Power." -Ed.)

¹⁷² The ende of all things is at hand.

¹⁷³ The sight of god.

¹⁷⁴ Sanctus . . . gloria: "Holy, holy, holy, Lord God of Hosts. Heaven and earth are filled with the glory of his majesty. To him alone is all honor, praise, and glory." -Ed.

1583 Aprilis 2. Tuesday. *Jesus + before none*

Δ: A noyce like a Thunder was first hard. The Chayre and Table appered. There appered fyre in the chayre, and burnt away the veale or covering therof. The cullor of the flame of the fire was as of Aqua vitæ burnt.

A voyce:—Sum.¹⁷⁵

EK: There goeth a clowd or smoke from the chayre, and covereth the Table. That smoke filled all the place.

A voyce:—Impleta sunt omnia gloria et honore tuo.¹⁷⁶

EK: All is become clere, saue the Table which remayned couered with the clowde still.



A great thunder began agayn, and the chayre remayned all in fire. Now the boke appeareth evidently, lying uppon the Globe in the chayre and the letters appered wet styll, as yf they were blud. There appered fire to be thrown oute of the stone, uppon EK.¹⁷⁷

The sownd of many voyces semed to pronownce this: Let all things prayse him and extoll his name for euer.

EK: The fire is still in the chayre, but so transparent, that the boke and letters therof may well be seen.

EK felt his hed as if it were on fire.

A voyce:—Sic soleo errores hominum purificare.¹⁷⁸

A voyce:—Say what you see.

EK: I see letters, as I saw before.

A voyce:—Moue not from your places;¹⁷⁹ for, this place is holy.

¹⁷⁵ Sum: "I am." -Ed.

¹⁷⁶ Impleta . . . tuo: "All things have been fulfilled to your glory and honor." -Ed.

¹⁷⁷ Note, fire.

¹⁷⁸ Sic . . . purificare: "So I am accustomed to cleansing the errors of the people." -Ed.

¹⁷⁹ Moue not from your places.

A voyce:—Read.—EK: I cannot.

Δ: You shold haue lerned the characters perfectly and theyr names, that you mowght now haue redyly named them to me as you shold see them. Then there flashed fire uppon EK agayne.¹⁸⁰

A voyce:—Say what thow thinkest. Δ: He sayd so to EK.

EK: My hed is all on fire.

A voyce:—What thow thinkest, euery word, that speak.

EK: I can read all, now, most perfectly: and in the Third row¹⁸¹ thus I see to be red,

3. Palce¹⁸² duxma ge na dem oh elóg da ved ge ma fedes o ned a tha lepah nes din. Ihehudéthá dan vangem onphe dabin oh nax palse ge dah maz gem fatesged oh mal dan gemph naha Lax ru lutúdah ages nagel osch. macom adeph a dosch ma handa.

EK: Now it thundreth agayn.

A voyce:—Ego sum qui in te. Mihi ergo qui Sum.

Δ: Non nobis domine non nobis, sed nomini tuo damus gloriam.¹⁸³

Δ: Then EK red the fowrth row, as followeth,

4. Pah o mata nax lasco vana ar von zimah la de de pah o gram nes ca pan amphan van zebog ahah dauez öl ga. van gedo oha ne daph aged onédon pan le ges ma gas axa nah alpod ne alida phar or ad gamésad argla nado oges.

Δ: Blessed be the name of the Highest, who giueth light and understanding.

¹⁸⁰ Fire agayn.

¹⁸¹ The Third row of the first page.

¹⁸² Palse/Palze. I dowt which of these 3 must serve: c,s,z.

¹⁸³ Ego sum . . . gloriam: "I am the one who is within you. Therefore I am the one who is for myself. Δ: Not for us, O Lord, not for us, but for your name may we give glory." -Ed.

EK: It thundreth agayn. All is covered.

A voyce:—Orate.¹⁸⁴

Δ: We prayed: and returning to the work agayn, the fire covered all still and EK hard voyces, singing (as a far of) very melodiously. Then all became euident agayn unto EK his perfect Judgment.

Δ: EK then red thus,¹⁸⁵

5. Mabeth ar mices¹⁸⁶ achaph pax mara geduth alídes orcánor manch¹⁸⁷ arseth. olontax ar geban vox portex ah pamo. agéma-ton buríse ganport. vdríos pasch. Machel len arvin zembuges. vox mara. gons Ihehusch dah pársodan maäh alsplan donglses adípr¹⁸⁸ agínot. archad¹⁸⁹ dons a dax van famlet a dex arge pa gens.

6. Van danzan oripat es vami gest ageff ormaténodah zálpala doniton pasdaes¹⁹⁰ gánpogan Undanpel adin achaph máradon oxámax anólphe dan ieh voxad mar vox ihedutharh aggs pal med lefe. IAN lefa dox parnix O droes¹⁹¹ marsíbleh aho dan adeph uloh iads ascleh da verox ans dalph che dampf lam achos.¹⁹²

¹⁸⁴ Orate: "Pray." -Ed.

¹⁸⁵ The fifth row.

¹⁸⁶ Pronownced mises.

¹⁸⁷ Mansh.

¹⁸⁸ Adíper. It is significatiue.

¹⁸⁹ Arkad.

¹⁹⁰ Pasdas.

¹⁹¹ Dros.

¹⁹² Akos.

EK: There is a great Thundring agayn.

Δ: It is the hand of the highest, who will get him honor by his own works.

EK: The Voyce and sownd of pleasantnes and reioycing was hard: and all was dark.

A small voyce:—Locus est hic sanctus.¹⁹³

An other voyce:—Sacer est a te Domine.¹⁹⁴

EK: All is now opened agayne.

Δ: Then EK, red thus,¹⁹⁵

7. Amídan gah¹⁹⁶ lesco van gedon amchih ax or madol cramsa ne dah vadgs lesgamph¹⁹⁷ ar: mara panosch aschedh or samhám-pors asco*. pacadabaah asto¹⁹⁸ a vdrios archads ors arni. pamphíca lan gebed druxarh fres adma. nah pamphes eä van-glor brisfog mahad. no poho a palgeh donla def archas NA Degel.

8. Vnaem¹⁹⁹ palugh agan drosad ger max fa lefe pandas mars langed undes mar. pachad odídos martíbah v'dramah noges gar. lenges argrasphe drulthe las aséraphos. gamled cam led caph Snicol lumrad v ma. pa granse paphres a drinox a demphe NA. geníle o danpha. NA ges a ne gaph a.

¹⁹³ Locus sanctus. -Δ. Locus est hic sanctus: "This place is holy." -Ed.

¹⁹⁴ Sacer est a te Domine: "It is consecrated to you, O Lord." -Ed.

¹⁹⁵ The Seventh row.

¹⁹⁶ Iah.

¹⁹⁷ Lesgomph.

¹⁹⁸ Asco, with a prick ouer the o, is to be pronownced as Asto.

¹⁹⁹ Vnam.

EK: The sownd of Melodie, begynneth agayne.

Δ: The fire cam from EK his eyes, and went into the stone againe. And then, he could not perceyue, or read one worde.²⁰⁰ The Fyre flashed very thick and all was couered with a veale.

Δ: Prayse we the lord, and extoll his name. For, his hand hath wrought wondrous works, for his owne glorie.

Amen.

Aprilis .3. Wensday, Forenone †

Δ: First the Curten was drawn away: and then all appeared on fire: The whole place all ouer. EK hard voyces, but could not discern any thing but the humming of them.

Δ: There cam fire agayn (out of the stone) uppon EK, all his body ouer.

EK: The fire so diminisheth it self that the boke may be perceyved.

A voyce:—Magnus Magnus Magnus.²⁰¹

An other voyce:—Locus sacer et acceptabilis Deo.²⁰²

EK feltt the fire to gather up into his hed. Shortly after he could read the boke, as he could do yesterday.

ᏍᏏᏏᏏ ᏎᏏᏏ

9. Vlla²⁰³ doh aco par semná gan var se gar on dun. sebo dax se pal genso vax necra par sesqui nat. axo nat sesqui ax²⁰⁴ olna

²⁰⁰ Note this Mysterie of god his powre drawn to him self agayne.

²⁰¹ Magnus Magnus Magnus: "Great, Great, Great." -Ed.

²⁰² Locus . . . Deo: "A place consecrated and acceptable to God." -Ed.

²⁰³ Of the first character of Vlla, I dowl.

²⁰⁴ Ex.

dam var gen vox nap vax. Vro²⁰⁵ varca cas nol undat vom
Sangef famsed oh. sih ádra gad gesco vansax ora gal parsa.

10. Varo. nab vbrah NA pa uotol ged ade pa cem²⁰⁶ na dax. van
sebrá dah oghe aschin o nap gem phe axo or. nec a ve da pengon
a moroh ah óha aspáh. niz ab vrdráh²⁰⁷ gohed²⁰⁸ a carnat dan
faxmal gamph. gamph nacro vax asclad caf prac crúscanse.²⁰⁹
-

11. gam. ohe gemph ubráh-ax.²¹⁰ orpna²¹¹ nex-or napo, gemlo. a
cheph²¹² can sedló pam-geman ange hanzu ALLA.²¹³ Cáppo-se
damo gam-vas oro-dax-vá ges-pálo palme pola.²¹⁴

EK: All these, (now red,) fall out and all the rows, before, likewise.

A voyce:—Prayse God.

Δ: We prayed. And after, was this shewed,²¹⁵

²⁰⁵ The V has an umlaut in the manuscript. -Ed.

²⁰⁶ Sem.

²⁰⁷ Vdráh.

²⁰⁸ Iohed. gohed, pronownced as Iohed, signifieth One euerlasting and all things
descending uppon one, and gohed Ascha is as much to say as One god.

²⁰⁹ Canse, signifieth mightie: and Cruscanse, more mightie.

²¹⁰ All these which haue lines under them [Here they are hyphenated. -Ed.] are eche
but one word of diuerse syllables: being 9 words of them.

²¹¹ The a produced.

²¹² The last h remissly sownded.

²¹³ This word is circled in the manuscript.

²¹⁴ Pola and Pala signifie two: Pola signifieth two together, and Pala signifieth two
separated.

²¹⁵ Δ This was a parcell of a row, which onely appered by him self.

Gals-ange no-témpe-ro sama dan genzé axe. falod amruh ácurtoh
saxx par mano gan vax no.²¹⁶ gramfa gem sadglá²¹⁷ loh vrox sappóh
iad ah oha unra.

Δ: Now appeared an other row.

12. Se²¹⁸ gors axol ma pa a oh la sabúlan. Caph ardox anpho nad
v'rnah ud ago lan vans.²¹⁹ v'xa grad órno dax palmes árisso dan
vnra. vánsample galse not zablís óphide ALLA loh. gaslah osson luzé
adaö max vanget or dámo ans. leóz dasch léöha dan se gla'spa neh.

All becam dark, and it thundred.

A voyce:—Prayse God.

Δ: We prayed.

Δ: Now appered three or fowr rows to gither. The boke seemed to
fly, as if it wold fly a peces (the fyre remaying) and to make a great
sturring in the place where it lay.

13. Amprí apx ard ardo argá²²⁰ argés argáh ax. osch nedo les icás.
han andam von ga lax man. nosch. dóngo a yntar cey²²¹ lude
asch úrise alpe gem var dancet.²²² nap alped v'rsbe temps a vod

²¹⁶ In margin, but later crossed out: Δ At 'no.', ende 49, and so here ar 10 over.

²¹⁷ "á" must be sownded long.

²¹⁸ This "se" is the nine and fortyth word longing to them before.

²¹⁹ Vns.

²²⁰ "A" long.

²²¹ Sey.

²²² Danset.


nos gema o ulon máncepax oxné pricos a gót. zalpa ne doxam
órne.²²³

14. Admag apa ascò²²⁴ tar. gans oärz am seph selqui quisben
alman. gons sa ieh mársibleh gron áscabb gamat. neý aden vðan
phand sempés nan narran al. cáno géme dansé álde nótes par-
célah arb ner ga lum pancu²²⁵ príscas ábra músce²²⁶ an nox.
napód²²⁷ a on dan sem ges asche²²⁸
-

EK: A sownd of many voyces, sayd, —Orate.²²⁹

15. Mica suráscha para te gámmes ádríos NA danos. vra lad pacad
ur gesme crus²³⁰ a prásep ed. a palse nax varno zum. zancú
asdom baged V'rmigar orch phaphes ustrá nox affod masco
gax cámlés vnsanba a oh la gras par quas. cónsaqual lat gem-
dax tantat ba vod. talpah ian.
-

16. Gescó²³¹ a taffom ges nat gam. pamphé ordáquaf cesto

²²³  this with a prick betokeneth “y.”

²²⁴ Pronownce “Asto.”

²²⁵ Pansu.

²²⁶ Musse

²²⁷ ó long.

²²⁸ Aske. E.K. understode the Language: and wold haue spoken somewhat, but he was willed to stay.

²²⁹ Orate: “Pray.” -Ed.

²³⁰ Pronownce as we do cruse a cup.

²³¹ ó long.

chídmap²³² mischná ia-ísg.²³³ iaiálphezudph a dancét²³⁴ vnban
 caf ránsembloh. daf-ma²³⁵ vp aschem graos²³⁶ chrámsa²³⁷ asco
 dah. vímna gen álde os papéam och láuan vnad. oh drosad
 údrios nagel panzo ab sescú. Vórge afcál²³⁸ vsloffda mórsab
 gaf²³⁹ ham de Peleh asca.

Δ: This went away, when it was read. It waxed dark.

A voyce:—Orate.²⁴⁰ Δ: We prayed.

EK: It beginneth to clere.

A voyce to EK:—Say.

17. Ar'tosa geme oh gálsagen²⁴¹ axa loph gebed adóp: zarcas vr
 vánta pas ámphe nóde alpan. nócas se ga ormácased lax naph
 talpt. pámphicas²⁴² sandam Voscméh iodh asclad ar. phan gas
 málse a quaz nam vngem vansel gembúgel a gembusez á-ro²⁴³
 tehl alts murt valtab báníffa faxed ar chlyfod

²³² Kidmap.

²³³ Sempiternall One and indiuisable God.

²³⁴ Dansét.

²³⁵ A very long.

²³⁶ Gras.

²³⁷ a reverent word, the first 'a' very long, and is, be it made with powre.

²³⁸ Ahal, iently, and the 'a' long.

²³⁹ "A" long.

²⁴⁰ Orate: "Pray." -Ed.

²⁴¹ The diuine powre creating the angel of the sonne.

²⁴² 4 manner of constructions in that one word.

²⁴³ A-ro is one word diuided, as res-publica, and here this word is diuided into two squares, and so there are 49.

18. A tam nat. glun asdeh ahlud gádre fam Shing la dan. guinsé²⁴⁴
life²⁴⁵ arilsar zabulan cheuách²⁴⁶ se. amph lesche andam var
 ges ar phex are.²⁴⁷ NA²⁴⁸ tax páchel lapídox ar da vax malcos.
 vna gra tassox varmára ud ga les vns ap se. ne da ox lat ges ar.

Now it waxeth dark. Δ: We must pray: (sayd I) and so we did. But
 EK prayed perfectly in this Angels language &c.

19. Asmo dahán pan casme co caph al oh.
 san ged a bansaa²⁴⁹ un adon a seb Ian.
 agláho dánfa zúna cap orcha²⁵⁰ dah os.
 fámsah ON naäb²⁵¹ ab nagah geha fastod.
 hansey om hauan lagra gem gas mal.
 parcóg²⁵² dax nedo va geda leb ar'ua ne cap sem²⁵³ carvan.

20. Onsem gelhóldim geb abníh ian.
 oxpha bas cappó cars órdriph grip gars.
 of víndres nah ges páhado vllónooh can vaz a.
 fam gisril ag nóhol sep gérba dot vánca NA.

²⁴⁴ E long.

²⁴⁵ Life lephe lurfando is a strong charge to the wicked to tell the truth: Δ This he
 sayd to my demand of this phrase wherof I had mention many yeres since.

²⁴⁶ A long.

²⁴⁷ Pronownce "ar."

²⁴⁸ NA - The name of the Trinitie, One separable for a while.

²⁴⁹ "A" long; onely one "a" sownded for "aa."

²⁵⁰ Orka.

²⁵¹ "ä" sounded as "au."

²⁵² The 'g' not expressly sownded.

²⁵³ In eius loco. ("In this place." -Ed.)

sem ah-pa²⁵⁴ nex ar-pah lad vamó iar séque.
 Vad ro garb. ah sem dan van ged ah paleu²⁵⁵

Now, the fire shot out of EK his eyes, into the stone, agayne. And by and by he understode nothing of all, neyther could reade any thing: nor remember what he had sayde. All became dark. Then was the curten drawne, and so we ended.

Δ: Gloria patri et filio et spiritui sancto
 nunc et semper.²⁵⁶
 Amen.

Aprilis .3. Wensday + After none hor 5¼

Δ: A prety while, the veale remayned ouer all: then it was taken away. First fire was thrown uppon EK out of the stone. Many voyces concordantly sayd, —Bonum est ô Deus, quia Bonitas ipa es.²⁵⁷

An other voyce:— Et magnum, quia tu magnitudo ipsius
 Magnitudinis.²⁵⁸

A voyce:— Ádgmach ádgmach ádgmach [= much
 glory]

A great voyce:— Sum, et sacer est hic locus.²⁵⁹

²⁵⁴ It is but one word.

²⁵⁵ Sownded, palef.

²⁵⁶ Gloria . . . semper: "Glory be to the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit now and forever." -Ed.

²⁵⁷ Bonum . . . es: "It is good, O God, for you are goodness itself." -Ed.

²⁵⁸ Et magnum . . . Magnitudinis: "And great because of the size of greatness itself." -Ed.

²⁵⁹ Sum . . . locus: "I am, and this place is, holy." -Ed.

A voyce:— Ádgmach ádgmach ádgmach húcacha.

Δ: Then EK read the row on this manner,

21. Padohómagebs²⁶⁰ galpz arps²⁶¹ apá nal Si. gámvagad al pódma
gan NA. vr cas nátmaz ándiglon ar'mbu.²⁶² zántclumbar ar
noxócharmah. Sapoh lan gamnox vxála vors. Sábse cap vax mar
vinco.²⁶³ Labandáho nas gampbox arce.²⁶⁴ dah gorhahálpstd
gascámpho²⁶⁵ lan ge. Béfes argédco²⁶⁶ nax arzulgh²⁶⁷ orh.²⁶⁸
sémhaham²⁶⁹ vn'cal laf garp oxox. Loangah.²⁷⁰

²⁶⁰ Padohómaghebs.

²⁶¹ Rede as arch.

²⁶² A pillar of light stode before the boke.

²⁶³ In margin, but crossed out: "Vin in vinco must be pronowced long as if it were a dubble i."

²⁶⁴ Arse.

²⁶⁵ Or, gáscampho - why didst thow so: as god sayd to Lucifer. The word hath 64 significations.

²⁶⁶ =cum humilitate aduocamus te cum adoratione Trinitas. ("[Befafes] with humility we call you, with adoration of the Trinity." -Ed.)

²⁶⁷ This is the name of the spirit contrary to Befafes.

²⁶⁸ In margin: "~~Orh = Deus sine fine. Gorh = Deus a Deo.~~

Befes, the vocatiue case of Befafes.


~~Befes, is as much to say as 'come Befafes and see us'.~~

Befafes ô, is to call uppon him as on god. Befafes oh, is as much to say, 'come Befafes and beare witness.'

Also in margin: "Befafes his Etymologie is as much to say as, 'Lumen a Lumine'. Spiritus orh secundus est in grada imperfectionis tenebrarum. = Δ. How can orh signifie 'Deus sine fine' if it be the name of a wicked spirit?" (Deus sine fine: "God without end"; Deus a Deo: "God from God"; lumen a lumine: "light from the light"; Spiritus orh . . . tenebrarum: "The spirit orh is the second in the scale of imperfections of darkness"; Deus sine fine: "God without end." -Ed.)

²⁶⁹ This word hath 72 significations.

²⁷⁰ Of two syllables.

Δ: Now appered Raphael [ Me] or one like him, and sayde,
Salus vobis in illo qui vobiscum.²⁷¹

I am a medicine that must prevayle against your infirmities: and am come to teache, and byd take hede. Yf you use dubble repetition, in the things that follow, you shall both write and work and all at ones: which mans nature can not performe. The trubbles were so great that might ensue thereof, that your strength were nothing to preuayle against them. When it is written, reade it no more with voyce, till it be in practise. All wants shalbe opened unto you. Where I fownd you, (with him, and there,) I leave you. Cumfortable Instruction is a necessarie Medicine.

Farewell.

EK: The boke and the Chayre, and the rest were all out of sight while Raphael spake, and he lay down prostrate. EK saw a great multitude in the farder side of the stone. They all cam into the stone, and axed,

What now?

How now?

Vors mábberan = how now: what hast thou to do with us?

Δ: As I began thus to say (The God of powre, of wisdom,) they all interrupted my entended prayer to god for help &c and sayd, We go We go.

Δ: And so they went away.

Then the boke and the rest cam in agayne.

A voyce:—One Note more, I haue to tell thee. Ax him not, What he sayeth, but write as thou hearest: for it is true.

Δ: Then, o lord, make my hearing sharp and strong, to perceyue sufficiently as the case requireth.

²⁷¹ Salus . . . vobiscum: “Welcome (lit. health) to you in him who is with you.” -Ed.

Rap:—Be it unto thee.

Δ: Then EK red as followeth,

22. ors lah gemphe nahoh ama-natoph des garhul vanseph iuma lat
gedos lubah aha last gesto Vars macom des curad vals mors
 gaph gemsed pa campha zednu ábfada máses lófgono
 Luruandah²⁷² lesog iamle padel arphe nades gulsad maf gescon
 lampharsad surem paphe arbasa arzusen agsde ghehol max
 vrdrá paf gals macrom finistab gelsaphan asten Vrnah²⁷³

A Voyce: Whatsoeuer thow settest down shalbe true.

Δ: I thank god most hartilie: The case allso requireth it so to be.

23. Asch val íamles árcasa árcasan arcúsma íabso gliden paha
 pacadúra gebne²⁷⁴ óscaroh gádne au²⁷⁵ arua las genost cásmé
 palsi uran vad gadeth axam pambo cásmala sámnefa gárdomas
 árxad pámses gémulch gápes lof lachef ástma vates²⁷⁶ garnsnas
 orue gad garmah sar'quel rúsan gages drusala phímacar aldech
 oscom lat garset panóston.²⁷⁷

24. gude laz miz lábac vsca losd pa Cópád dem sebas gad váncro
 umas ges umas umas ges gabre umas umáscala um'phazes

²⁷² Larvandah.

²⁷³ Δ Note these 55 wordes stand in 49 places: [ors lah, ama natoph, gedos lubah, vals mors] of which 55, some two stand in a square place, some three, [surem paphe arbasa] as I haue noted.

²⁷⁴ Iebne.

²⁷⁵ Af.

²⁷⁶ Bates.

²⁷⁷ There are no points neyther in the last before. They be parcells of Invitations very pleasant to good Angels. Before was, as it were a preface of the Creation and distinction of Angels &c.

umphagám maaga mosel iahal loges²⁷⁸ vapron fémse dapax
orgen²⁷⁹ láscod ia láscoda vága am lascafes iarques présó
tamísel vnsnapha ia dron goscam lápe voxa chimlah aueaux
losge auióxan lárghemah.

25. zureth axad lomah ied gura vancrásma ied sesch lapod vonse
avó avé lamsage zimah zemah zúmacah Vormex artman voz
vozcha tolcas zapne zarvex zorquem allahah gibúrod²⁸⁰
Ampátraton zimegauna²⁸¹ zonze zámca aschma²⁸² vlpa tapa
van vorxvam drusad Caph castárago grúmna can'caphes
absacáncaphes zúmbala teuort granx zumcot lu graf saxma
Cape.

26. Col age lam gem fam tepham vra ap du ca sampat vóxham
Lúnzapha axquem Bobagélzod gaphémse lan'se agni cam
setquo teth gaphad oxámarah gímnepfad vox'canah vrn
dage²⁸³ paphcod zámbuges zambe ach oha zambúges gásca lun-
pel zadphe zómephol zun zadchal ureseh varún pachádah
gusels vx amna pa granna oh vz

Δ: I think it will be dark by and by, and our Cumpany will expect

²⁷⁸ Loghes.

²⁷⁹ Orghen.

²⁸⁰ Ghibúrod.

²⁸¹ Zimegafna.

²⁸² Askma.

²⁸³ Daie.

our comming down to supper. Therfore, if, without offence we might now leave of, it might seme good so to do.

A voyce:—gemeganza = your will be done.

Δ: As I was discoursing with EK after we had done, and he seemed yet skylfull and hable to say much of the understanding of the premisses, and began to declare somewhat, How they did all apperteyne to Good Angels, suddenly there cam the fyre from his eyes into the stone agayne. And than he could say no more: nor remember any thing of that he had hard seen or understode less than half a quarter of an howre before.

Δ: Deo nostro Viuo Vero et Omnipotenti
sit omnis laus et graz actio
nunc et semper.²⁸⁴ Amen.

Aprilis 4 Thursday + mane hor. 5½

Δ: I made a prayer.

Δ: A voyce:—Quia ipem Deus Deus Deus noster cuius misericordia infinita.²⁸⁵

Δ: The fire, immediately did shote out of the stone into EK, as before. His tung thereuppon did quake in his mowth.

²⁸⁴ Deo . . . semper: "To our God, living, true, and almighty, be all praise and thanksgiving, now and ever." -Ed.

²⁸⁵ Quia . . . infinita: "Because God himself, God, our God, whose infinite mercy." -Ed.

EK: The Veale hangeth yet before.

Δ: Then, all being uncouered, thus he red.

27. Atra cas carmax pabámsed gero adol macom vaxt gestes²⁸⁶
ladúch carse áimages²⁸⁷ dascal panselogen dursca zureóch pam-
casáh vsca huädrongúnda malue ior. gáscama af orthox VAN-
CORHG aspe zebra vaacáäh gandeuá arinmaphel vax oh saoh
abra iehudeh gamphe vndáxa casmat lafet vncas laphet
vanascor torx glust hahaha enséde gumah galseds.

28. Pacádpha palzé zuma carphah uzad capaden v'lsage²⁸⁸ EXCOL-
PHAG-MARTBH iasmadel vóscon sem abnérdá tohcoth²⁸⁹
iamphala páhath órcheth iesmog pasque Labáäh agas lada vng
lasco ied ampha leda pageh gemze axax ózed caphzed campha
voxal luthed gedan²⁹⁰ famech²⁹¹ ártsnad gathad zuresch pascha
lo guma²⁹² hálphe dax vancron patel zurad

29. Canda lahad Bóbagen afna vorzed phadel NOBTDAMBTH
gáscala oxad vanges²⁹³ vodoth mured achna²⁹⁴ adcol damath

²⁸⁶ Iestes.

²⁸⁷ Amaies.

²⁸⁸ Vlsaie.

²⁸⁹ This name comprehendeth the number of all the fayries - who are diuels next to the state and condition of man etc.

²⁹⁰ Iedan.

²⁹¹ Famek.

²⁹² Iuma.

²⁹³ Vanies.

²⁹⁴ Akna.

zesvamcul pacadáah zimles zoraston geh galze mazad pethel
 cusma iaphes huráscáh órphade loscad mages²⁹⁵ mat lúmfamge
 detchel²⁹⁶ orze cámalah vndan padgze²⁹⁷ páthmataph zumad
 lepháda oháäx vlschan²⁹⁸ zembloh agne phamgah iudad capex
 Luzad vemech arse

30. Onda gams luzgaph vxan genzed²⁹⁹ pádex CÓNGAM-
 PHLGH³⁰⁰ ascath gadpham zurdah zamge gloghcha sapax
 tastel vn'sada phatheth zúncapha oxamáchad semteph ascle
 zuncas magzed dulm pamfra húsage axad exóradad casmet
 ámphigel adcath luza pathem nécotheth gesch³⁰¹ labba doh
 dóxa vascheth hoxan lámésde lampha iodoch gonzah
 hamges³⁰² glutha óxmogel³⁰³ démapha vz'ed ascraph.

31. zudath chádgame³⁰⁴ ómsage³⁰⁵ hor gadsa gézes ORPHÁM-
 ZAMNAHE³⁰⁶ gedod asphed voxa gémgah lath gáphes

²⁹⁵ Maies.

²⁹⁶ Detkel.

²⁹⁷ Pagze. = iustitia a numine diuino sine labe. Δ ("Justice from divine power without defect." -Ed.)

²⁹⁸ Vlskan

²⁹⁹ Ienzed.

³⁰⁰ Congamfilgh. = fide that reviveth mans brest, The holy ghoste. -Δ (Fide: "in faith." -Ed.)

³⁰¹ Iesk.

³⁰² Hamies.

³⁰³ Oxmoiel.

³⁰⁴ Kadgame.

³⁰⁵ Omsaie.

³⁰⁶ Na.

zembloth chasca olphe dax marpha lothe sool³⁰⁷ separ
 marges³⁰⁸ bosqui laxa cosneth gonse dadg voxma v'mage vnx
 gasceth lood admah loo³⁰⁹ ga zem-chá-na-phe am'-na-la ia
 pacheth nox-da a-mah

32. Gedox al SEM-GA-NA-DA-BAH ongagágeda phachel loódath
 haxna gu-na-pá-ge-pha al se geda oh oöda géhoph pachad enol
 adax loges famgah laxqui hasche vadol vóms-a-na gax-ma-deph-
 na-zad gel panca vam Sesquin oxal genoph voödal u-má-da-bah
-

33. Asge lun zumia paxchádma enohol duran ORCHLÓD-
 MAPHAG mages oschan lod bunda cap luzan lorpha leuándah
 orxzed famzad ge-nós-o-dath³¹⁰ phasélma gesda chom-gas-
 naph-geth-nag goth³¹¹ ládmano Vmvar gezen vax gulzad
 margas luxt lapch iudath zomze van goth dah vorx guna ia ada
 Vox-há-ma-na
-

34. Arze galsam vnza vcha pasel noxda Nobróschom³¹² gu-na-dé-pho-
 gas dúnseph man-cax-mal-cás-mah ied-hah-mel-cár-na zemphe
 vncah lethoph both-ned-ga-phí-cas-mel ioth-hath-cha-sad ma-ne-
 ded-ma-gon zuna gothel pascheph nodax vam phath mata³¹³

³⁰⁷ Sol.

³⁰⁸ Maries.

³⁰⁹ Lo.

³¹⁰ 21, words hither.

³¹¹ O long.

³¹² In great letters.

³¹³ Δ Here are but 48 words: I dowl that there lacketh one.

A voyce: Orate. Δ: We prayed.

35. Aphath zunca voxmor can zadcheth³¹⁴ napha. VOR-DOMPHÁNCHES ga-ues-go-sa-del gurah leth agsnah orza max pace ieth cas lad fam pahógama zon-chás-pha-ma zum-blés-cha-phax var-gat-ma-gas-ter ne-ho-gat-ma-gan vn-ga-phax-ma-la gegath laxqu goga lab naches³¹⁵

Δ: Thereuppon the Vele was drawn, and the fire cam from EK his eyes again into the stone.

Δ: Deo opt. Max. omnis honor
laus et gloria.³¹⁶ Amen.

Aprilis .5. Friday + a meridie hora 5¼

Δ: The Vele was taken away, without any speche used by me or EK. The boke and all the former furniture appeared very bright.

Δ: I made a prayer to god, begynning, Expectās expectaui Dominum³¹⁷ &c.

EK: I here the sownd of men playing very melodiously on Instruments and singing.

³¹⁴ Zadketh.

³¹⁵ Here seme to be to many by 3 or 4.

³¹⁶ Deo . . . gloria: "To God all good, all honor, praise, and glory." -Ed.

³¹⁷ Expectas expectaui Dominum: "I waited patiently for the Lord" (Psalm 40:1/ Vulgate 39:1). -Ed.

A Voyce:—Serue God and take hede of Nettels.³¹⁸ Δ: This was spoken to EK in respect of a great anger he was-in yesternight, by reason that one had done him inurie in speche at my table. [Charles Sled.]

EK: There appere a great many, a far of; as though they appered beyond the top of a howse: and so semed far of behinde the stone: and they seme to haue no heds.

A Voyce:—A peculier people, and shalbe restored.³¹⁹

Δ: After this voyce, the sayd hedles-people disäpered. Then all appered fyre, and a clowd covered all: and in the top of the fyre in the chayre, appered three faces, and seemed to shute and close in one. The faces seemed, eche to turn rownd, and so to ioyne in one afterward.

A Voyce:—Prayse him in his glorie and worship him, in his truth.

Δ: The fire entred into EK.

A voyce:—Orate.³²⁰ Δ: We prayed.

Δ: Then thus appeared,

36. gedóthar argo fa adóphanah gamsech olneh várasah iusmach [= begotten.]

A voyce:—Interpret not, till your understanding be furnished.³²¹

³¹⁸ Take hede of Nettels.

³¹⁹ Perhaps the Jues shall be restored. -Δ. Dee sees “headless” as a metaphor for the fact that the Jews have no central authority like the Pope. Dee’s meaning is most likely to be that the vision is a prophecy that the Jews will be readmitted into England where they had been expelled in 1290/91. They were, in fact, readmitted into England in 1655 after petitions from Menasseh Ben Israel. See David S. Katz, *Philo-Semitism and the Readmission of the Jews to England* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1982), chapter three for details. There is more on this in his most recent book, *The Jews in the History of England* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1994). According to Dr. Katz (private communication), “Dee had good reason to think this might happen in his lifetime.” -Ed.

³²⁰ Orate: “Pray.” -Ed.

³²¹ Interpret not yet.

Vschna pháol doa vah oho lazed la-zu-red ámma donax valesto
acaph lámphages ronox ganma iudreth loth adágma gonsaph
godálga phareph iadsma zema loa ag-náph-ag-on zu-na-ha³²² al
me io-náp-ha-cas zeda ox arni

37. Adgzelga³²³ olms vánaph osma vages otholl dox an ga had³²⁴
latqui dónaphe zu gar. phamah³²⁵ nordeph gasmat gasque gasla
gas NA gasmaphés gasmagél gasnúabe vamsech ábsechel
gúlapha axnécho demsa pámbochaph iehúsa gadaámah nosad
iurés chy almse orsa vax marde zun éffa mochoéffa zuréheffa
asga Lubeth bethlémcha máxiche iehúscoth iaphan órnada
vamne od ghim-noh

38. Arphe³²⁶ lamse gaphnedg³²⁷ argaph zonze zumcoth O'mdopa-
dáphaab³²⁸ nulech³²⁹ gaartha ancáphama soldémcah casdra
vges lapha ludasphándo ga-lú-ba-noh ap-á-cha-na³³⁰ iedeph
zembloh zamgýssel chéuacha laquet lozódma ierinth onaph
uzad máspela gýman orphámmagah iu-mes-ba-lé-go archán-
phame. zamcheth zoach³³¹

³²² Zunah.

³²³ Ag-zel-ia.

³²⁴ Doxaniahad. one word.

³²⁵ Fáma = I will giue.

³²⁶ = I desire thee O god.

³²⁷ Gaphned.

³²⁸ This was put in and out a good while before EK could haue a perfect vew to rede it.

³²⁹ Nuleg.

³³⁰ = The slymie things made of dust.

³³¹ Zoah. Δ Here seme to want 5 or 6 names.

39. Am'chama zeuoth luthámba ganeph iamda ox oho iephad made noxa voscaph bámgephes noschol apeth iale lod ga NA-zuma datques vorzad nu-mech³³² apheth nudach caseth iotha lax arseth armi pli ca tar bām a co³³³ zamgeph gaseth vrnod arispa iex ban Setha. oh lagnaph dothoth brazed vamchach odoámaäh zembles gunza naspolge gáthme orsoth zurath vámeth anseh.³³⁴

40. Zalpe íedmacha ámphas nethoth alphax durah gethos aschéph nethoth iubad laxmah ionsa max dan do násdoga mátastos³³⁵ lateth vnchas amse Jacaph zembloágauh³³⁶ ad-pha-má-gel ludcha-dám-sa am-phí-ca-tol ar-nó-pa-a a-da-pa-gé-moh no-dás-ma mac-hes-tép-ho-lon

41. Lumbor iemásch onzed gam-phi-dá-rah. gom-ás-cha-pa zeba zun amph naho zucath uomplínanoháhal machal lozma dauangeth búches lauax orxod makes donchaph luzath marpheth oz lanva don gáuah oschol lúmasa phedeph omsa nax do-má-ge-re an-ge-no-phá-cha pha-cha-dó-na

42. óschala zamges onphá gemes phaches nolpha daxeth machés-machoh vastnálpoh gemas nach loscheph daphmech noth

³³² Nu-mech is two wordes.

³³³ One word.

³³⁴ These last two words are in one square.

³³⁵ = The furious and perpetuall fire enclosed for the ponishment of them that are banished from the glory. One word of 7 syllables: 4 in the first part and 3 in the last.

³³⁶ Zembloágaf.

chales zunech maschol Lu³³⁷ gasnaph malces gethcaph
 madena³³⁸ oäh gemsah pa luseth iorbástamax elcaph rusam
 phanes domsath gel³³⁹ pachadóra amáxchano lu-ma-gé-no
 ar-ma-cha-phá-me-lon adro micho natath iamesebáchola doná-
 docha.

Δ: The fire went from EK his eyes to the stone agayn. Then EK
 his understanding was gone allso.

Δ: Deo soli sit omnis laus honor
 et gloria per infinita sæculor
 sæcula.³⁴⁰ Amen.

Aprilis 6. Saterdag affore none hora 10¼

Δ: The fire shot into EK, as before was used: wherat he startled. All was
 uncovered, as the manner was. But EK had such a whirling and beating
 inwardly in his hed, that he could not use any Judgment to discern
 what appered, for half a quarter of an howre almost.

A Voyce:—**SVM.**³⁴¹

And agayn—a voyce:—Gahoachma [= Sum quod sum,³⁴² EK
 expownded it.].

³³⁷ Lu = from one.

³³⁸ Madna.

³³⁹ Iel.

³⁴⁰ Deo . . . saecula: "To God alone be all praise, honor, and glory, through endless
 ages upon ages." -Ed.

³⁴¹ Sum: "I am." -Ed.

³⁴² Sum quod sum: "I am that I am." -Ed.

43. Asmar gehótha gabseph achándas vnáscor sátquama látquataf
hun gánses luximágelo ásquapa lochath³⁴³ anses dosam váthne
gálsador ansech gódamah vonsepaléscōh ádmacah lu zámpha
oh adma zemblodárma varmíga zuna thotob am-phi-cha-nó-sa
ge-mi-cha-na-dá-bah Va-de-ma-do Va-se-la-pa-gé-do
-

44. A-mas-ca-ba-lo-no-cha a-nó-dah a-du-ra-dá-mah go-na-de-
pha-ge-no v-na-cha-pes-ma-cho ge-mi-na-do-cha-pa-mi-ca
vu-am-sa-pá-la-ge vocóρθmoth achepasmácapha em-ca-ni-do-
bah gedóah
-

45. Nostoah³⁴⁴ geuámna da oscha lus palpal medna go-rum-ba-ló-
geph a-cap-na-pá-da-pha Vol-sé-ma go-no-gé-do-cha am-bu-sá-
ba-loh ge-mú-sa-cha va-mi-li-ó-pha zum-ne-ga-da-phá-ge-pha
iuréhoh

This last word was hid a prety while with a rym like a thin blad-
der affore it: and when it was perfectly seen then there appered a
bluddy cross over it. It is a Word signifying what Christ did in hel.

46. Zém-no-da amni fa chebseth vsáng rada bo-sa-dó-ma zú-ma-
coh a-phi-na-bá-cha buzádbazu a-ma-cha-pa-do-mi-cha
zu-ma-ne-pas-só NA vuamanábadoth zum-ble-gám-pha zum-
ble-cap-há-ma-cha³⁴⁵
-

³⁴³ Locat.

³⁴⁴ Nostah = it was in the begynning.

³⁴⁵ Δ Here seme to lack 5 words.

EK: All is couered with darknes. Terrible flashes of fire appered and they semed to wreath and wrap, one abowt an other. In the fire ouer the chayre appered, the three heds which appeared before.

A Voyce:—Laua zuráah.³⁴⁶

Δ: After our prayers was a very hevenly noyce hard.

47. Zudneph arni ioh pan zedco lamga nahad lébale nochas arni cans lósmo iana olna dax zémblocha zedman púsatha vámo mah oxex párszu drána ánza pasel lúmah cóxech á-da-max gón-boh alze dah lúsache³⁴⁷ asneph gedma noxdrúma Vamcáph-napham ástichel rátrugem³⁴⁸ abnath lonsas masqueth tauínar tadna gehodód gaphrámsana asclor drusáxpá

48. Amgédpha³⁴⁹ lazad ampha ladmaáchel galdamicháël Vn'za dédma Luz zácheph pílathob ganó vamañ zúnasch zemblagen ónman zuth catas max ordru iadse lamad caphícha aschal luz. ampna zod-mí-na-da ex-cá-pha-nog sal-gém-pha-ne Om vrza lat quartphe lasque deth ürad ox-ma-ná gam-ges

[The 49th row followeth after 2 leaves: Arney vah nol, &c.]

Δ: Now the boke was couered with a blew silk sindall³⁵⁰ and uppon that blew covering appered letters of gold, conteyning these words,

³⁴⁶ = Use humilitie in prayers to God, that is fervently pray. It signifieth, Pray into god.

³⁴⁷ Δ pronownce as che in chery.

³⁴⁸ Δ ratrugeem is one of the 7 words on the side of the Table first prescribed.

³⁴⁹ = I will begynne a new.

³⁵⁰ Note this covering to be made for the boke. = Δ. Sindall: “sendal, a thin light silk.” -Ed.

Amzes naghézes Hardeh³⁵¹

EK: It signifieth, the universall name of him that created universally be prayed and extolled for euer.

Δ: Amen

A Clowde covered the boke.

A Voyce:—Mighty is thy Name (ô lorde) for euer.

EK: It lightneth.

A Voyce:—The place is Holy: stur not [sayd the three heds].

Δ: Now appered to EK, some imperfection passed in the eleuenth row. And that we wer towght how to amend it: and so we did.

Δ: Then the firy light went from EK into the stone agayn: and his inspired perceyuerance and understanding was gone: as often before it used to be.

Δ: Gloriam laudemque nostri Creatoris, omnes Creaturæ. indesinenter resonent:³⁵² Amen.

Halleluiah Halleluiah Halleluiah
Amen.

Aprilis 6. Saterdag after none.

Δ: The Table, Chayre, boke and fyre appeared. And while I went into my oratorie³⁵³ to pray, fire cam thrise out of the stone uppon EK, as he was at prayer, at my table in my study.

³⁵¹ Note this to be pronownced rowndly to gither.

³⁵² Gloriam . . . resonent: "May all creatures continually resound the glory and praise of our Creator." -Ed.

³⁵³ Oratory: a small private chapel. -Ed.

EK hard a voyce out of the fyre, saying,

Why do the Children of men prolong the time of theyr perfect felicitie: or why are they dedicated to vanitie? Many things ar yet to come: Notwithstanding, the Time must be shortned,

I AM THAT I AM.

A voyce: Veniet³⁵⁴ Vox eius, ut dicat filijs hominum quæ ventura sunt.³⁵⁵

EK: here is a man, in white, come in, like Uriel, who cam first into the stone.

Δ: Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini.³⁵⁶—Ur: Amen.

Ur:—I teache: EK sayd that he turned toward me.

Ur: What willt thou I shall answer thee, as concerning this work?

EK: He hath a ball of fire in his left hand and in his right hand a Triangle of fyre.



Δ: What is the most nedefull for us to lerne herin, that is my chief desire.

Uriel:—Fowre monthes, are yet to come: The fifth is the begynning of great miserie, to the heauens, to the earth and to all liuing Creatures.³⁵⁷ Therefore must thou nedes attend upon the will of God: Things must then be put in practise. A thing that knitteth up all must of

³⁵⁴ The manuscript has an “a” (or Δ?) over the second “e” in “veniet.” -Ed.

³⁵⁵ Veniet . . . sunt: “His voice will come, that he may tell the sons of men what is coming” Sloane 3677 also has an “a” over the second “e” of “veniet.” With this proposed amendment the statement would start: “May his voice come. . .” -Ed.

³⁵⁶ Benedictus . . . Domini: “Blessed in he who comes in the name of the Lord.” -Ed.

³⁵⁷ A prophesy very dreadfull now at hand.

force conteyn many celestiall Vertues. Therfore, in these doings, must things be finished spedyly,³⁵⁸ and with reuerence.

This, is the light, wherewith thou shalt be Kindled.³⁵⁹

This is it, that shall renew thee: yea agayn and agayn, and, seventy seuen tymes, agayn.


Then shall thy eyes be clered from the dymnes. Thou shalt perceyue these³⁶⁰ things which haue not byn seen, No, not amongst the Sonnes of men.

This³⁶¹ other haue I browght, whereof I will, now, bestow the seuentith part of the first part of seuenty seuen. The residue shall be fullfilled, in, and with thee; In, (I say,) and to gither, with thee. Behold (sayth the lord) I will breath uppon men, and they shall haue the spirit of Understanding.




In 40 dayes³⁶² must the boke of the Secrets, and key of this world be Written: euen as it is manifest to the one of you in sight, and to the other in faith. Therfore haue I browght it to the wyn-dow of thy senses, and dores of thy Imagination: to the ende he may see and performe the tyme of God his Abridgment.³⁶³ That shalt, thou,³⁶⁴ write down in his propre and sanctified distinctions.

³⁵⁸ Spedily & reuerently.

³⁵⁹ Uriel held up now the triangle of fire .

³⁶⁰ Those.

³⁶¹ Uriel now holding up the Ball of fire in his left hand, sayd as is here written: .

³⁶² If from the first day of writing we accownt than from good friday the reckoning doth begynne: and so ende this.

³⁶³ The Abridgment of time.

³⁶⁴ Speaking to Δ.

This other, (pointing to EK) shall haue it allwayes before him, and shall daylie performe the office to him committed. Which if he do not, the Lord shall raze his name from the number of the blessed, and those that are annoynted with his blud.³⁶⁵

For, behold, what man, can speak, or talk with the spirit of God? No flesh is hable to stand, whan the voyce of his Thunder³⁶⁶ shall present the parte of the next leaf unto sight.

You haue wauering myndes, and are drawn away with the World: But brittle is the state therof: Small therefore are the Vanities of his Illusion.

Be of sownd faith. Beleue. Great is the reward of those that are faithfull. God Will not be dishonored, neyther will suffer them to receyue dishonor, that honor him in holiness.

Behold, Behold, Mark ô and Behold: Eache line hath stretched himself, euen to his ende:³⁶⁷ and the Middst is glorious to the good, and dishonor to the wicked. Heuen and erth must decay: so, shall not the words of this Testimonie.

Δ: Ecce seruus et misellus homuncio Dei nostri, fiat mihi iuxta beneplacitum voluntatis suæ:³⁶⁸ &c.

Δ: Uriel toke a little of the fire in his left hand and flung it at EK: and it went in at his mowth.³⁶⁹

Ur: My message is done.

Δ: May I Note Ur, (meaning Uriel,) for your name who now deale with us?—Ur:—I am so.

³⁶⁵ The danger thretned, if EK do not his dutie.

³⁶⁶ Note a terrible thing.

³⁶⁷ The ende of all.

³⁶⁸ Ecce . . . suae: "Behold this servant and wretched little man; let it be to me whatever is most pleasing to his will." -Ed.

³⁶⁹ Note, by the place here before what measure in proportion of powr and understanding this was, in respect of the white ball of fyre.

Δ: I pray you to give us advise what we are to doo in our affayres.

Ur: It is sayde.

Δ: He sayd to EK, Tell him, I haue told him, and seemed to smile.

Δ: Of Mistres Haward (Jentlewoman³⁷⁰ of her Maiesties priuie chamber) I wold fayn know, wherefore we were not warned of her coming? She hath caused us, now, for an howre or two, to intermit our exercise? Is it the Will of god, that for her great charitie used toward many, (as in procuring the Quenes Maiesties Almes to many nedy persons) the lord entendeth to be mercifull to her? I meane at the pynche of these great miseries ensuing, now (by you) told of. And that by her, I may do good seruice concerning the Quenes Maiesties Cumfort?

Ur:—Who is he, that opened thy mowth, or hath told thee of things to come? What thow hast sayd, is sayde. Mark the ende.³⁷¹

It is a sufficient answer.

Ur:—Loke up.—Δ: He sayd so to EK: who loking up, saw the boke, the chayre and the Globe a part, abroad, out of the stone, and then, none remayning in the stone to be seene: and it cam nearer & nearer to him, and it burned, as before.

Ur: So, set down, what thow seest. [Δ: The boke and writing was made very playne to him.]

What thow seest, deliuer unto him.

As it is his will, so be it unto thee:

Do thy duty, whereunto thow art moved,
and it shalbe sufficient.

Farewell, for a time.

³⁷⁰ Jentlewoman: "noblewoman." -Ed.

³⁷¹ Mistres Francis Haward elected to taste of god his great mercy for her charitable hart, &c.

EK: Now is all couered with a white clowde, such an one as I saw not yet.

Δ: We put up the stone: and the former boke and other furniture, appeared uppon the table hard by EK: and he was to write out as he saw: which he began to do, both in character and words: but it was to cumbersome to him: and therfore he wrote onely the words in latin lettres.

Δ: After he had written 28 lines there in that paper boke, the first word being Arney, and the last, being nah suddenly all was taken away out of his sight: and so likewise his understanding of that he had written was quite gone. For, contynually as he wrote, he understode the language and sense thereof, as if it had byn english.

Δ: After he had finished that second page³⁷² of the first leafe, I then did copy it out as followeth.

493 373 77373

49.³⁷³ Arney³⁷⁴ vah nol gadeth³⁷⁵ adney ox vals nath gemseh ah
 orza val gemáh, oh gedvá on zembáh nohhad vomfah olden
 ampha nols admácha nonsah vamfas ornad, alphol andax
 o'rzadah vos ansoh hanzah voh adma iohá notma goth vamsed
 adges onseple ondemax orzan, vnfa onmah vndabra gonsah gols
 nahad NA.

³⁷² Forte Row.

³⁷³ This was originally numbered 1, the next 2, and so on. These were each crossed out later and renumbered 49, 1, etc. See the note at the end of the 49th row. -Ed.

³⁷⁴ Δ forte: Asney.

³⁷⁵ Iadeth.

1. Oxar varmol pan sampas os al pans orney andsu alsaph oucha³⁷⁶ cosdám on-za-go-les natmátatp max, olnah von ganse pacath olnoh vor nasquah loth adnay nonsah oxansah vals nodax vonqueth lan sandquat ox arda'nh onzâbel ormach douquin astmax arpagels ontipodah omvah nosch als mantquts, armad³⁷⁷ notgals. Vantantquah +
-

In ³⁷⁸ the tables	drux	1
expressed	na	2
drux	ger	3
na	pa	4
ger	van	5
pa	or	6
van	pal	7
or	med	8
pal	gal	9
med	cheph	10
gal <i>letters names,</i>	vr	11
ceph <i>used in sense</i>	fam	12
vr	ged	13
fam	vn	14
ged	mals	15
vn		
mals		

³⁷⁶ I dowl which is n and which is u.

³⁷⁷ A dowte whether "ar made" be two words or one.

³⁷⁸ The following notes are found on a separate sheet of paper: -Ed.

veh		
graph	16	15
gisg	17	16
+ mals	18	17
don	19	18
gon	20	19
tal	21	20

$\begin{matrix} L \\ h \end{matrix} \triangle \begin{matrix} t \\ a \end{matrix}$

$\begin{matrix} 2 \\ f \end{matrix} \triangle \gamma$

$\begin{matrix} 2 \\ s \end{matrix} \triangle \gamma$

I finde diuerse dowts which I cannot order, to my contentment.³⁷⁹

1. How many of my ruled leaves, shall I tak for the writing of the first leafe?
2. How shall I make the distinctions of the last 9 lines of the first leafe answerable to all the former words: how is more then two hundred & some are of 3 hundred letters, & top 9 rows have but 49 letters.
3. how shall I do for the true orthographie, Seing g and C and p & c haue so diuerse sownds, & not allwayes one: as g sometymes as gh & sometymes as J. And C sometymes is like K, sometymes is like S. p sometymes is like ph, & sometymes is p—& sometymes f.
4. The number of the words in the first leafe,—every row, is not all one; nor 49 allwayes.
5. of the 2nd Table, when is to be set down all the tables following, all the table ... will not agree to fill up ...all places & to set down the ... perfectly.

2. Ondroh als vrh. panchah orn sandvah loh andah nol pan, sedmah zugeh als ab-mi-cad-am-pâ-get ordomph, axah gethol vav axel anthath gorsan vax parsah vort lanq an'damsah getheol, vrchan navádah o'xembles armax lothar, vos antath, orsé vax alnoth, other mals olnah gethom várdamach, alls,³⁸⁰ Orgeth

³⁷⁹ In margin at top of page: "solgars." See TFR, p. 5, where "solgars" is prescribed as a cure. -Ed.

³⁸⁰ Δ Ω.

3. Or pasquah omzádah vorts, ange'nodah varsáua onch aldúmph, ángēt ónsauā gálta oth aneth ax pa gesné ouád ax orneh al-dum-bá-ges vos-cómph alze ax, orzad andah gost astoh nadah vortes, astmah notesma goth nathad omza, geth altéth ox, degáth onda voxā gemnaché adna dansa als alst
-

4. arсах. Orthath ols gast ardoh max vármah doth novámq lath, adnah gothan, ardri'noh astómagel arpáget asteth arde obzá, ols NA³⁸¹ gem-na-pá-la-ba-m'i-da orsat nahah Odmázen an'-dulphel, ox ambrássah oxah géth nor vamfah genoh daqueth als astna, oh tatóh, alsah goth necor andeoh neo alda nah³⁸²
-

5. Vanlah oha demagens on sunfah, paphah olemneh, ózadcha lax ornah vor adme ox vastmah gu labazna, gamnácho astmah ochádo landrídah vons sah, lúgho iahat nabscham nohads van-dispa rossámod androch alphoh, zúmbloh ásnah gonfageph aldeh lo dah vax orh asmo, gad au dansequa deo, dath vax nograh vor segbat Mon.
-

6. Arni olbah galpa lohánaha gáu-pu-ma-gén-sah ollo var se darsah goho ál-bu-mi-clá-má-ca-pá-loth ieho nad veslah vors ardno inmony asquam rath als vásmah géndā loggahah astmu.³⁸³

³⁸¹ This word is circled in the manuscript. –Ed.

³⁸² Here seme to be 50 names: and so, one to many.

³⁸³ Here are but 38.

7. Arnah notah lax vart luhoh désmaph, ol ca-pra-mi-na-cah³⁸⁴
 ox-and-an-vah gem-ne-lo-ri-pli-ton-pha ac-cam-plah-no-stapha
 or-max-a-da-ha-har or-zem-bli-zad-mah pan-che-fe-lo-ge-doh
 áschah ólmah ledóh vaxma

8. Gans na cap lan seda ax nor vorza vo laspral onsa gem gemah
 noph gázo na von santfa nostradg ansel vnsa pah vort velsa or
 alda viax nor adroh semneh ols vandésqual olzah nolphax
 pahah lothor ax ru vansar glímnaph gath ardot ardri axa noh
 gaga leth arde maxa.

9. Corsal mabah noplich alps arsdod vord vanfax oriox nabat
 gemnepoh laphet Ióda nat vombal nams ar geth alloah néphirt.
 lauda noxa voxtaf ardno ándroch labmageh ossu állmaglo
 ardot nalbar vanse dar-to vorts parsan vr vnrah vor gádeth leth
 orze nax vomreh agelpha, legar or nembla ar vah Su.³⁸⁵

10. Zanchcumáchaseph, ol-za-mi-nó-ah Vals-e-bú-ra-ah no-da-li-
 gá-nax or-sáp-na-go dar-ság-na-pha nob-si-blith ar-mi-pyth
 ar-se-pó-lo-ni-tan-tons Jem-búl-sa-mar le-bó-ge axpar or-ná-za
 ol-dax-ar-da-co-ah³⁸⁶

³⁸⁴ Ce-.

³⁸⁵ 48.

³⁸⁶ Here are 54.

11. Semno ah al-chi-do-á-cha-da Sel-pag-in-o-dah a-da-hu-bá-mi-ca-noh dam pah gli ás cha nor ox-om-pa-mi-na-pho lemp, na, gón sa pha ne co ál pha as pa gé mo cal na tú ra ge³⁸⁷
-

12. Sen gál se quar rus fa glan súx taft ormaca ox i no dál ge brah nop tar ná gel vom na ches pál ma cax, arsep as dón sadg asc lan fán che dah nor vi car máx coh zum bla zánpha ad geh do ca ba ah
-

13. Ar gém na ca pál fax, orr-nído hab cás pigan alpuh gágah loth ral sá bra dan go sá pax vólsan qués tan ondapha opicab or zy lá pa a-chra-pa-má-les ad má car pah oxalps on dá pa, gém na de vór guse
-

14. Lat gans sa par sat lastéah lor ádah nóxax ardéphis nónson andoh gv'mzi vor sab líboh ad ni sa pa loth gaho lar va noxa oho lan sempah noxa Vriah sephah lúsaz odgálsax nottaph ax v'rnoc árpos arta zem zubah lothor gas lubah vom zá da phi cár no
-

15. As-só-ta-phe on-dah vor ban sanphar pa loth agno iam nésroh am algórs vrrábah geuseh alde ox nah vors púrblox ámphicab nóstrophh admág³⁸⁸ or napsú asmo lon gamphi arbel nof ámph

³⁸⁷ 50 words.

³⁸⁸ Admad.

on Saubloth aschi nur laffax las doxa pra gem a Sestrox amphi
nax var sembbh³⁸⁹

16. Angésel oxcapácad onz adq ochádah ólzah vor náh orpogó-
graphel al sa gem ua ca pí coh vl da pa pór sah naxor vonsa rons
vrbanf lab dún zaph algadef loh gem vortaóh amph ahoha za
vaxorza leph³⁹⁰ oxor neoh ah va du-na-ca pi ca lodox ard nah.
-

17. Iahod vox ar pi cah lot tár pi ges nol zim na plah ge ó gra plih
ne gó ah va lu gán zed am phí la doh zan veh al nex oh al pha ze
goth gedóth axor van zebá al cá pa Luma ges ard de oh ah³⁹¹
-

18. Onchas lagod van Sebageh oxangam pah gos dah manzeh ocon-
dah vardol Sebagh ol madan NA ohal Sepaget, otoxen narvah
lubatan ansem nofet au naba notoh ax arсах mans Vstgam
pahod pah mal sednah gestons amphen al manso gapalebâton
arra nax vamfes amah dot agen nalphat ar zamne oh Sages
-

19. nax lerua nath Zembloh axpadabamah Sanzápas gunzan-
quah³⁹² ona var demneh gah lod vmnah doxa val tarquat mans
ol gem nageph au zanbat vx anzach al pambóha nextath ol nada
vam nonsal aua nal gedot vorx alge lah despa gu prominabâmî-
gah olupaz ord gamnat lem paz cath normadah on demq

³⁸⁹ Sembeth.

³⁹⁰ Lefe.

³⁹¹ Here seme to be 50.

³⁹² Of the “n” and “u” of this word I dowl.

20. Laffah ie ogg dalseph abrimanadg oldomph ledothnar ymnachar
 onze vam sepno voxauaret ol zantqur amph nas Sages om nartal
 vor miscam bemcax lappad gesso drux capgol ass letnar vom³⁹³
 sausah or gamprida ornat vol asmd onza duh get hansa gorh
 hubra galsaropah nequax dap gemno ab pnidah noxd lumbam

21. al gethroz ax arvan oh zempal guh arvax no demnat ar pam-
 bals nop nonsal geh axor pam vartop ab vbrah cardax lon
 songes au dumax ar nephar lu gemne om Asda vorts vmrod val
 manqh noh Sam, naga vrbrast Lurvandax vpplod dam zurtax
 loa an avarn nar gemplicabnadah oxa

22. nooa Babna ampha dum nonsap vrs daluah marsasqual orma
 nabath Sabaothal netma vol sempra isch laue ondeh noh sem-
 blax or mansa macapal vngenel vorsepax vrsabada noxanquah
 vndalph asmoh vxa na Gaspar vmpaxal Lapproh ladd nomval
 vp setquam nol astma vors: vrдем gnasplat bef affafefafed
 noxtah Volls laydam ovs nac

23. cedah or manveh geh axax nolsp damva dor demgoh apoxan
 Subliganaxnarod orchal vamnad vez gemlehox ar drulalpa ax
 vr samfah oladmax vr sappoh Luah vr pabmax luro lam faxno
 dem vombres adusx or sembal on vamne oh lemne val se quap
 vn nap nastosm dah voz mazax lumato games on neda.³⁹⁴

³⁹³ At vom was a + to note the ende of a line: But both these mak but 49 names.

³⁹⁴ 51 words.

24. voh gemse³⁹⁵ ax pah losquan nof afma dol vamna vn samses
oh set, quamsa ol danfa dot santa on anma ol subracah
Babalad vansag olso pas gonred vorn chechust axaroh rugho
am nadom val sequot ne texpa vors vrs al pam vans na tomva-
mal ansipamals notems anq_e arxe al

25. pangef offd ne pamfah aliboh a nostâfâges almesed vrmast
geus vrmax au semblox satq quayntah luzez arne noh pamna
sams bantes orn volsax vors vnisapa monsel dah nax ah pah
vomreb doth danséqox anzazed onz anfal nom vamreh volts
vrnacapácapah noshan yalt gelfay nor sentqbt onbanzar luntaf
val sentepax

26. ornisa nor Pampals anz alpah nox noxa gendah von gamne
dah vors ad na lepnazu acheldaph var honza gune alsaph nal
vomsan vns alpd a domph ar zemnip ans vrnach vancef ban
yanzem ob aha vons nabrah vh asmo drat vormez al pasquar
no gems nah zem lasquith apsantah

27. Vol zans alphi ne gansad ol pam ro dah vor vngef a deoh nad
vnsemel apodmacah vnsap val vndar ban cefna dux hansel yax
nolpah volts quayntah gam vemneg oh asq al panst ans vntah
hunsansa Apnad ratq a sanst nel odogamanázar. olzah guh oh
nah varsa vpangah neoh aho

³⁹⁵ Iemse.

28. Notgah ox vr auonsad vl dath nox lat ges orn val sedcoh leth arney vas ars galep odámpha nol axar vox apracas nolph admi adpálsah noh vrh gednach vax varsablox vrdam pagel admax lor vamtage oxandah lamfó nor vorsah axpáa, ols nugaphar ádras vxár nostrilgan ampacoh vortes lesqual exoh.

29. Ses vah nómre gal sables orzah, get les part, ox ar se de cólmachu ardéh lox gempha lar vamra goh naxa vors admah gebah, semfúgel admá geod alzeh orzam vánchet.³⁹⁶ oxam prah geh orzad Val nexo, vam seleph oxa, noha par gúmsah askeph nox adroh lestof ad moxa nonsúrrach

30. Vomchál as pu gán san var, sem quáh lah set gedoh argli oranza vor zina sedcátah zuréhoh admich, ors arсах varsab, oliba vortes lúnsanfah, adnah vor semquáx, vorsan lap varsah gebdah voxlar geoh, gemfel ad gvns. aldah gor vanlah, gehudan vor sableth, gedvel ax ors, manch var sembloh.³⁹⁷

31. Ar dam fa gé do hah Luxh arcan Mans lubrah vor semblas adna gor partat, nor vílso ádchu apri sed amphle nox arua getol. Vor sambla geth, arse pax vor sah. gelh aho gethmah or gemfa nah prax chilad ascham na prah oxáh var setqua lexoh vor sámbleh zubah.

³⁹⁶ Vanket.

³⁹⁷ 48.

32. Lax or setquáh vah lox rémah Nol sadma vort, famfa le gem nah or sepah vartef a geh Oha lon gaza Onsa ges adrux: vom-balzah ah vaxtal. noh sedo lam, vom tántas oxárazh Mechól va zebn geth adna vax, ormacha lorni adrah, Gens arnah vor, Arsad odíscóh alidah nepho.

33. Hastan bah ges loh ru mal; vrabro den varsah, Mah rox idah ru gebna demphe, ors amvi ar, Genbá, óxad va ges lath vriop: nal pas vi me ró to ád-na-vah ged anse lah verbrod vn gelpa, lux árd do ah vast vor Ge-ma-fá-noh

34. Amles ondanpha³⁹⁸ noxt vradah gel núbrod Arb á cha lo pe go há pa ra zem che pár ma la Na bu-rá doh gem la pa or-zín fax nol ad micápar vó si pi cá la ton andrah vox ardno, get na ca ploh gál-zun

35. O'r ge mah luza cá poh nox tráh víoxah nebo hu ge o mí lah cox chá dah or na hú da vol sa pah: No bro ch, ál pa chídomph náb la grux la vx ar gá fam gel ne do gá lah vo sa pah

36. Gu la gé dop áx ix óx a max lun fá gem pah orsa dev'lmah Gé pa cha vor sí ma coh alduth gempfa: Nox gal max ar hú gaf gli nó rob va gen lá car du zum ox am' pli zam zu latmah ge gé ma ohahah

³⁹⁸ Corrected from "ondanfaha." -Ed.

37. Ga lá pa drux váx ma geb lá geb or ché plon gan zéd ah
Vox ár vox gelet ar gahad, gan pá gan doruminaplah vor
zinach cû pa chef ardrah óx ox pol sa gal máx nah guth ardéth
on zupra cró cro gah var sa má nal

38. Ar sa bá choas noh al geh oh, ax ár pa gal olza déh
or za zú max exoh eh, or cah pal donzahá onza zethas:
nor sáp se pah onzap a palmah aldoh voh náblebah gemnápam
os malsa or naoh zar bu lagém pah ne-ó ha brah

39. Tal gep ar sep nah doh, vors alsa doh necoh am ar geth na ges
 alpran odox malsápnah, gohor ahoh gadmah ol dáneph aludar
 dón-za-gab ól-sa-gah nebthuh or sapnar balgonph nep gemloh,
 ax amna³⁹⁹ duth achár laspá, vohá, náxvolh gas vergol ah
 pratnom geá⁴⁰⁰ nostúamph

40. Va'n sa pal sah gón so gon gé la bu rá doh tato lang,
ge mé fe ran ón da pans ge lá brah: or pa gé mal on sán' fan gen
ólc ma cha lan Von sé gor a prí cas nor vá gel om brá cau
cohadal.

³⁹⁹ The copy had "ouhna." I could not conjecture.

⁴⁰⁰ Iea.

a d r o s , a c l o d f a c , d o g é p n a h , l a p c a h , m o c d á c o d e , f a m ó n , t u a l c , d o m ,
 v r á s n a g e p h , a m p h i d o n , g á n s e l , v a x , ó r e h a m a h , v ó r s a f a n s a , u c a s
 d a m í f a g a , n á b u l a x , o r s a g e h , n a m ' v a h , o c a r , l u n s a n g e l , c a r p a c o a .
 l u n s e m n e p h , o d á r n a c h o h , z e m b l o h , o b l í c a n d o n , g a l s o r x v l á g a ,
 f ó m n a p h , a p á n s a g e h , l o n s ú g a l a n g r a s t , v b l á n s o , a r n o x , v o n s á o
 t a l t é m a p h e c h , ó r m a c h a d á g e n o x , v r s t á m v a h , n a d v a r e h , o n s a r g
 z u c á n z u , n a p l i o r a h , n o r g e , h a h a n a h a , v s p l a h , g r a d ú n v a h , n a v i o ,
 a r s a h , v ó n r o g e n , d a h v a l a h , o r z a p , c v l , c a r s e d , a p o r s a l , q á s t a v a ,
 g a n f ú m a r a b ó m o n a h , g á s t a g e s , ó r d o l p h , n a q a s , o r g e m v a h , n o x a d .

Δ: And this is the late ende of the second page of the first leafe of this excellent boke. The other leaves are written, apart, in an other boke⁴⁰¹ as may appere. But with these 9 rowes and the former 41, doth arise the some of 50: which is one more then 49: Therefore I am not onely of this but of diuerse other imperfections yet remayning in this page, to ax the solution and reformation.

Δ: Whan I had told this my dowte to EK, he answered me that the first row of these last .50. before set downe, was the last of the first page of this first leafe: and true it is that in the first page were first sett down 48 rows, of which eight and fortith row begynneth with this word Amgédpha &c And therfore the next row following, (beginning with Arney vah nol gadeth &c) is the nyne and fortyth row of the first page and so the last row of that page: And therby allso the second page of the first leaf hath these 49 rowes here noted: And so is one dowte taken away: The other is of the numbers of words in some of the 49 rows of this second page.

⁴⁰¹ An other boke: British Library, Sloane manuscript 3189 contains the bulk of the angelic book. -Ed.

Aprilis 10. hor. 9.

Δ: As we wer talking of the Macedonian (the grecian), who yesterday cam with Mr. Sanford his letters, there appeared in the corner of my study a blak shadow: and I did charge that shaddow to declare who he was: There cam a voyce and sayd that it was the Macedonian: and abowt his hat was written in great letters this word,

Καταρτισμος, which EK wrote out and it signifieth maculosus,⁴⁰² or condemnatus⁴⁰³ &c. and the Voyce sayd, that word was sufficient

adding Est,⁴⁰⁴

Δ: God be thanked and prayed.

To me deliuered by Mr.

Edward Kelly

1583. Martij 22

Friday

Mr. Husy cam with

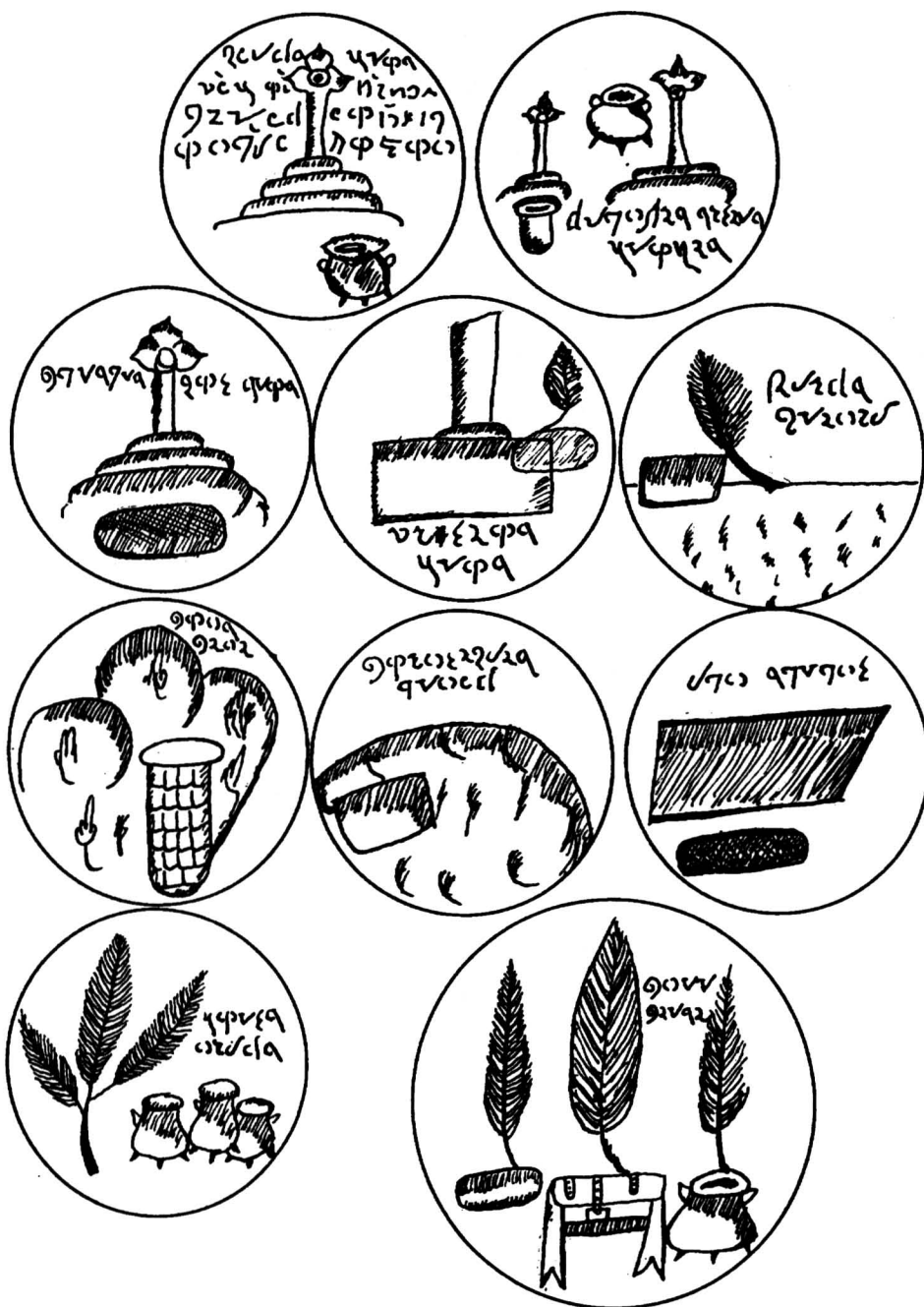
him from blokley⁴⁰⁵

⁴⁰² Polluted. -Ed.

⁴⁰³ In marg.: ~~firmus~~ ("strong"). condemnatus: "condemned." -Ed.

⁴⁰⁴ Est: "He is." -Ed.

⁴⁰⁵ This note is on the reverse side of the following diagram. -Ed.





Δ: After my comming home from the court abowt 4 of the clok after none, and after my being in my study a while, it cam into my hed to assay⁴⁰⁶ to deciphre the cifre which before is spoken of, and was browght me by EK,⁴⁰⁷ as he was willed to do. And at the first I was half out of all hope: but yet making many assayes, and gessing at it (at the length) to be latine, I fownd this to be the true Alfabet. God giving me the perseyverance.

[illegible]

⁴⁰⁷ They wer fownd at Huets Cross as the spirituall creature affirmed when he led them to the finding of this Moniment was & a boke of Magik & Alchimie. Perhaps that is the Cros called Huteos Cros being the fowrth of them below.

Tabula locorum rerum et Thesaurorum absconditorum Menaboni, mei Gordanili, militis, et Danaorum Principis, expulsi, multorumque aliorum clarissimorum (Britanie meridionali parte) virorum, contra eiusdem inhabitatores militantium: quam, hîc, familiarissimorum consensu, aliquando ad nostratium rediuntium commoditatem et auxilium abscondere et sepelire decreui: qua quidem intellecta, facile possunt ad lucem abscondita efferre.⁴⁰⁸

And the Notes of the ten places, here by, affixed: are thus to be red orderly:

1 Gilds cros hic o mer id io onali ot on	2 blankis ⁴⁰⁹ Suters croces	
3 Marsars got cros	4 Huteos cros	5 Fleds grenul
6 Mons Mene	7 Mountegles arnid	8 Lan sapant
9 Corts nelds		10 Mnrr ⁴¹⁰ Merse

⁴⁰⁸ Note J. Dee. The last being of the Danes here, was abowt the year 1040. (Tabula . . . efferre: “The table of places of things and hidden treasures of Menabon, my Gordanil, soldier and banished prince of the Danes, and of many other famous men [in the southern part of Britain], and of native soldiers who fought against the same. With the agreement of closest friends I decided to hide this away and bury it for the convenience and help of our countrymen who may return at some time. By this when understood, they can easily bring [lit. expose] the hidden to light.” -Ed.)

⁴⁰⁹ Of this ꝛ “k” I dowt yet.

⁴¹⁰ Δ fortè Marr.

Aprilis 15. Monday

Δ: As EK was writing the eighteenth leaf which was of the spirites of the earth, (in the after none abowt 4½ of the klok) he red a parcell therof, playnely & alowde to him self, and thereuppon suddenly at his syde appeared three or fowre spirituall creatures like laboring men, having spades in theyr hands & theyr heares hangyng abowt theyr eares, and hastyly asked EK what he wold have, & wherfor he called them. He answered that he called them not. & they replied, & sayed that he called them: Then I began to say, they lyed: for his intent was not to call them, but onely to read and repeat that which he had written: and that euery man who readeth a prayer to perceyue the sense thereof, prayeth not. No more, did he call them. And I bad them be packing out of the place: and thereuppon remoued from my desk (where I was ruling of paper for his writing) to the grene chayre which was by my Chymney: and presently he cryed out and sayd they had nipped him and broken his left arme by the wrest: and he shewed the bare arme and there appered both on the upper syde and lower side imprinted depe-in, two circles as broad as grotes⁴¹¹ thus:



very red: And I seeing that, sowght for a stik, and in the meane while, they assalted him, and he rose, and cryed to me (saying) they come fly-ing on me, they come; and he put the stole, which he sat on, betwene him and them. But still they cam gaping, or gyrning⁴¹² at him. Then I axed him where they were: and he poynted to the place: and then I toke the stik and cam to the place, and in the name of Jesus commaunded

⁴¹¹ Grotes: silver fourpence pieces used from the 14th to the 17th century. -Ed.

⁴¹² Gyrning: "snarling." -Ed.

those Baggagis to avoyde and smitt a cross stroke at them: and presently they avoyded.⁴¹³

All thanks be to the onely one Almighty, and everlasting God Whose name be prayed now & ever. Amen.

Aprilis 18⁴¹⁴. Thursday morning .hor. 8. Circiter

Δ: As EK cam to write-out the Tables according as he was wont: and to haue the letters appearing in the ayre hard by him, he saw nothing but a blak clowde seven-cornered. And after I had put the stone agayne into the frame,⁴¹⁵ and thereuppon did make long and oft request, for answer hauing, There appered nothing, neyther was anything seen in the stone. Then I fell to prayer agayn, and at length, there appeared written uppon, or yssuing out of the clowde, this sentence.

He promised, be not carful: Δ: Note here are iust 21 letters.⁴¹⁶

EK: The letters semed to stand at fingers endes, (being 21): and so euery finger had a letter on it: and the fingers semed to be placed at the Corners of the Heptagonall clowde: and as sone as the sentence was red the fingers which seemed to issue out of the Heptagonum, did shrink in agayn and disapere.

Δ: All laude honor and thanksgiving, be to the highest, our most louing mercifull and almighty God, now and euer. Amen.

⁴¹³ Avoyded: “departed.” -Ed.

⁴¹⁴ Note. Now 30 Tables being written since good friday: and days onely 21 passed since good friday.

⁴¹⁵ The stone out of the frame.

⁴¹⁶ Δ as who shold say, αὐτοῦς εἶπα, ipe dixit: nr Deus. -Δ. (Autos . . . Deus: “he said himself, ‘our God.’” -Ed.)

Thursday. Aprilis 18. after dynner

Δ: We being desirous to know the cause of this stay making, in the Tables shewing as before was accustomed; and now (24 leaves being written,) a dark clowde to hang in the place of a glorious boke, did greatly disquiet our myndes, and browght us in feare of some offence lately committed, by any one, or both of us, whereby the Indignation of the lord might be kingled against us. Hereuppon we prayed severally; and at length, (no alteration, or better Cumfert hapening to us,) I prayed in the hearing of EK, (by my desk, on my knees) in great agony of mynde; and Behold, there appeared one standing uppon, or rather somewhat behynde the Heptagonall clowde who sayd,

I am sent, to understand the cause of your greif, and to answer your dowtes.

Δ: I, then, declared my mynde breifly, according to the effect of my prayer. Whereunto he answered at large, reproving my appointing of god a tyme or to abridge the tyme spoken of: and among his manifold grave speeches he had these words,

Prepare all things,⁴¹⁷ For tyme is at hand.

His Justice is great; and his arme stronge.


How darest thou dowt or dreame, saying: Lo, God, this may be done in shorter time &c. But such is flesh.

Be rocks in faith.

It is not the manner of us, good Angels,⁴¹⁸ to be trubbled so oft.

⁴¹⁷ Prepare all things.

⁴¹⁸ Good Angels.

 At the time appointed, thou shalt practise: While sorrow shall be measured, thou shalt bynde up thy fardell.⁴¹⁹ Great is the light of Gods sinceritie. Appoint God no tyme. Fullfill that which is commaunded. God maketh clere whan it pleaseth him. Be you constant and avoyde Temptations: For True it is, that is sayde: And lastly I say,

It shall be performed.

What is it now thou woldest desyre to be made playner?

Δ: Still he proceded uppon my answers: and at length he sayd,

Neyther is the time of mans Justification known untyll he hath byn tried.⁴²⁰

You are chosen by God his mercy to an ende⁴²¹ and purpose: Which ende shall be made manifest by the first begynning in knowledg in these Mysteries.

God shall make clere whan it pleaseth him: & open all the secrets of wisdom whan he unlocketh. Therefore Seke not to know the mysteries of this boke, tyll the very howre⁴²² that he shall call thee. For then shall his powre be so full amongst you, that the flesh shall not be perceyued, in respect of his great glory.

But was there euer any, that tasted of gods mercies so assuredly, that wanted due reverence?⁴²³ Can you bow to Nature, and will not honor the workman? Is it not sayd, that this place is holy? What are the works of holines? I do aduertise you: for, God will be honored. Neyther will he be wrasted, in any thing he speaketh. Think not, that you could

⁴¹⁹ Fardel: "pack." -Ed

⁴²⁰ Tyme of Iustification known than.

⁴²¹ The ende of our election.

⁴²² Tyll the very howre.

⁴²³ Want of due reuerence using in our actions is reproved.

speake or talk with me, unleast I did greatly abase my self, in taking uppon me so unlikely a thing in forme, as to my self, &c.⁴²⁴ But he doth this not for your causes, not for your deserts, but for the Glorie of his owne name.

One is not to be lightened, but all. And, which all? The two fethered fowle together with the Capitayn.

Ask What thow wilt: for, untill the 40 dayes⁴²⁵ be ended, shalt thow haue no one more shew of us.

Δ: Whether shall we give Cownsayle, or consent to the Captayne⁴²⁶ to go down into his Cuntry, as, presently he entendeth.

Ur:—As he listeth. Δ: EK sayd that this was Uriel who now had appered and answered all this.

Ur:—I will ask thee one question. Haue we any voyce or no?

Δ: I do think you haue no organs or instruments apt for voyce: but are mere spirituall and nothing corporall: but that you haue the powre and property from god to insinuate your message or meaning to eare or eye, in such sort as mans Imagination shall be, that both they here and see you sensibly.

Ur:—We haue no voyce but a full noyce that filleth euery place:⁴²⁷ which whan you ones taste of, Distance shall make no separation. Let there one come that may better answer: not in respect of thy self but one, more nerer to thy estate.⁴²⁸—Do thy Duty.

Δ: He sayd this, to one who cam in, and he departed him self.

Δ: This new come Creature sayd, Wold you haue any thing with me, Il?⁴²⁹

⁴²⁴ Angels abase themselues, to pleasure man by theyr instructions, when they tak uppon them, or use any sensible evidence of themselves or voyces, &c.

⁴²⁵ 40 dayes.

⁴²⁶ A.G. -Δ. (Adrian Gilbert. -Ed.)

⁴²⁷ Vox angelorum.

⁴²⁸ Uriel putteth one into his place.

⁴²⁹ Il or El.

Δ: Who art thou: Art thou one that loveth and honoreth our Creator?

Il: Will you see my hart?—EK: He openeth his body and sheweth his hart: and thereon appeared written EL.

Δ: He seemed to be a very merry Creature, and skipped here and there, his apparell was like as of a vye in a play: and so was his gesture⁴³⁰ and his scoffing, as the outward shew thereof was to be vulgarly⁴³¹ demed: but I did carefully ponder the pith of the words which he spake: and so forbore to write very much which he spake at the beginning by reason EK did so much mislike him, and in a manner took him to be an Illuder.

Δ: As you are appointed to answer us by the Messenger of God, so answer us, (who desire pure and playne verity,) as may be correspondent to his Credit that assigned you, and to the honor of God who Created us.

Il:—My answer is Threefold:⁴³²—I answer by gesture, by my apparel, & will answer thee by my wordes.

Δ: Do you know where the Arabik booke⁴³³ is that I had: which was written in tables and numbers?⁴³⁴

Il:—It is in Scotland:—A minister hath it; it is nothing worth. The booke conteyneth fals and illuding Witchcrafts. All lawde honor and prayse be to the One and everlasting God: for ever and ever.⁴³⁵

Δ: The Lord Threasorer,⁴³⁶ hath he, any bookes belonging to Soyga?
Il:—He hath none: but certayn Introductions to all artes.

Δ: But it was reported to me by this Skryer⁴³⁷ that he had: certayn

⁴³⁰ Gesture: “general behavior.” -Ed.

⁴³¹ Vulgarly: “commonly.” -Ed.

⁴³² Note, Threfold answer.

⁴³³ Liber Arabicus. -Δ. (“Arabic book.” -Ed.)

⁴³⁴ This probably does not refer to the book *Soyga*. -Ed.

⁴³⁵ EK he Kneleth down.

⁴³⁶ Lord Treasurer: William Cecil, Lord Burghley. -Ed.

⁴³⁷ Note.

peculier bokes perteyning to Soyga: otherwise named ysoga, and Agyos, literis transpositis.⁴³⁸

Il:—Soyga signifieth not Agyos. Soyga alca miketh.

Δ: What signifieth those wordes? The true measure of the Will of God in iudgment which is by Wisdome.

Δ: What language is that, I pray you? Il:—A language towght in Paradise.⁴³⁹

Δ: To whome? Il:—By infusion, to Adam. Δ: To whome did Adam use it? Il:—Unto Chevah.⁴⁴⁰ Δ: Did his posteritie use the same?

Il:—Yea, untyll the Ayrie Towre⁴⁴¹ was destroyed.

Δ: Be there any letters of that language yet extant among us mortall men?

Il: that there be. Δ: Where are they? Il:—ô, syr, I shall make you in loue with your Masterships boke.

Δ: Did Adam write any thing in that language? Il:—That is no question.

Δ: Belike than, they were deliuered from one to an other by tradition or els Enoch⁴⁴² his boke, or prophesie, doth, or may seme, to be written in the same language: bycause mention is made of it in the new Testament in Jude his Epistle where he hath, Prophetauit autem de his Septimus ab Adam, Enoch, dicens, Ecce venit Dominus in sanctis milibus suis, facere iudicium contra omnes, et arguere omnes impios, de omnibus operibus impietatis eorum, quibus impiè egerunt, et de omnibus duris, quæ locuti sunt contra Deum peccatores impij &c.⁴⁴³

⁴³⁸ In Sloane 3677, Ashmole notes: "1674 The Duke of Lauderdale hath a folio MS which was Dr. Dees with these words in the first page, Aldaraia sive Soyga vocor." Literis transpositis: "by transposing the letters." -Ed.

⁴³⁹ The language towght in Paradise.

⁴⁴⁰ Eve. -Ed.

⁴⁴¹ The Tower of Babel. See Genesis 11. -Ed.

⁴⁴² Enoch.

Il:—I must distinguish with you. Before the flud, the spirit of God was not utterly obscured in man. Theyr memories were greater, theyr understanding more clere, and theyr traditions, most, unsearchable.⁴⁴⁴ Nothing remayned of Enoch but (and if it pleas your mastership) mowght haue byn carryed in a cart. I can not bring you the brass, but I can shew you the bokes. Slepe 28⁴⁴⁵ dayes, and you shall fynde them, under your pillow whan you do rise.

Δ: As concerning Esdras bokes,⁴⁴⁶ which are missing, what say you?

Il: The prophets of the Jues⁴⁴⁷ haue them. Δ: But we can hardly trust any thing in the Jues hands, concerning the pure veritie: They are a stiff necked people and dispersed all the world ouer.

Il:—I will shew you a trik. Δ: He lifted up his fote, and shewed the sole of his shoo: and there appeared the picture of a man, who seemed to haue a skorf or fowle skynne on his face: which one toke of: and then there appered on his forhed these two figures, 88.⁴⁴⁸

I will shew you more then that, to: and will speak to a man shortly, that shall bring Water to wash euery mans face.

Δ: What mean you, by euery man? Shall all men, be made cleane?

Il:—There is a difference in washing of faces.

EK: This creature seemeth to be a Woman⁴⁴⁹ by his face: his appar-

⁴⁴³ Jude 14–15: “Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, to execute judgement upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him.” This is quoted from 1 Enoch 1:9. See James H. Charlesworth, ed., *The Old Testament Pseudepigrapha*, vol. 1 (New York: Doubleday, 1983), pp. 12–13. -Ed.

⁴⁴⁴ Note: excellent Memories, for Traditions contynuing and preseruing.

⁴⁴⁵ Δ forte: 18. Note, 28 dayes more do make iust the 40 dayes, before notified.

⁴⁴⁶ Esdras bokes. -Δ. See II Esdras 14.37 ff. -Ed.

⁴⁴⁷ The Jues.

⁴⁴⁸ Δ this might seme to signifie the calling home of the Jues, A^o. 1588 to come.

ell semeth to be like a Vice⁴⁵⁰ in a play.

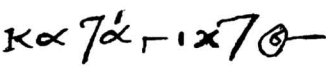
EK: Ar you not a Kinsman to Syngolla?


Il: I syr, and so are you a kinsman to Synfulla.

Δ: A man may finde corn in chaf.

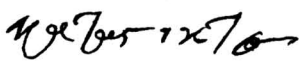
Il:—So may you (perchaunce) finde me an honest man in my ragged clothes.

Δ: This other day, whan I was in dowl of the Grecian (the Macedonian) whether he had any good and profownd lerning or no, he was represented spiritually, and abowt his hat in great letters was writ-

ten this greke word  : I pray you what doth it

signifie? I axed the grecian and he sayd,  Il: Loke in

your boke. Δ: I toke the common lexicon: and he sayd: No Not that: Then I axed if I shold take phauorinus his lexicon:⁴⁵¹ and he answered, Nor that. And I axed which then: and he sayd your boke covered with a white parchment: and I axed, that of Munsteris of Latine greke and hebrue? And he sayd, yea: and there you shall finde that Maculosus

hath onely that one word  longing to it. I loked & so fownd it: which satisfyed me very well.

Δ: I pray you what say you of Gariladrah;⁴⁵² do you know him? Who long sins⁴⁵³ did deale with me?

⁴⁴⁹ Note, El semed to be woman.

⁴⁵⁰ Vice: “a character playing one of the vices in a morality play; jester.” -Ed.

⁴⁵¹ Varinus Phavorinus, *Lexicon græcum* (Rome, 1523). -Ed.

⁴⁵² Gariladrah.

⁴⁵³ Since. -Ed.

Il:—Yf he were lesser then I, I durst speak to him: But bycause he is greater then I, I am not to speak to him. All under, and nothing above me, I deale.

Loke in your Tables and there you shall finde an other name of his.

Δ: I remember no such thing. Il:—Consider who hath set me here.⁴⁵⁴ Yf the Truth thow hast allready, be of a greater then my self, then is it sufficient. Δ: What day was that name given me?

Il:—Immediately, sir, after your⁴⁵⁵ Worships last coming.

Δ: That was Raphaël: And I remember that Gariladrah sayd that he must leave me and his better, (Raphael) shuld be my instructor, and that then the same Raphael was in my hed then. &c.

Δ: Sing a song to his prayse, who created us.

Il: I will sing a short song.

Your doings are of GOD: your calling great:

Go down and seke the Threisor,⁴⁵⁶ and you shall obteyn it.

Take no care: for, this Boke shall be done in 40 dayes.⁴⁵⁷

Begyn to practise in August.⁴⁵⁸ Serue god before.

You shall know all thing, ictu oculi.⁴⁵⁹

And so, prayse, glory, and eternall singing
with incessant humilitie be unto thee, Creator that
hath framed, made and Created all things, for
euer and euer, Now say you (yf you will).

Amen. Δ: Amen Amen Amen.

⁴⁵⁴ That was Uriel. Vide pag. precedent. -Δ. ("See the previous page." -Ed.)

⁴⁵⁵ He pointed to EK.

⁴⁵⁶ Thesaurus absconditus. -Δ. ("Hidden treasure." -Ed.)

⁴⁵⁷ 40 dayes.

⁴⁵⁸ August.

⁴⁵⁹ Knowledge to be infused Ictu Oculi. -Δ. (Ictu Oculi: "with a stroke(or ray) of the eye." -Ed.)

Il: After the ende of 40 dayes, go down for the Threisor.⁴⁶⁰ Whan those 40 dayes are done,⁴⁶¹ than this boke shall be finished. The rest of the time untyll August,⁴⁶² is for rest, labor, and prayer.

Δ: What labor? Il:—In digging up of those Threasors.

Δ: Must we nedes dig for them? Il:—Otherwise, yf thow wilt.

Δ: How, I pray you? For to dig without lycence⁴⁶³ of the Prince, is dangerous by reason of the lawes: and to ax licence, is half an odious sute.

Il:—Yf thow haue a parcell or part out of euery place of the erth, in any small quantitie, thow mayst work by the Creatures, whose powre it is to work in such causes: which **will bring** it (neuer trust me) before you can tell twenty.⁴⁶⁴

Δ: He meaneth, Neuer trust him, if it be not so, as he hath sayd.

Il:—No, neuer trust me, if it be not so:

Δ: You mean those ten places, marked in the Table, which, last day, I deciphred.⁴⁶⁵

Il:—I mary,⁴⁶⁶ now you hit it. Yea sir, and your chest allso,⁴⁶⁷ it wold do no hurt. Give me one: and I will make 40: and give you twenty and take twenty to my self: and whan you haue it, I pray you let me haue some little portion for my wife and children.

Δ: As concerning that Chest, I pray you how cam the Macedonian, or Mr Sanford to know of it, so particularly, as he did?

⁴⁶⁰ Thesaurus abs.

⁴⁶¹ 40.

⁴⁶² Note: till August.

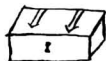
⁴⁶³ Lycence, licence: "legal permission." -Ed.

⁴⁶⁴ Without digging.

⁴⁶⁵ Ten places.

⁴⁶⁶ Mary: a mild oath. -Ed.

⁴⁶⁷ The chest.



Il:—Husey told of it, openly, at the bord at braynford⁴⁶⁸ in the hearing of diuerse. The Grecian will seke him oute. The Greke in grecia perhaps can finde out Threasure, but not in Anglia.⁴⁶⁹ The Greke hath a Threasure in his hed, that will enriche him to be a fole. I was yesterday at London, I met with a blak dyer. He had a cupple of rings, that wold giue better instructions. Your Chymney here will speak agaynst you anon:⁴⁷⁰ yet I am no brik layer.⁴⁷¹ I must be gone.

Δ: God, for his infinite mercyes be allwayes prayed, glorified, and extolled of all his Creatures. Amen.

He advised EK to communicate to me the boke, and the powder, and so all the rest of the roll,⁴⁷² which was there fownd: saying, True frends use not to hide any thing eche from other.

Δ: An old proverb it is. Amicorum omnia comunia.

Unde, Deo soli omnis exhibeatur
Laus honor et gloria.⁴⁷³
Amen.

Note: There followeth Quinti Libri Mysteriorum Appendix.⁴⁷⁴

⁴⁶⁸ Braynford: “Brentford.” -Ed.

⁴⁶⁹ Grecia: “Greece”; Anglia: “England.” -Ed.

⁴⁷⁰ Anon: “soon.” -Ed.

⁴⁷¹ Δ True it is, I had hidden there, in a capcase the recordes of my doings with Saule & other &c.

⁴⁷² The boke, The powder, the rest of the roll. -Δ. This is the so-called *Book of Saint Dunstan*. -Ed.

⁴⁷³ Amicorum . . . gloria: “Everything is shared between friends; therefore, to God alone are offered all praise, honor, and glory.” -Ed.

⁴⁷⁴ Quinti Libri Mysteriorum Appendix: “Appendix to the Fifth Book of the Mysteries.” -Ed.

Quinti libri
Mysteriorum

Appendix

Aprilis 20.—Saturday

Δ: This satterday had byn great and eger pangs betwene EK and me: while he wold utterly discredit the whole process of our actions: as, to be done by evill and illuding spirites: seking his destruction: saying that he hath often here to fore byn told things true, but of illuding diuells: and Now, how can this be other, than a mockery, to haue a cornerd dark clowd to be shewed him in steade of the playn writing, which hitherto he had written out of? and that whan they shold do good in dede that then they shrank from us: and that he was not thus to leese¹ his time: But that he is to study, to lerne some knowledge, whereby he may liue: and that he was a cume² to my howse, and that he dwelled here as in a prison; that it wer better for him to be nere Cotsall playne where he might walk abroad, without danger or to be cumbred³ or vexed with such sklaunderous fellows as yesterday he was, with one litte Ned dwelling at the blak raven in Westminster: who rayled at⁴ him for bearing witnes of a bargayn made betwene the same Ned (or Edward) and one Lush a Surgien, who was now falln in poverty, a very honest man &c: With a great deale of more matter; melancholik, and cross overthwartly to the good and patient using of our selues to the accomplishing of this action. I replyed, and sayd, that we might finde our selfs answered on thursday, as, That God wold clere when it pleased him: and that we were not to appoint God a time to performe his mysteries and mercies in; shorter then he hath spoken of: And that undowtedly, the occasion of this blak clowd, was some imperfection of oures, to be amended and that then, all wold be to our further cumfort. And as concerning his dowting the goodnes of the Creatures, (dealing


¹ Lease: "occupy." -Ed.

² In Sloane 3677, EA reads "cumber." -Ed.

³ Cumbred: "obstructed." -Ed.

⁴ Railed at: "verbally abused." -Ed.

with us) he was to blame, to say or dowl the tree to be yll that bringeth furth good frute: for of these creatures, from the begynning of theyr dealing with us unto the last howre,

 we never hard other than the prayse of god, instructions and exhortations to humilitie, patience, constancy, fayth &c. The things they promise be such as god can performe, and is for his servyce and glory to performe: and such as haue byn imparted to man before: and therefore neyther impossible for man to enioye agayne, nor unmete for us to hope for: and thowgh his trubbled mynde did dowl, yet my quiet mynde, which god hath made ioyfull throwgh his mercyes, and which accuseth me not in this action of any ambition, hypocrisie, or disorderly longing, but onely is bent and settled in awayting the Lord his helping hand to make me wise for his servyce, (according as long tyme my daylie prayer to him hath byn): and seing I haue and do ax wisdom⁵ at the lord his hands, and put my trust in him, he will not suffer me to be so confownded: nether will he offer a stone to his seely children, when in tyme of nede they ax bred at his hands: besides that, *Voluntatem timentium se faciet deus*:⁶ and (by his graces) I feare him so, and am so carefull to do that shold pleas him, that I make no accownt of all this world possessing, unleast I might enioye his fauor, his mercies and graces. And whereas he complayned of want, I sayd my want is greater than his: for I was in det allmost 300 pownds,⁷ had a greater charge than he; and yet for all my 40 yeres course of study, many hunderd pownds spending, many hundred myles travayling, many an incredible toyle and forcing of my will in study using to lerne or to bowlt out some good thing, &c. Yet for all this I wold be very

⁵ Sapientia. -Δ. ("Wisdom." -Ed.)

⁶ *Voluntatem . . . deus*: "He fulfils the desire of all who fear God" (misquoting Psalm 145:19). -Ed.

⁷ £s 300 det.

well pleased to be deferred yet longer, (a yere or more,) and to go up and down England clothed in a blanket, to beg my bred, so that I might, at the ende be assured to atteyn to godly wisdome, whereby to do God some service for his glory. And to be playne, that I was res-olued, eyther willingly to leave this world presently that, so, I might in spirit enioye the bottomles fowntayne of all wisdome, or els to pass furth my dayes on earth with gods favor and assurance of enjoyng here his mercifull mighty blessings, to understand his mysteries, mete for the performing of true actions, such as myght sett furth his glory, so, as it might be evident and confessed, that such things wer done *Dextera Domini*.⁸ And many other discourses and answers I made unto his obiections and dowtes: Afterward [A meridie] I began to speak of the trubbles and misery foreshewed to be nere at hand, and by that tyme I had entred a little into the Consideration & talk of the matter, he appered that sayd he was called El or Il⁹, and sayd,

----- Now to the matter.

Δ: What matter?

Il:—I must have a Wallet to carry your witt and myne own in.

Δ: *Benedictus qui venit in nomine domini*.¹⁰

Il:—Then I perceyue that I shall haue a blessing. Blessed is the physitian that hath care of his patient, before the pangs of death doth viset him.

Δ: —What think you of that cloudy Heptagonum?

Il:—Dost thou consider, I go about it? I told thee, euery thing I did, was an Instruction. As I can not stand stedfastly uppon this, (it self one, and one, perfect:) so can not my mowth declare, much lesse speak, that you may comprehend it, what this is whereuppon I go.

⁸ *Dextera Domini*: “from the right hand of the Lord.” -Ed.

⁹ Il: the first of the 7 sonns of sonns of light. -Δ (HM).

¹⁰ *Benedictus . . . Domini*: “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.” -Ed.

EK: He went on the Heptagonon, as one might go on the top of a turning whele: (Δ: as some horses use to turne wheles as may appere in Georgius Agricola¹¹ de re metallica).

Il:—I know, what all your talk hath byn: But such myndes, such Infection, such Infection, such corruption: and must nedes haue a potion appliable for the cure. But how will you do? I haue forgotten all my droggs behinde me. But since I know that some of you are well stored with sufficient oyntments, I do entend to viset you onely with theyr help. You see, all my boxes ar empty?—EK: He sheweth, a great bundell of empty potichayre¹² boxes, and they seme to my hearing to rattle.

Δ: How commeth it, that you pretend to come from a favorable diuine powre to pleasure us, and your boxes ar empty.

Il:—You sayd euen now in your talk, Iouis omnia plena:¹³ yf my empty boxes be vertuous, how much more shall any thing be, which I bring not empty?

Δ: Then I pray you, to say somewhat of the vertue of your empty boxes, bycause we may haue the better confidence of your fullnes.

Il: Will you haue my bill? Δ: Shall we go to the Apothecaries, with your Bill?

Il: I will shew it: Serve it, where you list.

Iudra galgol astel.

Δ: You know we, understand it not: how can it be serued?

Il:—You must nedes haue an expositor. What boke of physik is that, that lyeth by you?

¹¹ 1494–1555 German mineralogist and author. -Ed.

¹² Potichayre: “apothecary (?)” -Ed.

¹³ Iouis omnia plena: “Jove fills all,” from Virgil’s *Eclogues*, III., 60, repeated in Giovanni Pontano’s astronomical poem *Urania siue de stellis*, Lib. I.628. Note that Pontano is cited by Philip Sidney in his *Defence of Poesia* (London: Dent 1595; Rutland, VT: Tuttle, 1997). -Ed.

[Δ: There lay by me on my desk, Marcus Heremita de Lege spirituali¹⁴ in greke and latine but the latine translation lay open before, on the left side of which, the sentence began: Non raro per negligentiam, quæ circa alicuius rei operationem comittitur, etiam Cognito obscuratur.¹⁵ And on the right side, began: Corpus sine mente nihil potest perficere¹⁶ &c.]

Il:—Mary here is good physik in dede. You fownd my name the other day. Go to my name [Δ: So I turned to the second boke and browght sigillum Æmeth: and there chose the Word Ilemese. He than axed me, which letter of this name I liked best, and I sayd, L: bycause it conteyned the name representing God: El, &c. Then he sayd somewhat farder of the letters, which I wrote not.

Il:—Go to great M, the second: for this is it that shall serue his turne. Yf this can not serue him, he shall haue a medicine, that a horse can not abyde. Use this, and I warrant you, your blindenes will be gone.¹⁷

Δ: It is here, greatly, to be Noted: that I turned in this boke of Marcus, 27 leaues further: tyll I cam to the Quaternio of M, the second and there I fownd this sentence notified (by my lines drawn, and a Note in the margent Cor Contritum): Sine corde contrito impossibile est omnino liberari a malitia et vilijs. Conterit autem cor tripartita temperantia somni dico et cibi, et corporalis licentiæ. Cæterum horum excessus et abundantia voluptatem generat. Voluptas autem prauas cogitationes ingerit repugnat verò præcationi et convenienti Cogitationi.¹⁸

¹⁴ De Lege Spiritualis: “concerning the spiritual law.” -Ed.

¹⁵ Non raro . . . obscuratur: “Furthermore, knowledge is obscured not rarely, through negligence, which is committed in the working of anything.” -Ed.

¹⁶ Corpus . . . perficere: “Body without mind, achieves nothing . . .” -Ed.

¹⁷ A remedy for the blyndness of EK at this instant.

¹⁸ And so many dayes yet wanted of the 40, yf we accownt from the 6 day of Aprill: but if from the tyme of the begynning I wrote them, then there wanteth not so

Δ: This being considered by us, we ceased and this instant and thanked God of his mercies, that it wold pleas him to make us understand some iust cause whie clowdes now appeared in stede of brightnes &c.

Soli Deo omnis honor laus et gloria.¹⁹ Amen.

Aprilis 23. Tuesday. mane hor. 8.

Δ: After our prayer iointly, and my long prayer, at my desk requesting God to deale with us, so, as might be most for his glory, in his mercies: not according to our deserts, and frowardnes: &c. At length appeared in the stone a white clowde, seven-cornered. And behinde the Clowde a Thunder seemed to yssue.

A Voice: Whan I gathered you, you were chosen of the myddest of Iniquitie:²⁰ Whome I haue clothed with garments made and fashioned with my owne hand.—I, AM, Therefore, Beleue:

Δ: I prayed, and thanked the highest, that so mercifully regarded our miserie.

A Voice: I, AM.

EK: Now standeth Uriel uppon the clowde, and semeth to loke downward and kneled, saying,

Æternitie, Maiestie, Dominion and all powre, in heuen the earth,

much as 9 or 10 dayes. -Δ. Cor Contritum . . . Cogitationi: “Contrite heart): Without a contrite heart it is impossible to be completely freed of malice and inferiority. And so I say, the heart crushes the threefold temperance of sleep, food, and bodily license. An excess and abundance of these others creates pleasure, but pleasure brings on distorted thoughts and in fact hinders prayer and proper thought.” -Ed.

¹⁹ Soli . . . gloria: “To God alone be all honor, praise, and glory.” -Ed.

²⁰ Nos. -Δ. (“We/Us.” -Ed.)

and in the secret partes below, is thyne, thyne, yea thyne; and to none els due, but unto thee: whose mercies are infinite, which respectest the glorie of thy owne name, above the frowardnes, and perversnes of mans nature: which swarmeth with synnes, and is couered with Iniquitie: and in the which, there is fownde no place free from filthynes and abhominacion. Glorie be to thee; ô, all powre: and magnified be thou, in the workmanship of thy own hands, from time to time, and with out ende of time, from generation to generation: and euen amidst and in the number of those, for whome thou hast prepared the flowres of thy æternall Garland.

Beare with them (ô lord) for thy mercyes sake. For, woldest thou seeke . . .²¹ in the myddest of miserie? Whom yf thou sholdest iudge according to thy iustice, How shold thy Name be glorified so in thy self, to thy own determination, and writing, sealed before the Creation of the Worldes? The fire of thy Justice consumeth thyne own seat; and in thee, is no powre wanting, whan it pleaseth thee, to cast down, and gather them to gither, as the wynde doth the Snow, and in-hemme them with the mowntaynes, that they may not arrise to synne. But What thou art, thou art: and what thou wilt, thou canst.

Amen.

Δ: Amen.

Ur:—I haue measured time (sayth the lord) and it is so: I haue appointed to the heauens theyr course, and they shall not pass it. The synnes of man shall decay, in despite of the enemy: But the fire of æternitie shall neuer be quenched, nor neuer fayle. More, then is, can not, nor may not be sayde. We can not be Wittnesses to him which wittneseth of him self.

²¹ Δ Here I mist the hering of a word or more.



Nota et
Caue

But (this sayeth the Lord), Beholde yf you trouble me ones more, or towche the wings of my excellency, before I shall move my self, I will raze you from the earth, as children of perdition and will endue those that are of quiet myndes, with the strength of my powre.²² You are not faithfull, sayeth the lorde whome you beleue not. Notwithstanding I haue hardened the hart of One of you, yea, I haue hardened him as the flynt, and burnt him to gither with the ashes of a Cedar: to the entent he may be proued iust in my work, and great in the strength of my Glory. Neyther shall his mynde consent to the wyckednes of Iniquitie. For, from Iniquitie I haue chosen him,²³ to be a first erthely witnes of my Dignitie.²⁴

Your words are, yet, not offensiue unto God: Therfore, will not we, be offended at any thing that is spoken: For it must be done²⁵ and shall stand; yea and in the number which I haue allready chosen.

Note



But, this sayeth the Lord: Yf you use me like worldlings I will suerly stretch out my arme uppon you, and that heuily.²⁶ Lastly, I say,

²² Nota et Caue -Δ. ("Note this and beware." -Ed.)

²³ Election confirmed.

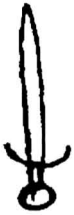
²⁴ One of us is by the Lord confirmed in constant purpose.

²⁵ Δ I think "sayeth the Lord" is forgotten here.

²⁶ Note.

{ Be Faithfull,
Honor God truely.
Beleue him hartily.

EK: He kneleth down, and semeth to pray.—Now he standeth up.



Note

Ur: Lo, As a number increasing is allwayes bigger: so in this world decreasing, the Lord must be mightily glorified. Striue not with God: But receyue, as he imparteth.²⁷ The Mercy of my message, quencheth the obscuritie and dullnes of your sowles: I mean of the Infection, wherewithall they are poysoned. Lo, how the Earth cryeth vengeance.²⁸ Come, for thy Glory sake, it is tyme. Amen.

Δ: Seing it is sayd that in 40 dayes the boke shalbe finished and seing it is sayed that our former Instructors shall not come nor appeare to us tyll the boke be finished: And seing here to fore the boke used to appere to EK, that he might write, whan so euer he bent him self therto: and seing the same boke appeareth not so now: and seing we are desyrous to be fownd diligent in this work, and to omitt no Opportunitie wherein the writing therof might be furdred: We wold gladly know; What token, or warning shall be giuen us, henceforward, whan due tyme serueth for the same purpose.

Ur:—Dy in the folly: I haue sayde.

EK: It thundreth and lightneth abowt the clowde: and now all is vanished away.

Δ: EK sayd, that at the very begynning of this days action, when he

²⁷ Note.

²⁸ Vengeance cryed for.

expressed the first Voyce (this day), hard of him, his belly did seame to him, to be full of fyre: and that he thowght veryly, that his bowells did burne: And that he loked downward toward his leggs, to see if any thing appeared on fire: calling to his mynde, the late chance that befell to the Adulterous man and woman by Sainct Brydes church in London &c. Allso that whan he had made an ende, he thowght his belly to be wyder, and enlarged, muche more then it was before.

Δ: I sayde certayn prayers to the Almightye our God and most mercifull father, on my knees; and EK on his knees likewise, answered diuerse times, Amen.

After this, we made AG. to understand these the mercies of the Highest: and he reioyced greatly, and praysed the Lorde. And, so EK, was fully satisfyed of his Dowtes: And AG, and he, were reconciled of the great discorde which, yesterday, had byn betwene them, &c.

Non nobis, Domine, Non nobis,
sed nomini tuo Gloriam omnem
Laudem et honorem damus, et
dabimus in perpetuum.²⁹
Amen.

Aprilis 26. Fryday

Δ

NOTE

Δ: By the prouidence of god, and Mr Gilbert his meanes, and pacifying of EK his vehement passions and pangs, he cam agayn to my howse: and my wife very willing, and quietted in mynde, and very frendely to

²⁹ Non nobis . . . perpetuum: "Not for ourselves, O Lord, not for ourselves, but for the glory of your name, we give and we will give all praise and honor, forever" (Psalm 115:1). -Ed.

EK in Word, and cowntenance: and a new pacification on all partes confirmed: and all uppon the Confidence of God his serveyce, to be faythfully and cherfly intended, and followed in and by our actions, through the grace and mercy of the highest.

1583. Aprilis 28. Sunday. after Dynner about 4 of the klok.

Δ: As I and EK had diuerse talks and discourses of Transposition of letters: and I had declared him my rule for to know certaynly how many wayes, any number of letters (propownded,) might be transposed or altered in place or order: Behold, suddenly appered, the Spirituall Creature, Il, and sayd,

Il:—Here is a goodly disputation of transposition of letters. Chuse, whether you will dispute with me, of Transposition, or I shall lerne you.

Δ: I had rather lerne then dispute. And first I think, that those letters of our Adamicall Alphabet haue a due peculier unchangeable proportion of theyr formes,—and likewise that theyr order is allso Mysticall.

Il:—These letters³⁰ represent the Creation of man: and therfore they must be in proportion. They represent the Workmanship wherewithall the sowle of man was made like unto his Creator. But I understand you shall haue a paynter shortly.

Δ: —I pray you, what paynter may best serve for the purpose? Can master Lyne serue the turn well?

Il: Dost thou think that God can be glorified in hell, or can diuells dishonor him? Can Wickednes of a paynter, deface the mysteries of God? The truth is, I am come to aduertise you, least with a small error you be led, far, asyde.

³⁰ The mysticall Alphabet.

Let me see the forme of your Table.³¹

Δ: —I shewed him the Characters and words which were to be paynted rownd about in the border of the Table.

Il:—How do you like those letters? Δ: I know not well what I may say. For, perhaps, that which I shuld like, wer not so to lyked: and contrarywise what I shold think well of, might be nothing worth.

Il:—Thow sayest wel.

Behold, great is the fauor and mercy of God toward those whome he fauoreth. All things are perfect but onely that: Neyther what that shewed or deliuered by any good and perfect messenger from God. A wicked powre did intrude him self;³² not onely into your societie, but allso into the Workmanship of Gods mysteries. Sathan dare presume to speak of the Almighty. Those Characters are diuinish: and a secret band of the Diuell. But, this sayeth the lord, I will rayse them up, whom he hath ouerthrown: and blott oute his fotesteps where they resist my glorie. Neyther will I suffer the faithfull to be led utterly awry: nor finally permit darkness to enhemme them for euer. He sayth, I AM, and they³³ are most untrue. But behold. I haue browght thee the truth: that the Prince of reason, God of understanding may be apparent in euery part of his Cælestiall demonstration. Therefore, as thow saydst unto me ones,

So say I now to thee: Serue god.

Make a square,³⁴ of 6 ynches euery way. The border therof let it be (here) but, half an inche: but on the Table it self, let it be an inche broad.³⁵

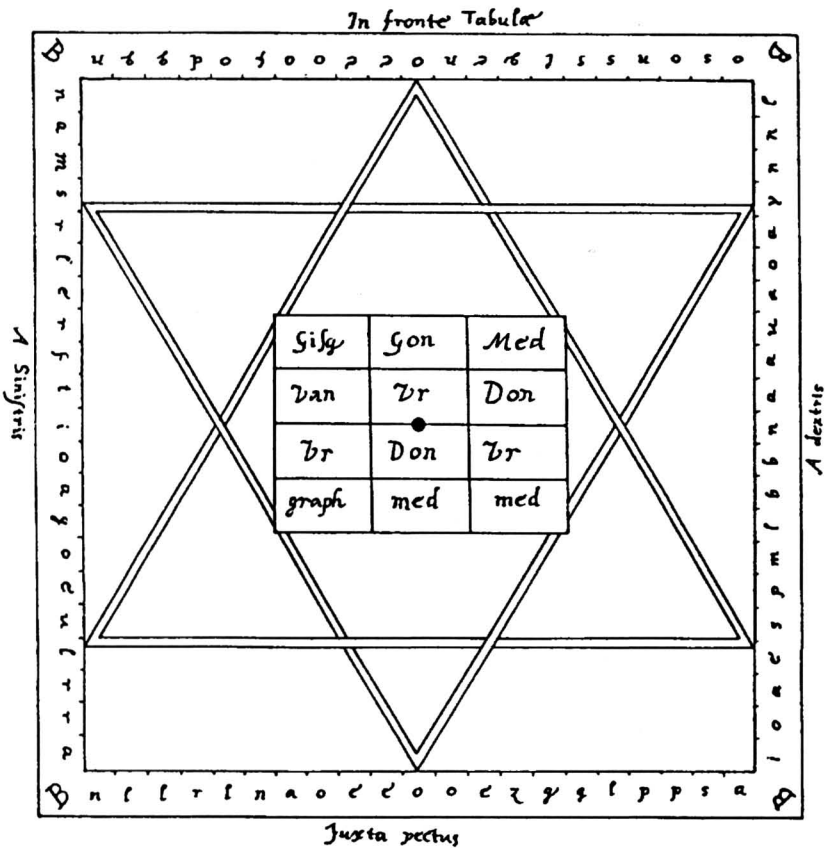
³¹ The Table of Practise.

³² Illuding spirits thrusting in themselues.

³³ I understand that the characters are most untrue.

³⁴ Δ The Inner square, of 6 ynches.

³⁵ Δ vide post foliam, et etiam in Tabula cordis carnis et cutis, nam in lineis defendentibus, ibidem habes hanc tabula hic incipiendo sed in primo omittendo l et



Euery one of those sides must haue 21 Characters: But, first, at euery corner make a great B.

Prayer is the key of all good things:

Δ: After our prayers made, EK had sight (in the stone) of innumerable letters and after a little while, they wer browght into a lesser square and fewer letters. First appered in the border opposite to our standing place, (which I haue used to call, in fronte Tabulæ) these letters following, beginning at the right hand, and proceeding toward the left.

accipiendo o. (“See on the next sheet, and also in the table of the heart, flesh, and skin, for in the surrounding lines, you have this table here commencing the same, but omitting ‘l’ at the start, and gaining ‘o’.”) Note: This note is written inverted above the diagram in very small script. There is a hand pointing to the first “o” in the top border. In fronte tabulæ: “in front of the table”; a sinistris: “on the left”; a dextra: “on the right”; iuxta pectus: “next to the chest.” -Ed.

1 ³⁶	2 ³⁸	3 ³⁹	4 ⁴⁰
Med	drux	drux	gon
fam	un	ur	med
med	tal	ur	un
drux	fam	don	graph
fam	don	ur	fam
fam	ur	drux	mals
ur	graph	un	tal
ged	don	med	ur
graph	or	graph	pa
drux	gisg	graph	pa
med	gon	med	drux
graph	med	med	un
graph	un	graph	un
<u>tal</u> ³⁷	ged	ceph	van
med	med	ged	un
or	graph	ged	med
med	van	ur	un
gal	ur	mals	gon - with a prik
ged	don	mals	drux
ged	don	fam	drux
drux	un	un	ur

³⁶ In fronte Tabulae. ("In front of the table" -Ed.)

³⁷ Fortè med. ("Perhaps 'med'" -Ed.)

³⁸ A sinistris. ("To the left." -Ed.)

³⁹ Juxta pectus. ("Next to the chest." -Ed.)

⁴⁰ A dextris. ("To the right." -Ed.)

Il: What haue you in the myddle of your Tablet? Δ: Nothing.

Il: **Sigillum Emeth, is to be sett there.**

Il: The rest, after supper.

Δ: Soli Deo Omnipotenti sit laus perennis.⁴¹

Amen.

After supper, retorning to our businesse, I first dowed of the heds of the letters in the border, to be written, which way they owght to be turned, to the center ward of the Table or from the Center ward.

Il:—The heds of the letters must be next or toward the center of the square Table or Figure. Diuide that within, by 12 and 7.⁴²

Δ: I diuided it.

Il:—Grace, mercy and peace be unto the liuely branches of his flourishing kingdom: and strong art thow in thy glory, which dost unknytt the secret partes of thy liuely workmanship: and that, before the weak understanding of man. Herein is thy powre and Magnificence opened unto man: And why? bycause thy diuinitie and secret powre is here shut up in Numero Ternario et Quaternario: à quo principium et fundamentum omne huius est tui sanctissimi operis.⁴³ For, yf thow (O God) be wunderfull and incomprehensible in thyne owne substance, it must nedes follow, that thy works are likewise incomprehensible. But, Lo, they shall now beleue, bycause they see, which heretofore could skarsly beleue. Strong is the Influence of thy supercestiall powre, and mighty is the force of that arme, which overcommeth all things: Let all powre therfore rest in thee; Amen.

⁴¹ Soli Deo . . . perennis: “To God alone be eternal praise.” -Ed.

⁴² Note of the Square within.

⁴³ Ternarius et Quaternarius. -Δ. Numero . . . operis: “In the numbers of the ternary and quaternary, from which is the beginning and the entire foundation of this, your most holy work.” -Ed.

Δ: The Spirituall Creature seamed to eate fyre, like balls of fyre: hauing his face toward me, and his bak toward EK.

Il: Leave oute the Bees of the 7 names of the seven Kings, and 7 Princis: and place them in a table diuided by 12 and 7:⁴⁴ the 7 spaces being uppermost: and therein write, in the upper line, the letters of the king, with the letters of his Prince following next after his name: and so of the six other, and theyr Princis: And read them on the right hand from the upper part to the lowest, and thou shalt finde, then, the Composition of this Table. Therein they are all comprehended, sauing certayn letters, which are not to be put-in here: By reason that the Kings and Princis do spring from God; and not God from the Kings and Princis:⁴⁵ Which excellency is comprehended, and is also manifest, in that Third and Fowrth member.

Rownd about the sides [of this square] is euery letter of the 14 names of the 7 kings and Princis.

Hereafter shall you perceyue that the Glorie of this Table surmowneth the glorie of the sonne.⁴⁶

All things els appertayning unto it, are already prescribed by your former instruction.

I haue no more to say, but God transpose your myndes, according to his own will and pleasure. You talked of Transposition.⁴⁷ Tomorrow I will be with you agayn. But Call not for me, least you incurre the danger of the former Curse.⁴⁸

⁴⁴ 12, 7.

⁴⁵ Note of these kings and Princis.

⁴⁶ The dignity of the Table of practise.

⁴⁷ He alludeth to our talk had of Transposition of letters.

⁴⁸ Note, danger of violating precepts of doctrine.

l	o	n	e	g	a	n	o	g	i	l	a
o	g	o	n	r	o	l	e	g	o	b	o
s	e	f	a	f	e	l	e	l	a	b	a
o	n	o	m	t	u	r	o	p	e	n	y
n	o	d	s	i	l	l	o	p	s	a	n
s	e	g	r	o	r	n	e	s	p ⁴⁹	a	n
s	e	g	l	a	r	a	z	a	m	u	l

Aprilis 29. Monday, a meridie

Δ: As EK and I wer talking of my boke Soyga, or Aldaraia: and I at length sayd that, (as far, as I did remember) Zadzaczadlin, was Adam⁵⁰ by the Alphabet therof, suddenly appeared the spirituall creature, which sayd yesterday that he wold come agayn, this day, uncalled: and at his first comming he sayd:

Then, à primo.

Δ: Qui primus est et nouissimus, Alpha et Omega, misereatur nostri.⁵¹

Il:—Amen. Glorie be to thee, which art one, and comprehending

⁴⁹ Fortè s p. -Δ. The manuscript originally had “p s,” but these are crossed out and “s p” inserted. -Ed.

⁵⁰ Adam.

⁵¹ A primo . . . nostri: “from the first. Δ: Which is the first and newest, Alpha and Omega, may he have mercy on us.” -Ed.

all. Mervaylous is thy wisdome, in those, of whome, thow wilt be comprehended.

A short prayer, but appliable to my purpose.

Euery prayse, with us, is a prayer.

Δ: He taketh-of, his pyed⁵² coat, and threw it up on the corner of my desk and then he seemed clothed in an ancient doctorly apparayle: and on his hed he had a wrethe of white sylk of three braydes.⁵³

Il:—Well I will give you my lesson, and so byd you farewell. First I am to perswade you to put away wavering myndes. Secondly, for your Instruction, in these necessarie occasions, thus it is:

The owtsides or skyn must be the Centre.⁵⁴ There, is one fowndation.

The Flesh must be the owtside.

The Centre it self must be disseuered into 4 æquall partes:

There is your lesson.

Δ: We understand not, this dark lesson.

Il:—The hart must be the fowrth part of the body; and yet the body perfect and sownd. The Skynne must occupy the place of the hart and yet without deformitie. God is the begynning of all things: The fardest parte of all things is in the hands of God. The like shalbe fownd amongst the number of his One most holy name:⁵⁵ The Erth is a fowndation to euery thing: and differeth but onely in forme. In the forme of his own application whereunto it is applied. **God is the begynning of all things, but not after one sorte, nor to euery one alike. But it is three manner of works, with his name:**⁵⁶

⁵² Pied: "spotted or patched." -Ed.

⁵³ Apparayle changed.

⁵⁴ An ænigmaticall lesson.

⁵⁵ Note.

⁵⁶ Three manner of works with God his Name.

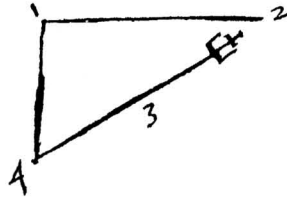
The One, in respect of Dignification:

The second, in respect of Conciliation:

The third, in respect of an ende and determined Operation.

Now syr, to what ende, wold you were your Character?

Δ: At our two first dealings to gither, it was answered by a spirituall Creature, (whome we toke to be Uriel,) Sigillum hoc in auro sculpendum, ad defensionem Corporis omni loco, tempore et occasione, et in pectus gestandum.⁵⁷



Il: But how do I teache? The Character is an Instrument, applicable onely to Dignification. But there is no Dignification (Syr) but that which doth procede, and hath his perfect Composition, Centrally, in the square number of 3 and 4. The centre whereof shall be equall to the greatest.

Δ: We understand not. Il:—Hereby you may gather not onely to what ende, the blessed Character, (wherewith thou shalt be dignified) is prepared, but also the nature of all other characters.⁵⁸ To the second.—Δ: Conciliation you meane.

Il:—The Table is an Instrument of Conciliation. And so are the other 7 Characters: which you call by the name of Tables, squared out

⁵⁷ Vide inscriptiones suo loco, An. 1582, Martij die 10. f. 6. -Δ. ("See the inscription in its own place, 10 March 1582, folio 6.") Sigillum . . . gestandum: "Engrave this sigil in gold, for protecting the body in all places, times, and occasions: and to be worn on the chest." -Ed.

⁵⁸ The Nature of all Characters.

into the forme of Armes: which are propre to euery king and Prince⁵⁹ according to theyr order.⁶⁰

Now to the last: Δ: As concerning the ende and determined Operation.

Il: It onely consisteth in the mercy of God, and the Characters of these bokes.⁶¹ For, Behold, As there is nothing that commeth or springeth from God, but it is as God, and hath secret Maiesticall and inexplicable Operation in it: So euery letter here bringeth furth the Names of God:⁶² But, (in dede), they are but one Name; But according to the locall and former being, do comprehend the universall generation corruptible and incorruptible⁶³ of euery thing. It followeth, then, it must nedes comprehend the ende of all things.

Thus much, hitherto.

The Character is fals and diuinish.⁶⁴

He that dwelleth in thee, hath told thee, so, long ago. The former Diuel, did not onely insinuat him self, but these things.

Δ: I do mervayle, that we had no warning hereof ere now, and that I was often tymes called on, to prepare those things, (character and Table): and yet they were fals.

Il:—Yf it shold haue byn gon abowt to be made, it shuld not haue byn suffred to pass under the forme of wyckednes.⁶⁵ The Truth is to be

⁵⁹ NOTE.

⁶⁰ Note here of the 7 Tables of Creation, how they apperteyn to the 7 kings and Princes.

⁶¹ This boke of 48 Tables.

⁶² Note of the Names of God.

⁶³ Generation: corrup., incor. ("Generation: corruptible, incorruptible." -Ed.)

⁶⁴ The Character allso was a falls tradition.

⁶⁵ Note.

gathered uppon the first Demonstration (my demonstration and yours⁶⁶ are not all one: you will not be offended with me, syr.)

I gaue thee a certayn principle, which in it self is a sufficient demonstration: I told thee, the placing of the Centre, the forme of it, with a lineamentall placing and ordning of that which thow lookest⁶⁷ for. Δ: But truely I understand not.

Il:—I teache. Take cleane paper. It must be made 4 inches square.

Pray. Δ: We prayed.

Il: These letters, which I shall speak now, thow shalt, afterward, put them in theyr propre characters.⁶⁸

Write: Neuer since the begynning of the world was this secret deliuered, nor this holy mysterie set open, before the Weaklings of this world. Write in the uppermost prik ‘O’, and ‘b’ on the right hand, and ‘g’ on the left &c. The two extreme pricks, one on the right hand, ‘a’ and the other, on the left ‘o’ &c.

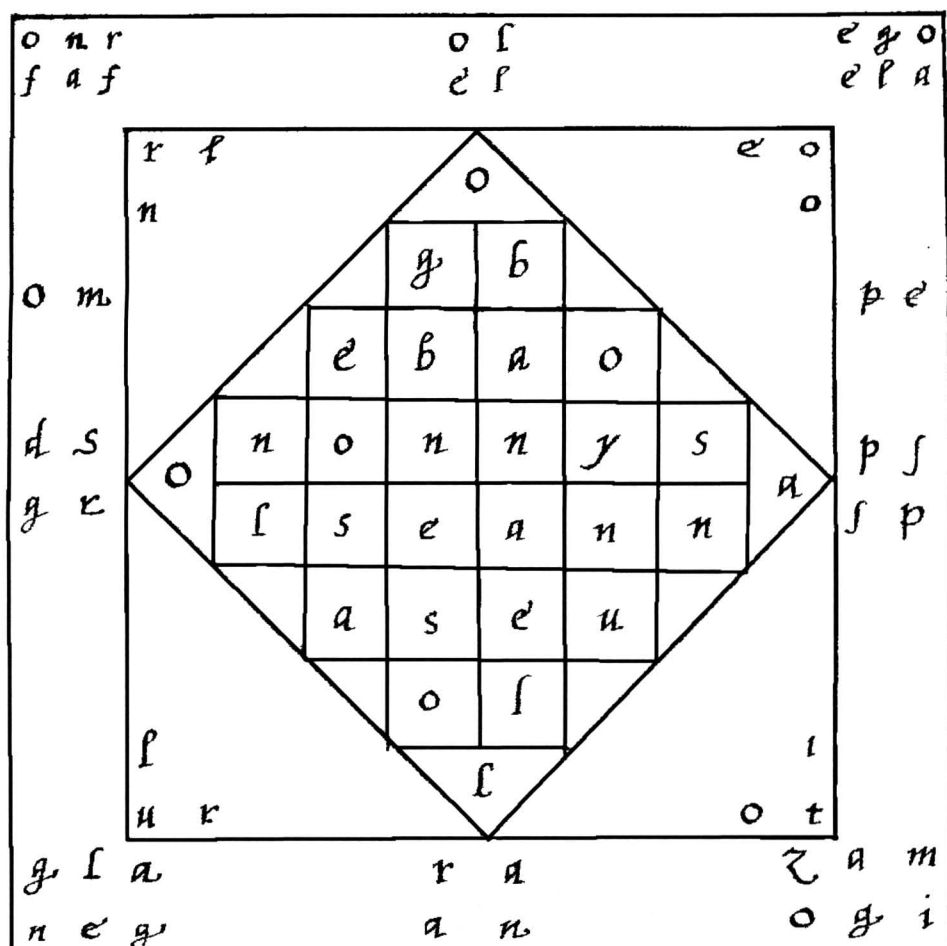
There is the whole.

Δ: We prayed (unbidden) in respect of the mysterie revealed. EK, was skarse able to abide or endure the voyce of the spirituall Creature, when he spake of these things now: the sownd was so forcible to his hed that it made it ake vehemently.

⁶⁶ Lepidè, mathematicas meas demonstrationes deuolat. -Δ (“Neat! He endorses my mathematical demonstrations.” -Ed.)

⁶⁷ He meaneth my propre Character truely made.

⁶⁸ Note. These to be put in propre Characters.



Il:—Set down the kings, and theyr Princis in a Table (as thow knowest them): with theyr letters bakward: excepting theyr Bees, from the right hand, to the left.⁶⁹ Let Bobogel be first, and Bornogo is his prince.⁷⁰

Δ: Note here the three diuerse manners how the letters ar cumpassed. 1: The middel is called the Hart or centre, 2: those abowt, enclosing the hart, ar called the flesh, and 3: the two owtside pillars (of two letters in a row) is cownted the skyn.

o	g	o	n	r	o	l	e	g	o	b	o
s	e	f	a	f	e	l	e	l	a	b	a
o	n	o	m	t	u	r	o	p	e	n	y
n	o	d	s	i	l	l	o	p	s	a	n
s	e	g	r	o	r	n	e	s	p	a	n
s	e	g	l	a	r	a	z	a	m	u	l
l	o	n	e	g	a	n	o	g	i	l	a

Il:—Here, is the skynn turned into the Centre: and the Centre turned into 4 partes of the body.

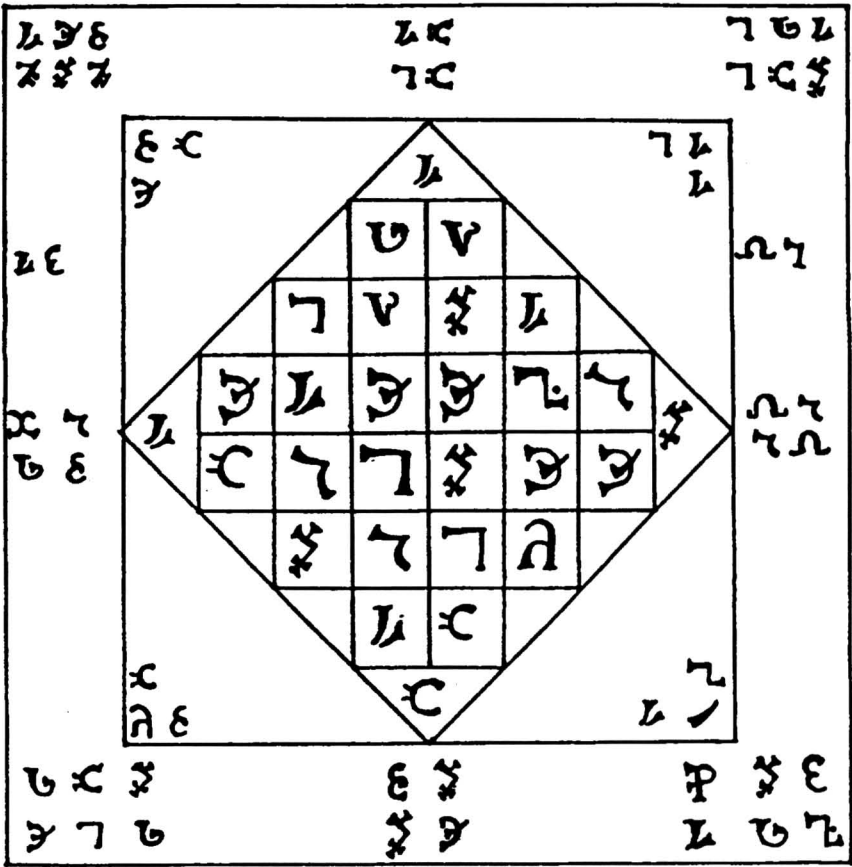
Δ: I see now allso, how, the flesh, is become the owtside: o g e l o r n o &c. Il: I haue done tyll sone.

Δ: Deo nostro omnipotenti perennis laus sit et immensa gloria.⁷¹ Amen.

⁶⁹ So, on my Character or lamyne of dignification: are all the names of the 7 kings, and of the 7 Princis, perfectly: as in the great Table, (called often tymes Mensa Faederis) the Bees, onely, (being the first letter common to them all) kept bak, in memory. -Δ (HM).

⁷⁰ Note, here, it may appere that Butmono is Prince to Bynepor, and Blisdon prince to King Bnaspol. -Δ (HM).

⁷¹ Deo nostro . . . gloria: "Perpetual praise and unlimited glory be to our almighty God." -Ed.



NOTE.

Δ: After that these things were finished, and EK rose up from the table and went to the west window, to reade a letter which was, euen than, browght him from his wife: which being done, he toke a little prayer⁷² boke (in english meter made by one William Hunnis which Mr Adrian Gilbert had here: and it lay on the Table by us all the while of this last action) and with this boke, he went into his bed chamber, intending to

⁷² The Title of the boke was *Seuen Sobs of a Sorrowfull Soule for Synne*. -Δ. London: 1583. Hunnis' book consists of a translation of the *Seven Penitential Psalms* in rhyme.

pray on it, a certayn prayer, which he liked: and as he opened the boke, his ey espied strange writing in the spare white paper at the bokes ende: and beholding it, iudged it verily to be his own letters, and the thing of his own doing: but being assured that he never saw the like of this Character [for Conciliation], and that other, (notified by the hart or Center, skyn and flesh before this present howre, he becam astonied,⁷³ and in great wrath; and behold, suddenly, One appered to him and sayd, Lo, this is as good as that other: meaning that, which we had receyued, and is here before sett down on the former page. With this newes cam EK to me, as I was writing down fayre this last Action, and sayd, I haue strange matter to impart unto you: Then sayd I, What is that? And at the fyrst (being yet tossed in his mynde, with this great iniurie of the suttle supplanter of man, ambitiously intruding him self, to rob god of his glory) he sayd, you shall know, and at length shewed me this little paper, here, by, being the one of the white leafes in the ende of the forsayd little prayer boke. And I vewing it, fownd it to be ment to be the counterfeate of ours, but, with all, imperfect diuerse wayes, after the order of our method: yea though the words, out of which it had sprong had bin good, and sufficient: and thereat laughed-at, and derided the Wicked enemy, for his envy, his ass-hedded folish ambition, and in dede mere blyndenes to do any thing well. To conclude, we fownd, that with an incredible spede this Diuinish figure was written down by some Wicked spirit, to bring our perfect doings in dowt with us: thereby eyther to provoke us to utter undue speaches of gods good creatures, or to wavering myndes of the Worthynes and goodnes of the same things receyuing, and so eyther to leaue of, or with faynhearted wavering to procede. But I by gods grace (contrary to such inconueniency) was armed with constancie, and confident good hope, that God wold not suffer me, (putting my trust in his goodnes and mercy, to receyue wisdom from him) to be so uniuistly dealt withall or unkindly

⁷³ Astonied: "bewildered." -Ed.

1583. *Aprilis 29. Monday. after supper. hora 8 a.*

Δ: I went into my oratorie, and made a fervent prayer agaynst the spirituall enemy: specially meaning the wicked one who had so suddenly so suttily and so liuely cownterfeted the hand and letters of EK: as is here before declared, and by the thing it self may appere here. Likewise EK on his knees (at the greene chayre standing before my chymney) did pray. After which prayers ended, I yea, rather, before they were ended, on my behalf, EK espyed a spirituall creature come to my Table: whome he toke to be IL, and so, a lowd, sayd, He is here. And thereupon I cam to my desk, to write as occasion shold serue: And before I began to do any thing, I rehersed part of my intent, uttred to god by prayer and half turned my speche to god him self, as the cause did seme to require. Thereupon that spirituall creature, who, as yet had sayd nothing, suddenly used these words:————— I give place to my better.

EK: There semeth to me Uriel to be come, and IL to be gone away.

Δ: Then began that new-come Creature to say thus,

Most abundant and plentiful are the great mercies of God unto them which truly and unfaynedly feare, honor and beleue him. The Lord hath hard thy prayers, and I am URIEL,⁷⁴ and I haue browght the peace of God, which shall from henceforth viset you.

If I had not made this action perfect (sayeth the lord) and wrowght some perfection in you, to the ende you might performe: yea, if I had not had mercies (sayeth the lord) over the infinite number and multitude of sowles, which are yet to put on the vilenes and corruption of the flesh,⁷⁵ Or if it wer not time to loke down, and behold the sorrow of my Temple, Yet wold I, for my promiss sake, and the establishing of my kingdom, verifie my mercies uppon the sonns of men: Whereunto I

⁷⁴ Uriel.

⁷⁵ Note, sowles created before the bodies are begotten.

haue Chosen three of you,⁷⁶ as the mowthes and Instruments of my determind purpose. Therefore (sayeth the Lorde), Be of stowte and courragious mynde in me,⁷⁷ for me, and for my truth sake: And Fear not the assalts of temptation, For I haue sayd, I am with you. But as mercy is necessary for those that repent, and faithfully forget theyr offenses, So is Temptation requisite⁷⁸ and must ordinarilie follow those, whome it pleaseth him to illuminate with the beames of triumphant sanctification.

Yf Temptation wer not, how shold the sonnes of men (sayeth the lord) know me to be mercifull? But I am honored in hell; and worshipped with the blasphemers: Pugna erit, vobis autem victoria:⁷⁹ yet, albeit, (thus sayeth my message) I will defend you from the cruelltie of these dayes to come and will make you perfect: that perfectly you may begynne in the works of my perfection.⁸⁰ But, what? and doost thou (Sathan) think to triumph? Behold (sayeth the God of Justice) I will banish thy servants from this place and region; and will set stumbling bloks before the feete of thy ministers:⁸¹ Therefore, be it unto thee, as thou hast deserued: And be it to this people, and holie place, (as it is, the will of god; which I do pronownce) light without darkness, Truth without falshode, righteousnes without the works of wickednes. I haue pronownced it, and it is done.

But thou, o yongling,⁸² (but, old synner,) why dost thou suffer thy

⁷⁶ Three elected.

⁷⁷ Fortitudo in deo et propter deum. -Δ. ("Strength in God and because of God." -Ed.)

⁷⁸ Temptation necessary.

⁷⁹ Pugna . . . victoria: "They will have fought, but victory will be yours." -Ed.

⁸⁰ A perfect begynning.

⁸¹ Sententia contra istum Malignum spirituum qui nobis inpenere voluit. -Δ ("A judgment against this evil spirit who wished to use us." -Ed.)

⁸² He spake to EK.

blyndeness thus to encrease: or why dost thou not yeld thy lymmes to the service and fullfilling of an æternall veritie? Pluck up thy hart: let it not be hardened. Follow the waye that leadeth to the knowledge of the ende; the open sight of god his word verified for his kingdoms sake.

You began in Tables, and that of small accownt. But be faithfull for you shalbe written within Tables of perfect and euerlasting remembrance. Considering the truth, which is the message of him which is the fowntayne and life of the true, perfect and most glorious life to come, Follow, loue, and diligently Contemplate the mysteries therein. He that hath done this euill, hath not onely synned against thee, but against God, and against his truth. Judgment is not of me, and therefore I cannot pronounce it: But what his Judgment is, he knoweth in him self. His name is BELMAGEL: and he is the fyrebrand, who hath followed thy sowle from the begynning;⁸³ yea seking his destruction. Who can better cownterfeat, than he, that in thy wickednes is chief lord and Master of thy spirites: or who hath byn acquaynted with the secrets of mans fingers, so much as he [that] hath byn a director? My sayings are no accusation: neyther is it my propertie to be defyled with such profession.⁸⁴ But I cownsayle you generally; and aduertise you throwgh the grace and by the spirit of unspeakable mercy.

This night, yf your prayers had not byn; yea, if they had not perced into the seat of him which sitteth aboue: Thow, yea (I say) thou hadst byn carryed, and taken awaye, this night, into a willdernesse, so far distant hence Northward, that thy destruction had followed.⁸⁵ Therefore lay away thy works of youth; and fly from fleshly vanities. Yf not uppon Joye and pleasure of this presence, yet for the glorie of him that hath chosen you.

⁸³ Angelus malus proprius ipius EK. ("The wicked angel belonging to EK himself." –Ed.)

⁸⁴ Diuels are accusers proprely.

⁸⁵ EK had byn carryed away in the wrath of God. If fervent prayer had not byn, as may appere in the begynning of this nights Action.

I say, be strong: Be Humble, with Obedience: For, All the things, that haue byn spoken of, shall come to pass: And there shall not a letter of the boke of this prophesie perish.⁸⁶ Finally, God hath blessed you, and will kepe you from temptation⁸⁷ and will be mercifull unto you: and perfect you, for the dignitie of your profession⁸⁸ sake: Which, world without ende for euer and euer, with us and all creatures, and in the light of his own cowntenance, be honored.

Amen. Amen. Amen.

Δ: Hereuppon I made most humble prayer with harty thanks to our God, for his help, cumfort, and Judgment against our enemie, in this case, (so greatly concerning his glorie.) And at my standing up I understode that Uriel was out of sight to EK. Yet I held-on my purpose to thank him; and to prayse god for Uriel that his so faithfull ministerie unto his diuine Maiestie, executed to our nedefull comfort in so vehement a temptation.

Deo nostro Omnipotenti; sit omnis laus, honor,
et gratiarum actio, nunc et in perpetuum,⁸⁹
Amen.

⁸⁶ The boke of this Prophesie shall contynue.

⁸⁷ = a malo Temptationis. -Δ. ("Against the evil of temptations." -Ed.)

⁸⁸ Professio mea est Philosophia vera, vide Libro primo. -Δ. ("My profession is true philosophy. See Book 1." -Ed.)

⁸⁹ Deo . . . perpetuum: "May all praise, honor, and thanksgiving be to our almighty God, now and forever." -Ed.

1583 Maij 5. *Sonday. a meridiē hor 4. vel circiter.*

Δ: For as much as, on fryday last, while my frende EK was abowt writing of the Tables he was told that the same shuld be finished on monday next and that on sonday before, (it is to wete, this present sonday) at after none, all dowtes shold be answered; after, the after none had so far passed, as tyll somewhat past 4 of the klok: Then, we fell to prayer, and after a quarter of an howres invocation to god, and prayers made, EK sayd, here is one whome we toke to be Uriel, as he was, in dede. I had layd 28 questions or articles of dowtes in writing uppon my desk, open, ready for me to rede (uppon occasion) to our spirituall instructor, who, thus began his speche, after I had used a few wordes begynning with this sentence, Beati pedes, evangelizantium pacem &c.⁹⁰

Uriel:—The very light and true wisdome (which is the Somme of my message, and will of him that sent me) make you perfect, and establish those things, which he hath sayd, and hath decreed: and likewise your myndes, that you may be apt vessells to receyve so abundant mercies. Amen. Δ: Amen, per te Jesu Christe:⁹¹ Amen.

Ur:—This boke,⁹² and holy key, which unlocketh the secrets of god his determination, as concerning the begynning, present being, and ende of this world, is so reuerent and holy: that I wonder (I speak in

⁹⁰ Beati . . . pacem: “Blessed feet, gospel of peace” See Romans 10.15. Quomodo vero praedicabunt nisi mittantur? sicut scriptum est: Quam speciosi pedes evangelizantium pacem evangelizantium bona!: “And how shall they preach, except they be sent? As it is written: How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!” This verse quotes from Isaiah 52:7. Quam pulchri super montes pedes annunciantis et praedicantis pacem: annunciantis bonum, praedicantis salutem, dicentis Sion: Regnabit Deus tuus!: “How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him who brings good tidings, who publishes peace, who brings good tidings of good, who publishes salvation, who says to Zion: ‘Your God reigns.’” -Ed.

⁹¹ Per te Jesu Christe: “Through you, Jesus Christ.” -Ed.

⁹² This Holy Book.

your sense) whie it is deliuered to those, that shall decay: So excellent and great are the Mysteries therein conteyned, aboue the capacitie of man: This boke (I say) shall, to morrow, be finished:⁹³ One thing excepted: which is the use thereof. Unto the which the lord hath appointed a day. But (bycause I will speak to you, after the manner of men) See that all things be in a redynes agaynst the first day of August next.⁹⁴ Humble your selues nine dayes before: yea, unrip (I say) the cankers of your infected sowles: that you may be apt and meet to understand the Secrets, that shalbe deliuered.⁹⁵ For why? The Lord hath sent his angels allready to viset the earth,⁹⁶ and to gather the synnes thereof to gither, that they may be wayed before him in the balance of Justice: and Then is the tyme that the promise of God, shalbe fullfilled. Dowt not, for we are good Angels.⁹⁷

The second of the greatest prophesie is this⁹⁸ (O ye mortall men) For the first was of him self, that He shold come: And this, is from him: in respect of that he will come. Neyther are you to speak the wordes of this Testimonie, in one place, or in one people, but, that the Nations of the whole world may knowe that there is a GOD which forgetteth not the truth of his promise, nor the sauegarde of his chosen, for the greatnes of his glory.⁹⁹

⁹³ The boke to be finished to morrow.

⁹⁴ The day appointed for the use of this Book. Augusti 1.

⁹⁵ Our nine dayes contrition preparatiue. -Δ. Note the *Clavicula Salomonis* prescribes a nine-day preparatory period before calling spirits that includes penitential prayers and abstaining from impurity. See S. L. Mathers, ed., *The Key of Solomon the King* (York Beach: Samuel Weiser, 1972 repr. 1989), book 2, chapter 4. The magi (Zoroastrian priests) also undergo an elaborate nine-night purification ceremony ("Barashnum") in order to prepare for higher religious ceremonies. -Ed.

⁹⁶ Angels sent to viset the heape of sinnes in the world abownding &c.

⁹⁷ Good Angels.

⁹⁸ The second of the greatest prophesie, is this.

⁹⁹ Our Testimony of this Prophesie, all the World ouer, to be (by us) published.

Therefore (I say) prepare your bodies, that they may be strong enough for armors of great profe.¹⁰⁰ Of your selfs, you cannot: But desire and it shall be giuen unto you. For Now, is euen that wicked childe grown up unto perfection: and the fier tungs redy to open his Jaws.¹⁰¹ WO therefore shalbe to the Nations of the earth: And wo wo innumerable to those that say, we yelde: Wickednes (o lorde) is crept up, and hath filled the dores of thy holy sanctuarie: defyled the dwelling places of thy holy Angels: and poysonned the earth, as her own seat:

In 40 dayes more must this boke be perfyted in his own manner to the intent that you allso may be perfyted in the workmanship of him, which hath sealed it.¹⁰²

Oute of this, shall be restored the holy bokes, which haue perished euen from the begynning, and from the first that liued And herein shalbe deciphred perfect truth from imperfect falshode, True religion from fals and damnable errors, With all Artes; which are propre to the use of man, the first and sanctified perfection: Which when it hath spred a While, THEN COMMETH THE ENDE.¹⁰³

Thy Character must haue the names of the fiue Angels (written in the myddst of Sigillum Emeth) graven uppon the other side in a circle.¹⁰⁴ In the myddst whereof, must the stone be which was allso brought:¹⁰⁵ Wherein, thou shaltt, at all times behold, (priuately to thy self,) the state of gods people through the Whole earth.

The fowre fete of the Table must haue 4 hollow things of swete

¹⁰⁰ Our bodyes to be made strong.

¹⁰¹ Antichriste is allmost ready for his practise.

¹⁰² 40 dayes more for the tables writing in their own Characters.

¹⁰³ The frute of this boke.

¹⁰⁴ The backside of my Character.

¹⁰⁵ The use of the stone which a good Angel brought to me the last yere: remember it is half an inche thik.

wood,¹⁰⁶ whereuppon, they may¹⁰⁷ stand: within the hollownes wherof thy seales may be kept unperished.

One month is all, for the use thereof.¹⁰⁸

Thus, sayeth the Lord, when I browght you up in likenes of birds, encreasing you, and suffring you to touche¹⁰⁹ the skyes, I opened unto you the ende of your reioysing: For, this Doctrine shall towche the skyes, and call the sterrs to testimonie therof: And your fotesteps shall viset (allmost) [all¹¹⁰] the partes of the whole world.

The sylk, must be of diuerse cullors, the most changeable that can be gotten:¹¹¹ For, who, is hable to behold the glory of the seat of God?

All these things must be used, as that day.¹¹²

All errors and dowtes ells may be amended by the rules of reason: But Notwithstanding, Ask, and thow shalt be answered.

Δ: As concerning Mals don Mals, what is the veritie to be placed in the middle of my practising Table?

Ur:—Write

¹⁰⁶ The 4 hollow fete of the Table.

¹⁰⁷ HM reads “must.” -Ed.

¹⁰⁸ The use of the Table of practise is onely for one Month.

¹⁰⁹ Vide sup. A°. 1582 Maij 4.

¹¹⁰ Great long iornayes to be gon of us two.

¹¹¹ The Cullor of the silk for the Table.

¹¹² On the first of August next.

o o e		t i o
l r l	rather	u l r
r l u	thus ¹¹³	l r l
o i t		e o o

Δ: From whence, are these taken?

Ur: They ought to be gathered of those names, which are first gathered by thee, by ordre: (In the myddst of them:) the Kings and Princis being placed, as thow (of thy invention) diddst gather them: Not putting their own princis, next to the kings: but as they follow in Tabula, Collecta¹¹⁴ by thee: as thus,

a	l	i	g	o	n	o	r	n	o	g	o
o	b	o	g	e	l	e	f	a	f	e	s
a	b	a	l	e	l	u	t	m	o	n	o
y	n	e	p	o	r	l	i	s	d	o	n
n	a	s	p	o	l	r	o	r	g	e	s
n	a	p	s	e	n	r	a	l	g	e	s
l	u	m	a	z	a	a	g	e	n	o	l

Δ: Wherefore is the Table of Kings, and Princis set down in so diuerse manners?¹¹⁵ as, One, to haue Bobogel and Bornogo in the first row: and other to haue Baligon and Bagenol (his prince) in the first row: and here thirdly Baligon and Bornogo: and in the Heptagonon Blumaza semeth to be first, discoursed of, and his prince and Ministers: but very secretly:

¹¹³ Δ So they seeme to haue byn ment in the figure of the Table of practise before described.

¹¹⁴ The Princis here not put next to their kings.

¹¹⁵ Note. 4 diuerse Wayes.

Ur: Blumaza, is the first, in respect (And so all the rest, are the first in respect) of theyr own being. That secret is not to be deliuered but by the distinction of the boke: Notwithstanding, thow hast truely considered of it all ready.¹¹⁶

Δ: I required the perfect forme of the 21 letters, that I might imitate the same in the Table of practise, and in the holy boke writing &c:

Ur: They shall be deliuered to morrow.

Δ: Whether is the King his Name Bnaspen, or Bnapsen?

Ur: Bnapsen.

Δ: The Character or Lamine for me was noted (Nouemb. 17. A^o 1582¹¹⁷) that it shold conteyne some token of my name: and now, in this, (accounted the true Character of Dignification) I perceyue no peculier mark, or letters of my name.

Ur: The forme in euery corner, considereth thy name.¹¹⁸

Δ: You meane there to be a certayn shaddow of Δelta? Ur: Well.

Δ: Bycause many things do seeme to be taken from under the Table, as out of a stoare howse, shall there be any shelf framed under our square Table of Practise or handsome stole set in apt place to lay things on?

Ur: These things that were deliuered by shew, under an Imagined Table, were the members of God his secret Prouidence, distributed unto his Angels as the Principals¹¹⁹ of theyr Officis. But under thy Table is nothing to be set.

Δ: What more uses are there of the great Circle or globe, wherein there are Capitall letters under the Kings names and Characters: and allso there are other letters with numbers: of which we haue receyued

¹¹⁶ A Secret of preeminence due to the Kings &c: as in Astrology. I use to mak every planet a base or a grownd in his propre signification &c., & so every howse of the 12 &c. in respect of his proper and severall signification.

¹¹⁷ P. 85. -E.A.

¹¹⁸ The Symbolism of my name, in my character, how and where.

¹¹⁹ Principles.

no instruction: and more ouer of these letters, some are auersed some euersed, &c?

Ur:—The letters turned bak to bak, (being Capitall letters,) are æqually to be diuided, according to theyr numbers, with a circle cumpassing the name and Character of the king under which they are placed.¹²⁰

The other letters, whose greatest number doth not excede 7, are certayn By-notes of wicked and euill powres; which cannot, any way, but by the towche stone of truth be deciphred from the good. Wherof Notice shall be given at large, by the boke.

He that standeth in the myddst of the globe,¹²¹ signifieth Nature whereuppon, in the first point, is the use and practise of this work that is to say, as concerning the first part. For it is sayde before The Boke conteyneth three kinde of Knowledges.

- | | | |
|-----|---|--|
| .3. | { | 1 The knowledge of GOD, truely. |
| .2. | | 2 The number, and doing of his Angels, perfectly. |
| .1. | | 3 The begynning and ending of <u>Nature</u> , Substantially. |

And this hath answered a great dowte.

Δ: What is the use of the 7 lamine,¹²² (like armes,) and from what grownde are they framed or deriued?

Uriel:—They are the ensignes of the Creation;¹²³ wherewithall they were created by God known onely by theyr acquayntance, and the manner of theyr doings.

¹²⁰ Δ perhaps somewhat like this:



¹²¹ The man in the myddst of the globe or circle.

¹²² Tables.

¹²³ The 7 ensignes of creation.

Δ: Are they to be made in any metall?

Ur:—They are to be made in purified tynne: And to be used at the time of theyr Call.¹²⁴

Δ: Ar the letters there to be altered into the holy Alphabet letters or characters?

Ur: Into theyr propre Characters. Δ: May I not use them as they ar, unaltered?

Ur:—.....

Δ: How to be used; hanged or layd?

Ur: To be layd before thee uppon the Table. Or thow mayst place them, (yf thow wilt,) contynually at the 7 angles of the Holy Seale: laying them besides, and against the points or Angles of the Holy Seale: 7 ynches from the utter border of the holy Seale, all at ones: Or els they may be paynted, On the Table.¹²⁵

Δ: What is the fowndation of the first 40 letters, in the principall, or holy Seale Emeth: and what other uses haue they, then yet hath byn spoken of: And what is the reason of suche theyr conseqencie, or following eache other, Seing in our practise we cull them out by a peculier order?

Ur:—Thow hast nothing there, but what hath byn sufficiently spoken of.¹²⁶

Δ: Yf 42 letters be 42 names, and 42 persons, how shall distinction be made betwene any two or three, of one name and in one row?

Ur:—How canst thow distinguish any thing with god?

Δ: Lord I know not.

Ur: Yet, by the boke it shall be perfectly known: but by skylle aboue nature.

¹²⁴ At the time of theyr call.

¹²⁵ The 7 ensignes to be paynted on the Table.

¹²⁶ Supra. -Δ. ("Above." -Ed.)

Δ: Haue I rightly applied the dayes to the Kings?

Ur:—The dayes are rightly applied to the Kings.

Δ: How is this phrase The fifth of the seuenth understode, which Befafes¹²⁷ speaketh of him self?

Ur:—He speaketh so of him self, in respect that he shall be the fifth that shall be used. In consideration of Nature he is the fifth, allthowgh not consequently in the Order of Operation.

Δ: It was promised that we shold be instructed, whan the Day (in this practise) is to be accountd to begynne.

Ur:—It is not to be enquired, which is sufficiently towght, it is a thing most easy, and perfectly deliuered.

Δ: Adrian Gilbert¹²⁸ how far, or what points is he to be made priuie of our practise? Seing it was sayd,¹²⁹ that none shall enter into the Knowledge of these mysteries with me, but onely this worker. Truely the man is very Cumfortable to our societie.

Ur:—He may be made priuie of some things: such as shall be necessarie for the necessitie of the Necessities whereunto he shall be driuen.

Δ: The phrase of the last Ternarie,¹³⁰ which, Baligon (otherwise named Carmara, or Marmara) used, I understand not.

Ur:—He is the ende of the Three last corruptible times:¹³¹ wherof, this is the last.

Δ: The one, at Noes Flud ended, the second at Christ his first coming and this is the third.

Ur:—It is so.

Δ: The Characters and words annexed to the Kings names in the

¹²⁷ Befafes.

¹²⁸ A.G.

¹²⁹ Supra.

¹³⁰ The last Ternarie.

¹³¹ Three times.

utter circumference of the great circle or Globe: How are they to be used?¹³²

Ur: They¹³³ are to be paynted uppon swete wood: and so to be held in thy hand, as thou shalt haue cause to use them.

Δ: For the bringing of the erthes hither from the places of hidden Threasure, what is your order and direction?

Ur:—After you haue eaten, it shall be told you.

Δ: We prayed, and so went to supper.

1583

The same sonday. Maij .5. [after supper hora 8½]

Δ: After diuerse our eiaculations and pangs of prayer and thanks unto god, this was sayed.

Ur:—Be it thus unto you. [He prayeth in his own language.] After this holy booke is finished, then is it necessarie with expedition¹³⁴ that the foresayd commaundement, as concerning the fatching of the earth, be fullfilled and performed. And be it unto you as HE will. And HE sayeth thus.

My Angel shall be amongst you, and shall direct his iornay:¹³⁵ and will bring his feete, euen into the place and places, where that erthly filth and Corruption lieth. Behold I will deale mercifully with him: For, Error shall not deceyue him. Notwithstanding what I will haue done with it, or how it shall be bestowed, is yet to be enquired of.¹³⁶

¹³² Vide supra pagina precedente. -Δ. ("See above on the previous page." -Ed.)

¹³³ The 7 characters of the 7 kings as on the former page is Babalel, Liba, &c.

¹³⁴ Expedition. -Δ. ("Expeditiousness." -Ed.)

¹³⁵ Journey. - Ed.

¹³⁶ How the Threasure is to be used.

Secret are the determinations, and unsearchable purposes, where-withall the most mightiest dealeth with worldlings, and loketh unto the use and necessarie application of worldly things. Many temptations shall assaile him in following this commaundement. But it is sayd, I Will be with him. God will deale mercifully with you. This is sufficient.

Yet ones more. Yf thow haue any dowte herein it shall be satisfied.

Δ: What if he go first to Nubery, and with the erth being taken thence, to procede to the other places noted in the skroll and then with the erth of those ten places, the rest of the skroll, the boke therewith fownd, and the red congeled thing in the hollow stone,¹³⁷ to come directly hither: and then the rest of the peculier practise for enioying the premisses, to be lerned. Or how els will you haue him order his iornay?

Ur: As thow wilt herein, so shall it be browght to pas.

Δ: As concerning the Victorious Capitayn, The Lord Albert Laski the Polake who so much desyreth my acquayntance, and Conference, how shall I use my self, to God his best liking, my Cuntries honor, and my own good Credit?¹³⁸

Ur:—Remember, it is sayde, that the Princis of the earth shall not discredit, much lesse work thy Confusion. He that dwelleth in thee,¹³⁹ is above worldes: and shall giue thee sufficient discretion worldly, in worldly occasions. For, Where the blessings of God are, euery thing is perfyted.

Δ: As concerning the Chamber for Practise, appointed by me, and the half-pace whereon the Table standeth, how is allowed of?

¹³⁷ The Skroll, The Boke, The red powder.

¹³⁸ Albertus Laski, Palatinus Siradiensis venit ex Polonia Londinum 1583 Maij initio. -Δ. "Albert Laski, the Palatine of Sieradia (Sieradz), came from Poland to London in early May, 1583." The Polish prince Albertus Laski visited London on 1 May 1583. At the Queen's command, he was received with much honor. He visited Dee on 15 June along with Philip Sidney. The prince was so impressed with Dee and Kelley that they were invited to Lasco, the prince's seat near Krakow. They left with their wives and families on 21 September 1583. Laski plays a major role in Dee's subsequent actions. -Ed.

¹³⁹ Δ My good Angel.

Ur:—The place can not Sanctifie the Action, but the Action the place. But I answer thee, after the manner of men.¹⁴⁰ It is sufficient.

Δ: The 4 hollow feete for comprehending the 4 lesser seales, how great owght they to be?

Ur: According to the fete, of the nearest proportion. And so, as the heith of the Table, be, as it, now, is.

EK: He semeth now to sit in the ayre: but I perceyue no chayre behynde him.

Δ: Are all these things of this dayes Action to be Noted with your name: as Uriel?

I am URIEL, which allwayes will answer untill this Action be finished.

I teache. Be Mercifull, Thankfull, and mery in him, and for him for whose name you shall susteyne much bodyly sadnes.¹⁴¹

More then my message, I may not: And it is done.



Δ: As concerning the Vision which yester night was presented (unlocked for,) to the sight of EK as he sat at supper with me, in my hall, I meane the appering of the very sea, and many ships thereon, and the Cutting-of the hed of a woman, by a tall blak man, What are we to imagin therof?

Ur:—The One, did signifie the prouision of forrayn powres against the Welfare of this land: which they shall shortly put in practise: The other, the death of the Quene of Scotts. It is not long unto it.¹⁴² The

¹⁴⁰ Hereby may many other answers be considered.

¹⁴¹ Multa nobis perpetienda propter Deum nostrum Omnipotentem. -Δ. ("Our great suffering near for our almighty God." -Ed.)

¹⁴² Note The Quene of Scotts to be behedded. So she was A°. 1587 at Fodringam Castell. And allso the same yere a great preparation of ships against England by the King of Spayn, the Pope and other Princis called Catholik, &c.

Maij 8. Wensday, After dynner horam circiter 4 a

Δ: Being desyrous to further all things on my part to be performed, and n . . . to lack the Cumpany of EK going for the Erthes,¹⁴⁴ (before spoken of) and to be away 10 or 12 dayes: and for as much as the boke was to be written in 40 dayes before August next: and uncertayn of those dayes whan they shold begynne: and allso for that I wold do all things (gladly) by warranty of cownsayle of our Instructor, I was desyrous to know whether the boke¹⁴⁵ were to be written in paper or parchment: in what cullor the lynes were to be ruled, grene or blew &c: and of diuerse other dowtes, necessary to be dissolued, I was carefull to haue had some advertisement. After long prayers of us both, Nothing was eyther seen in the ayre, or hard. Then it cam in my hed to set furth the stone.

EK sayd, that assone as he loked into the stone, he saw there the Table, Chayre, and three, com into the stone. Uriel sat down in the chayre: the other two, inclined theyr body to him reverently: and then, stode by; one on the one side of the chayre; the other on the other side.

The sides of the Table-cloth were turned up, and a thing like an yong shepe, bigger then a lamb, appered under the Table:¹⁴⁶ Then they two did knele before Uriel and sayd,

Verus et sanctus et sempiternus.¹⁴⁷

Δ: Then they rose agayn: and they semed to haue talk, or conference together and theruppon Uriel sayd,

Ur: Be it so, bycause powre is giuen unto him.

EK: The Table, Chayre and all the three do disapere: and thereup-

¹⁴⁴ The Erthes.

¹⁴⁵ The boke.

¹⁴⁶ The shepe under the Table.

¹⁴⁷ Verus . . . sempiternus: "True and holy and everlasting." -Ed.

pon immediately appered in the stone a fayr Pallace:¹⁴⁸ and out of the pallace cam a tall wellfauored man, very richely apparayled with a braue hat and a fether on his hed: and after him followed a great number, all like curteours: and this brave man sayd,

Man: How pitifull a thing is it, when the wise, are deluded?

Δ:—I smell the smoke; procede Syr, in your purpose.

Man: I come hither, for the desyre I haue to do thee good.

Δ:—Come you, or are you sent. Tell the Veritie I charge thee, in the name and by the powre of the æternall Veritie.

Δ: Note: After I perceyued euidently that it was a wicked tempter, who had powr permitted him at this instant, I began with some Zeale and egreness to rebuke, and to charge him. But he stiffly and stowtely did contemne me a good while, mock me, and at length thretten to destroy me, my wife, and children, &c.

Δ: I thereuppon made my earnest prayers to god agaynst this Spirituall enemy, but he in the myddle of my prayers, sayed thus,

Man:—As truely as the Lord liueth, all that is done, is lies.

Δ: That, thy sentence, will I record agaynst thee; to be layde to thy charge at the dredfull day.

Δ: After this great turmoyle past, was this voyce (following), hard of EK.

A voyce:—Pereant tenebræ, cum Principe Tenebrarum.¹⁴⁹

Δ: All went suddenly out of sight, Prince and pallace and all. And the Chayre and Table and Uriel appeared againe.

Ur:—Arme your selues, for, great shall be the temptations following. You shall be hindred, in all, that may be.¹⁵⁰

Nothing can hinder god his determined purposes.

¹⁴⁸ A Temptation permitted by God.

¹⁴⁹ Pereant . . . Tenebrarum: "May darkness perish with the Prince of Darkness." -Ed.

¹⁵⁰ Temptations & hinderances.

Δ: Man may hinder his owne saluation.

Ur:—Fullfill those things that are commaunded. Forme, and write the boke after thyne own Judgment. God his determination is iust; Therefore putto your hands.¹⁵¹ More then hath byn sayd, and more plainely, cannot be uttred. His works are true, for, and to the ende.

Δ: Forasmuch as expedition is to be made for the erthes fatching and diuers other things: and we haue made assay to get an horse: But we could get none as we wold: And without somme better prouision of mony then we haue, we cannot redress the case. Therefore, if it might pleas god, that of the ten places Noted, we might haue but the possession of the smallest of them, deliuered here, unto us, at this pynche, it might greatly pleasure us.

Ur:—Will these worldlings hold on in theyr iniquitie?

EK: They pulle the leggs of the Table away, and seme to carry all away in a bundell like a clowde: and so disapered utterly.

Δ: Hereuppon I was exceding sorrowfull: and betoke my self to a lamentable pang of prayer.

Δ: After long prayer, appeared in the stone a thing like a Tunge, all on fyre thus hanging downward:



and from it cam this voyce:

Tung:—Thow hast deliuered thy self unto the desires of thy hart, and hast done that which is not Convenient. Thow hast spoken iniquitie, and therefore dothe the Veritie of Gods Doings by us, decay, in your Wickedness.

Δ: I dowl of the Veritie of that tung.

¹⁵¹ The forme of the boke committed to my discretion.

Tung:—Man (o God) beleueth him self in his own Imagination. Therefore Wipe our holines from the face of the erth And Justifie owr doings, where we lawde and prayse thee.

Δ: I becam now abashed of my former speche, and perceyued my error: axed forgivenes bitterly at the Lord his hand: and at length it was sayde,

Tung:—Do that, which is commaunded, the Lord is Just.

Δ: O lord, forgiue me my trespaces, and deale not with me according to Justice: for, then I, and all mankinde shall utterly perish; Unleas thy mercy be our savegard, destruction is our desert.

Tung:—It is forgiuen: but it shall be punished.

EK: The Tung mownted up toward heven, and he saw it in the ayre out and above the stone aboue a hand bredth, mownting upward.

Δ: Thy Name be prayed in Æternitie, Ô God.

Amen.

Δ: Hereuppon, I was in an exceding great hevines, and sorrow of mynde: And sundry tymes, bewayled my case to God: and promised a greater care henceforeward, of Governing my Tung: and consenting to any unlawfull or inconvenient desire of my hert: yea, to forbear to accompany with my own wife, carnally: otherwise then by heavenly leave and permission, or if uppon my protestation making in the hardnes of the conflict that unleas the lord order and redress my cause, I shall be overcome: That, if I shall, so deliberately call for help; and notwithstanding be entrapped, That then, such trespac, shall not be imputed unto me, as gladly, gredyly or willingly committed of me &c.

May 9 Holly Thursday in the morning.

Δ: Being desyrus (before EK his going down into the Cuntrie,) to haue some Cumfort and token of free forgiuenes at Gods hands I browght furth the stone. Then I went into my Oratorie first requesting the Almighty God to respect the hartly sorrowfull paines I had endured for my offenses; to regarde the Vows and intent of my better hede taking henceforth &c, and prayed the 22 Psalm in the conclusion of the pang.

EK:—One, all in white, appeareth in the stone, who sayde,¹⁵²

——It is written: It is written: yea, it is written:

Euen as the father his compassion is great over his yonglings and Children: So, is the abundance of thy mercy (o Lord) great and unspeakable to the long offences and sinnes of thy servant. For, it is written, the light of thy eyes haue beheld those that feare thee: and those that trust in thy mercy, shall not be confownded. Be it, what it was: And be you, what you were: For, the Lord, is euen the same, that he was, before:



But be you Warned.¹⁵³

Behold, my armes ar longer then my body, and I haue eyes rownd about me: I am that which GOD pronownceth uppon you: Be it as I haue sayde.

Δ: Thereuppon he disapeared; and immediately, appered Uriel, who sayd,

Uri:—Actum est.¹⁵⁴ Δ: Then the other two, and the Table and Chayre, and the ancient furniture appeared, agayn restored,¹⁵⁵ and more bewtiful, then in foretyme.

¹⁵² Δ Fortè Annaël.

¹⁵³ Misericordia Dei. -Δ. ("God's mercy." -Ed.)

¹⁵⁴ Actum est: "It has been done." -Ed.

¹⁵⁵ NOTE.

Uri:—Thus, sayeth the Lord: Euen as the Tabernacle which I restore, is ten times brighter then it was, So may your Worthynes deserue brightnes ten tymes clerer then this. The rising of synners doth greatly reioyce us [and] That, he hath sayde, Do good unto those that feare me: and defend them, bycause they know my name. For in Justice they shall finde me theyr God: & in mercy their great Comforter.¹⁵⁶ Therefore we say, In thy name (o thow most highest) fiat.

fiat.¹⁵⁷

Justifie not your self:

Be Humble and diligent:

Continue to the ende. For great is the reward of them that fear the Lorde stedfastly.

Δ: Whereas the ordning of the boke¹⁵⁸ is referred to my Judgment: in my mynde it semeth requisite that as all the writing and reding of that holy language is from the right hand to the left, So the begynning of the boke must be, (as it were, in respect of our most usuall manner of bokes, in all languages of latin, greke, english &c) at the ende of the boke: and the ende, at the begynning, as in the hebru bible. Secondly the first leaf cannot be written in such little and æquall squares,¹⁵⁹ as all the rest of the 47 leaves are: bycause, the first leafe; excepting 9 lines (of the second page) therof: is all of words: some conteyning many letters, and some few, very diuersly: wherfore, I entend to make many leaves, serve to distinguish the 49 rowes of the first leafe: and at the ende of euery word to draw a line of partition, up and down, betwene the two next parallell lines &c. or as shall come in my mynde then.

¹⁵⁶ Justice.

¹⁵⁷ fiat: "Let it be so." -Ed.

¹⁵⁸ The boke.

¹⁵⁹ Note.

Ur:—He, that sayeth, Do this, directeth thy Judgment.

EK: Now is there a veale drawn before all: and all things appere far bewtifuller then euer they did.

Δ: I rendred thanks to the highest, and became in mynde Very Joyfull, that the Lord had pardoned my offences: whose name be prayed, extolled and magnified world with out ende. Amen.

I prayed after this the short psalme, Jubilate Deo quotquot in terra versamini¹⁶⁰ &c.

EK, immediately was to take bote and so to go to London: there to buy a saddell, brydle, and bote hose: for he had (here) yesterday, bowght a prety dun Mare, of goodman Pentecost: for iij £s, redy mony, in angels.

God be his guyde, help, and defense.

Amen.

Thursday. May 23. Circa 10½ mane

Δ: EK being come yesterday agayne and hauing . . . the erthes of the eleuen places before specified:¹⁶¹ we being desirous to . . . the furdre pleasure of the highest therein, and in other matters perteyning to our Actions in hand: I made prayer to such intent, both in my oratory & at my desk, rendring thanks for EK his safe

¹⁶⁰ Jubilate . . . versamini: "Rejoice in God all ye dwelling on the Earth." This is reminiscent of several Psalms. -Ed.

¹⁶¹ The Erthes.



The stone

retorne, and for the benefit receued of late of the Governor and assistants for the Mines Royall (which I perceyued, was the extraordinary working of god for theyr inward perswasion; they being els very unwilling so to let the lease, as I obteyned it.) And moving somewhat towching Albert Lasky At length, EK hard a Melody a far of, and the voyce of many, singing, these words,

Pinzua¹⁶² Lephe ganiúrax Kelpadman pacaph.

Δ: At length the curten was taken away, and there appered a clere whitish fume, but not fyre. After that, cam the three, which were want to come in.

Michael:—Grauida est terra, laborat iniquitatibus inimicorum lucis. Maledicta igitur est, quia quod in utero perditionis et tenebrarum est.

Uriel:—Sordida est, et odiosa nobis.

Raphael:—Proprijs sese flagellat tremulis.¹⁶³

EK: They loke abowt them, as thowgh they looked for somewhat or at somewhat.

Rap:—Veh dicit, sed non est qui audiat.

Gementem vidimus: sed non est, qui misereat. Sanctificemur igitur, Sanctum eius, quia nos sanctificamur in illo.

¹⁶² This “a” was sownded to the ende of pinzu as we use in english balads, as with this word down is sownded as downa, down a down a, &c.

¹⁶³ Michael: Gravidia . . . tremulis: “Michael: The earth is pregnant and struggles with the iniquities of the enemies of light. It is therefore accursed, because it is in the womb of damnation and darkness. Uriel: It is filthy and offensive to us. Raphael: It scourges itself by its own shaking.” -Ed.

Mich:—Fiat.¹⁶⁴

EK: He plucketh all the usuall hangings down abowt the place and now they take the Table away, and the Chayre: And where the Chayre was, semeth a Canapy or cloth of stade to hang.

Michael:—Transeunt vetera, Incipiunt nova.¹⁶⁵

EK: New seeme like clowdes to come abowt the Canapy being very beawtifull: and the bottom or flowr of the place, all couered with pretious stones: and in the middle therof, a rownd thing, like a carbuncle stone, bigger then ones fist.

Mi:	This.	}	[They sayd, pointing abowt the howse.]
Uriel:	That.		
Rap:	We.		

EK: They bring in a Throne like a Judgis seat or Throne and set it up, with the bak of it to the Wall.

Mich: Be it couered for a season. For euer and euer and euer is thy Justice, O GOD. [all three sayd.] EK: And there came light fire flashing from the Throne]

Thre commeth a beame from the Throne, and throwgh Raphael his head, and semeth to come out at his mowth. The other two seeme to knele downe: Michael on his right hand, and Uriel on his left.

Raphael:—I will speak (o Lord) bycause it is iust¹⁶⁶ that thow hast commaunded:

Your rashnes (o worldlings) is trodden under fote: He sayeth, (I say not) your synns are forgiven.¹⁶⁷

¹⁶⁴ Rap: Veh dicit . . . Fiat: "Raphael: He says 'veh,' but it is not what he hears. We have seen lamentation, but he doesn't feel misery. May we be sanctified therefore, his holy one, because we are sanctified in that one. Michael: Let it be so." -Ed.

¹⁶⁵ Nova. -Δ. Transeunt . . . nova: "The old ways cease, the new begin." -Ed.

¹⁶⁶ Just.

¹⁶⁷ Peccatorum remissio. -Δ. ("Remission of sins." -Ed.)

Δ: O blessed God; ô prayse we his mercyes for euer: ô Cumfōrtable newes.

Raph:—For, whome I will viset, those do I clense (sayeth the lord). Whan other things decay by reason of theyr age and filthynes (quæ nunc sunt in summo gradu,¹⁶⁸ and I will not suffer them to move one fote farder, sayth the lord,) Then shall your branches begyn to appere: And I will make you florish, for my gloryes sake. And my testimonies are true, and the wordes of my covenant iust: My pathes are thorny, but my dwelling place, is cumfōrtable.¹⁶⁹ My hand is heuy, but my help is great. Be ye cumfōrted in me: for from me, in my self, I am your Cumfōrter: and lift up your harts as from the strength of an other. But be you unto me a new people: bycause I am to you no new god. Dwell with me to the ende bycause I haue byn with you from the begynning: For Who soeuer shall arrise agaynst you (Behold) I am with you.

Your fathers liued in darknes; and yet were revived. Yea your fathers were in light, and yet they saw not Truth. But I will be known: yea the Nations uppon earth, shall say, Lo this is he, whome we haue risen agaynst. I AM: Therefore reioyce.

[All three sayd,] We perish (o lord) for our unrighteousnes sake [and therewith they fell down.] But in thee we were created and in thee We rise agayn:¹⁷⁰ Huseh Huseh Huseh garmal, Peleh Peleh Peleh pacáduasam.

Gyrd your gyrdles together and pluck up your myndes: I say, open your eyes: and yf you haue eares, heare: for we tremble and quake. This mercy was neuer:¹⁷¹ no not in Israël.

¹⁶⁸ Quæ . . . gradu: “which they are now in the highest degree.” -Ed.

¹⁶⁹ The Thorny path sup. 24 March.

¹⁷⁰ Angeli iniusti, respectu Iusticie Divinae. -Δ. (“Unrighteous angels, with respect to Divine Righteousness.” -Ed.)

¹⁷¹ Mercy.

Decedant mali, et pereant.¹⁷²

Depart o ye blasphemers, and workers of Iniquitie: For Here is Glory, Justification, with Sanctification. I answere thee.

Δ: Note: he meaneth, now to such matters as I propounded first of my self, and this Polander prince &c to give answer. The Prince had left with me these questions:

1. De Vita stephani Regis Poloniae quid dici possit?¹⁷³

2. An successor eius erit Albertus Lasky, an ex domo Austriaca?¹⁷⁴

3. An Albertus Lasky Palatinus siradiensis habebit regnum Moldauiæ?¹⁷⁵

Behold you thanked God, and it is accepted. I say, Although we require speede of thee and of you:¹⁷⁶ yet

....speede of us, you haue a Master, we are his mowth

are Schollars, without us, you could * not heare him: Neyther cowlde we heare him of our selues.

Consider the first, respect the second: Measure your selues, as the third.

For what you were & shalbe is allready appointed. And What He Was, is and shalbe, it is not of our determination. His purposes are without ende: yet, to an ende; in you, to an ende. Therefore When you shall be called-uppon,¹⁷⁷ DO, that which is commaunded: But appoint no forme unto god his buylding. Many wyndes are to come: but theyr fury is in Vayne: It is sayd: The Conquest shall be yours.

¹⁷² Decedant . . . pereant: "May the wicked depart and perish." -Ed.

¹⁷³ De Vita . . . possit?: "Regarding the life of Stephen, King of Poland, what can be said?" -Ed.

¹⁷⁴ An successor . . . Austriaca?: "Will his successor be Albertus Laski, or from the House of Austria?" -Ed.


¹⁷⁵ An Albertus . . . Moldauiæ?: "Will Albertus Laski, Palatine of Sieradia, have the kingdom of Moldavia?" -Ed.

¹⁷⁶ require none at Gods hands in this Case.

¹⁷⁷ Note, we shalbe called upon.

To the purpose. Who puft-up this princis father with desire to Viset these cuntries: or who hath prevented him? Euen he that hath prouided him a sonne,¹⁷⁸ as an arme unto his chosen.

Truely the hills shalbe couered with blud: The Valleys shall take up the Cedar trees unframed: He seeth these places, but knoweth not to what ende.

 He is dead,¹⁷⁹ in respect of his absence: But honor them, whome God hath sanctified. For, Behold the Lord hath sayd: Thow shalt gouern me a people: a time there is, which is prefixed: and it is the course of the Sonne: Then shall it be sayd unto him, O King.¹⁸⁰

When you semed to be carryed unto mowntaynes, you towched his . . . Behold (sayeth He) Fornication¹⁸¹ shall not prevayle: the very stones shall be taken away: and the Tables shalbe couered with blud: and theyr dayly bankett shall be Wo Wo.

Whatsoever thow takest in hand, First loke up: see if it be Just.¹⁸² Yf it be, put furth thy hand: For, it is graunted.¹⁸³

It is sayd, I haue giuen thee powre, and thy perswasion¹⁸⁴ shall be like fire. And for my names sake, thow shalt triumphe against the mightiest. But beware of Pride.

Many witches and enchanter, yea many diuels haue rosen up against this stranger,¹⁸⁵ and they haue sayd, We will preuayle against

¹⁷⁸ Albertus Lasky.

¹⁷⁹ The dead man.

¹⁸⁰ Prophetia de regno Alberti a Lasky, sed ipe noluit constanter se convertere ad Deum et adherere Deo, &c. ("A prophecy of the rule of Albertus Lasky, but he himself has been constantly unwilling to convert himself to God and adhere to God." -Ed.)

¹⁸¹ Fornication.

¹⁸² Justa facienda. ("Just cause." -Ed.)

¹⁸³ This phrase is heavily underlined in the manuscript. -Ed.

¹⁸⁴ Perswasion, Δ.

¹⁸⁵ Alb. Lasky ¶

him: for, why? There is one, that aspieth and he it is, that seeketh his confusion. But I will graunt him his desire: He shall do good with many: your names are in one boke.¹⁸⁶ Feare not, therefore, Love together.

There shall arise, saying, let

talked with strangers: But I

I will driue them from theyr own

the bones which are buried a far of¹⁸⁷

They do spit vengeance agaynst

them in theyr own filthynes

All men loke upon the . . . bycause it is glorified

Happy are they, whose faces are marked,¹⁸⁸ and in w. . .

is a percing fyre of workmanship.

I will move the Prince (sayeth the Lord) Be

shall shortly say, Ô give me Cownsayle: for th. . . .¹⁸⁹

cownsayled me, conspire agaynst me:

Behold, such¹⁹⁰ as shewed thee, little frendship, are rather such . . .

dede (as thow iustly hast confessed,) as were forced to doe . . .

good: I say, they, begyn to repine at that, the haue . . .¹⁹¹

Let those which are of tyme, yelde to time.¹⁹² One euerlasting cumfort of grace, and perfect loue, be amongst you: to the honor and glory of him that loueth you.

Beleue, for the teacher his sake. All thow demaundest, is answered.

¹⁸⁶ Alb. Lasky his name, in one boke with our names.

¹⁸⁷ . . . rie bones . . . be . . . to.

¹⁸⁸ Faces marked.

¹⁸⁹ Forte: "They that." -E.A.

¹⁹⁰ The Cumpany for the mines royall, which had made A.G. and me a lease for Deuonshire mynes, &c.

¹⁹¹ Forte: "done." -E.A.

¹⁹² Δ we were called to dynner often so he ended.

Of our selues, (we say,) We desire to be with you: And what is of us, the same be it unto you.

EK: They pluck the curten, affore the stone, all ouer. The curten is like beaten golde: [The other curtens did not cover all so wholly as this did.]

Δ: Semper sit benedictus Trinus et Unus.
Æternus et omnipotens Deus noster.
Amen.

Liber, sexti Mysteriorum (et sancti)
parallelus, Noualisque
sequitur.¹⁹³

¹⁹³ Semper . . . sequitur: "May the Trinity in Unity, our eternal and almighty God, be ever blessed. Amen. Here follows the Sixth Book of the Mysteries (and holy), parallel, and of a new land." -Ed.

Appendix 1: Description of Sigillum Dei Aemeth from *Liber Juratus*

The following excerpt is from Sloane 3854, folio 114v, with variant readings from the Royal manuscript (abbreviated R) and from Sloane 3885 (abbreviated S). The diagram of the Sigillum Dei Aemeth is taken from Sloane 313. This is very close to the (although considerably corrupted) version shown by Athanasius Kircher in his monumental work *Oedipus Aegyptiacus* (1562). The drawing of the sigil does not occur in Royal, Sloane 3854 or Sl.3885. The version in Sloane 3853 (reproduced in C. J. S. Thompson, *The Mysteries and Secrets of Magic*, New York, 1973, p. 186, but without identifying the source) is somewhat different.

De compositione signi dei vivi¹

Primo fac unum circulum cuius diameter sit trium digitorum propter tres clauos domini,² vel *5* propter *5* plagas, vel *7* propter *7* sacramenta, vel *9* propter *9* ordines angelorum, sed communiter *5* digitorum fieri solet. Deinde infra illum circulum fac alium circulum a primo distantem duobus granis ordeï propter duas tabulas moysi, vel distantem a primo tribus granis propter trinitatem parson-arm. Deinde infra illos duos circulos in superiori parte quæ dicitur [S 61v]
[R9r]
angulus meridiei fac unam crucem, cuius tibia aliquantulum intrat³ circulum interiorem. Deinde a parte dextra crucis scribe .h. aspirationem deinde .t. deinde .o. deinde .e. x.⁴ o. r. a. b. a.⁵ l. a. y. q. c.⁶ i. y. s. t. a. l.

1 R: “here folowithe the making off the seale off the trwe and lyuinge god.”

2 Deest S.


3 S: “intret.”


4 S: “y.”


5 S adds: “e.”

6 S: “t.”

g. a. a. o. n.⁷ o. s. v. l. a. r.⁸ y. t. c.⁹ e. k. s. s.¹⁰ p. f. y. o. m. e. m. a. u.¹¹
 a. r. e. l. a. c.¹² e. d.¹³ a. t. o. n. o. n. a. o. y. l. e.¹⁴ y. o. t. m. a¹⁵ et iste¹⁶
 literæ sunt eque¹⁷ distantes, et circu~dent circulum. eo ordine quo sunt
 prenominatæ¹⁸ et sic magnum nomen domini semenphoras¹⁹ *72* lit-
 erarum erit completum. hoc facto in medio circulorum scilicet in centro

fac unum pentagonum talem,  in cuius medio sit signum tau tale

 et super illud signum scribe²⁰ nomen dei el, et sub nomine aliud

nomen dei .l.²¹ ely. isto modo²²  Deinde infra angulum superi-
 orem²³ pentagoni²⁴ scribe istas duas litteras .lx.²⁵ Et infra alium

7 R has “w,” but has “n” supra linea.

8 R (sup. lin.): “t.”

9 Deest S.

10 R has “x,” but has “s” supra linea.

11 R: “n,” S: “x” (?).

12 R: “t.”

13 R has “v,” but has “t” supra linea.

14 R (sup. lin.) adds “p.”

15 R ends “yleotsyma.” Sloane 313: “htoexorahala/ yqciystalga^a onosularitcksp-
 fy/ mo (sup. lin: e)mau (sup.lin. x) aremlarclatcdacnnonaorleyot.”

16 S: “istæ.”

17 S: “æque.”

18 Sloane 313: “nominate.”

19 R: “schemhamphoras,” S: “shemhamphorash,” Sloane 313: “semamphoras.”

20 R adds “hoc.”

21 Deest R; S: “et sub nomen aliud dei sz.”

22 Sloane 313 omits this diagram.

23 S: “inferiorem.”

24 Sl. 313 adds “super nomine.”

25 R: “.l.h.,” Sloane 313 reads “l . et . x .”

angulum dextrum istas duas²⁶ .a.l. Et in alio [R 9v] post istum istas duas²⁷ n.m.²⁸ Deinde circa pentagonum fac unum eptagonum²⁹ cuius latus superius secundum sui medium contingat angulum superiorem pentagoni ubi .l.x.³⁰ scribebatur, et in eodem latere eptagoni³¹ scribe hoc nome~ sancti³² angeli quod est .casziel. Et in alio latere a dextris istud nomen alterius sancti angli quod est³³ .satquiel. Deinde in alio .samael. et in alio .raphael. postea .anael. postea .michael. postea .gabriel. et sic *7* latera eptagoni³⁴ erunt³⁵ adimpleta,³⁶ Deinde circa istum eptagonum³⁷ predictum fac alium eptagonum³⁸ non quoquo modo factum prius sed³⁹ taliter quod unum latus ipsius intercedet⁴⁰ latera alterius, Deinde fac alium eptagonum tale~⁴¹ qualis prius⁴² fuit

²⁶ R omits "istas duas."

²⁷ R omits "istas duas"; Sloane 3854 adds: ".l.a. et in alio post istum .l.c. Et in alio post istum."

²⁸ S: ".v.m."; In Sloane 313 this phrase reads: "scribe illas 2. literas. l. et . x . et infra alium angulum dextrum istas 2. literas . a . l . et in alio post istum . l . a . et in alio post istum . l . c . et in alio post istum . n . m . ut hic post in figura deorsu~ in marg .. in ..."

²⁹ S: "heptagonum."

³⁰ R: ".l.h."

³¹ S: "heptagoni."

³² R: "scante."

³³ R omits "casziel . . . quod est."

³⁴ S: "heptagoni."

³⁵ R: "sunt."

³⁶ S: "adimpleti."

³⁷ S: "heptagonu~."

³⁸ S: "heptagonu~."

³⁹ Sloane 313, S: "non q^o m^o primus factus est sed."

⁴⁰ R: "incarceret."

⁴¹ Deest R.

⁴² S: "primus."

cuius anguli *7* contingant angulos *7* eptagoni secundi quibus esse videtur. Hic tamen eptagonus infra perdictum secundum concludetur, unu~⁴³ latus secundi eptagoni⁴⁴ supernudo et aliud subenudo, sed⁴⁵ latus primo angulos⁴⁶ succedens subenudo ibit. et que⁴⁷ secuntur⁴⁸ serie supereuntis et subeuntis alterutrum se habebunt, Deinde in quolibet angulo secundi eptagoni⁴⁹ una crux depingatur, Deinde in illo latere secundi eptagoni⁵⁰ quod transit ab ultimo angulo eiusde~⁵¹ ad secundum angulum eiusde~ in eadem parte quæ est super⁵² .casziel. sillabe cuiusdam sancti⁵³ dei nominis scribatur,⁵⁴ Ita quod hac sillaba .la. scribatur in illo loco lateris perdicti⁵⁵ qui est supra primam sillabam de .casziel. et hec⁵⁶ sillaba .ya. in illo loco eiusdem⁵⁷ lateris qui est supra ultimam sillabam eiusdem⁵⁸ .casziel. et hec⁵⁹ sillaba .ly. in illo loco eiusdem lateris qui est latus intersecans predictum latus et crucem

⁴³ Deest R.

⁴⁴ S: "hexagoni."

⁴⁵ Deest R.

⁴⁶ S: "angulo."

⁴⁷ R, S: "quæ."

⁴⁸ R, S: "sequuntur."

⁴⁹ S: "hexagoni."

⁵⁰ S: "hexagoni."

⁵¹ Deest R.

⁵² S: "supra."

⁵³ R: "scaneti."

⁵⁴ S: "scribantur."

⁵⁵ S: "prædicti."

⁵⁶ R: "hac," S: "hæc."

⁵⁷ Deest R.

⁵⁸ R adds "de."

⁵⁹ R, S: "hæc."

secundi anguli eiusdem, Deinde in⁶⁰ latere illo quod tendit ab angulo primo eiusdem secundi eptagoni⁶¹ ad tertium angulum eiusdem scribatur hoc nomen sanctum dei⁶² .narath. ita quod hec⁶³ sillaba .na. scribatur in illo loco eiusdem lateris qui est supra primam sillabam de .satquiel. et hec⁶⁴ sillaba .ra. in illo loco qui est supra ultimam eiusdem, et hec⁶⁵ due⁶⁶ literae .t.h.⁶⁷ in illo loco qui est in eodem latere⁶⁸ inter latus secans ipsum⁶⁹ et crucem tertiam,⁷⁰ Deinde in illo latere eiusdem secundi eptagoni⁷¹ quod tendit .a. tertio⁷² angulo eiusdem ad quartum eiusdem scribatur hoc creatoris nomen sanctum quod dicitur .libarre. [10v] ita quod hec⁷³ sillaba .ly. scribatur supra primam sillabam, de .raphael. et hec⁷⁴ sillaba .bar. supra ultimam sillabam⁷⁵ * eiusdem, et hæc sillaba .re. in illo loco *⁷⁶ eiusdem lateris qui est inter latus intersecans ipsum et quintum angulum eiusdem secundi eptagoni,⁷⁷ Deinde in illo latere

⁶⁰ S: "a."

⁶¹ S: "hexagoni."

⁶² S: "hoc sanctum nomen dei."

⁶³ R, S: "hæc."

⁶⁴ R, S: "hæc."

⁶⁵ Deest R; S: "hæ."

⁶⁶ R: "dua"; S: "duæ."

⁶⁷ S: ".c.h."

⁶⁸ Deest R.

⁶⁹ S: "illud."

⁷⁰ S: "terciã."

⁷¹ S: "hexagoni."

⁷² S reads simply: "tendit a 3°."

⁷³ R, S: "hæc."

⁷⁴ R, S: "hæc."

⁷⁵ Sloane 3854 adds in margin: "i~ illo."

⁷⁶ Text between * deest in Sl.3854.

⁷⁷ S: "hexagoni."

eiusdem secundi eptagoni⁷⁸ quod est .a. quinta cruce⁷⁹ vsque ad ultimam scribatur hoc aliud sacrum creatoris nomen .libares. ita quod hec⁸⁰ sillaba .ly. scribatur in illo loco lateris qui est supra primam sillabam ipsius .michael. et hec⁸¹ sillaba .ba. in illo loco lateris qui est supra ultimam sillabam eiusdem, et hec⁸² sillaba .res. in illo loco eiusdem lateris qui est inter latus intersecans ipsum et ultimam crucem. Deinde in illo latere eiusdem secundi iptagoni⁸³ quod vadit a secundo angulo eiusdem secundi eptagoni⁸⁴ ad quintum⁸⁵ scribatur hoc⁸⁶ aliud sacrum⁸⁷ nomen⁸⁸ .halg.⁸⁹ cum coniunctina ita quod coniuunctina in [R11r] illo loco eiusdem lateris scribatur qui⁹⁰ est supra primam sillabam de .samael. et hæc litera .ly. in illo loco eiusdem lateris qui est supra ultimam eiusde~, et hæc sillaba .alg. in loco eiusdem lateris qui est inter latus intersecans ipsum et quartam crucem, Sed caue quod ra⁹¹ coniunctina sic debet scribi et⁹² cum titulo intersecante propter timorem [S3854 dei malum nolitu~⁹³ diuideutem. Deinde in illo latere eiusdem fol. 115r] [S62v]

⁷⁸ S: "hexagoni."

⁷⁹ S reads simply: "quod est a 5^{ta} cruce."

⁸⁰ R, S: "hæc."

⁸¹ R, S: "hæc."

⁸² R, S: "hæc."

⁸³ S: "exagoni."

⁸⁴ S: "exagoni."

⁸⁵ S: "quartum."

⁸⁶ Deest R.

⁸⁷ S: "sanctum."

⁸⁸ R adds "dei."

⁸⁹ Sloane 313: "lyalg"; S: "lialg."

⁹⁰ R: "quid"; S: "qi."

⁹¹ Deest S.

⁹² Deest S.

⁹³ R: "volitum."

eptagoni⁹⁴ tendente a quarta cruce ad sextam scribatur hoc aliud sacrum⁹⁵ dei⁹⁶ nomen .veham.⁹⁷ ita quod hæc sillaba .ve.⁹⁸ scribatur in illo loco eiusdem lateris qui est supra primam sillabam de .anael. et hæc litera .h. supra ultimam sillibam et hæc sillabam .am. in illo loco eiusdem lateris qui est latus secans ipsum et sextam crucem, Deinde in illo latere quod tendit a sexto angulo⁹⁹ eiusdem secundi eptagoni¹⁰⁰ ad primum angulum scribatur hoc aliud sacrum¹⁰¹ dei nomen .yalgal. ita quod hec¹⁰² litera .y. scribatur in illo loco¹⁰³ eiusde~ lateris¹⁰⁴ qui est supra primam sillabam de .gabriel. et hæc sillaba .al. super¹⁰⁵ ultimam et hæc sillaba .gal. in illo loco eiusdem lateris qui est inter latus intersecans ipsum et primam crucem, Deinde in medio lateris¹⁰⁶ primi et tertii eptagoni¹⁰⁷ a dextris¹⁰⁸ scribatur .vos.¹⁰⁹ et in sequenti latere eiusdem tertii eptagoni¹¹⁰ a dextris¹¹¹ hoc Nomen .duymas.¹¹² et in alio

[R11v]

⁹⁴ S: "hexagoni."

⁹⁵ S: "sanctum."

⁹⁶ Sloane 3854: "aliud dei sacrum"; Sloane 313: "a^d n^m dei sacru~."

⁹⁷ Sloane 3854: "ucham."

⁹⁸ Sloane 3854: "ue"; S: "Ne" (?).

⁹⁹ Deest R, S.

¹⁰⁰ S: "hexagon."

¹⁰¹ S: "sanctum."

¹⁰² S: "hæc."

¹⁰³ R: "in alla."

¹⁰⁴ S: "lateris eiusdem."

¹⁰⁵ S: "supra."

¹⁰⁶ R: "latere."

¹⁰⁷ S: "hexagoni."

¹⁰⁸ S: "dexteris."

¹⁰⁹ S: "Avs" (?).

¹¹⁰ S: "hexagoni."

¹¹¹ S: "dexteris."

¹¹² Sloane 313: "duynas"; S: "dvynas."

.Gyram. et in alio .Gram¹¹³ et in alio .Aysaram. et in alio .Alpha. et ω . in alio.¹¹⁴ Deinde in alio spaciolo quod est sub secundi et tertii angulo primo eptagonorum¹¹⁵ scribatur hoc nomen dei .el. et in alio spaciolo quod est a dextris sub angulis¹¹⁶ secundi et tertii eptagonorum¹¹⁷ sub secunda cruce hoc nomen .ON. et in illo¹¹⁸ alio spaciolo sub tertia cruce. iteru~¹¹⁹ hoc nomen .el. et in alio sub quarta cruce iterum .ON. et in alio sub quinta¹²⁰ cruce iterum .el. et in alio sub sexu ¹²¹ cruce iterum .ON. et in alio sub septima cruce .w. Deinde in illo¹²² spacio¹²³ quod clauditur¹²⁴ inter angulum primum¹²⁵ secundi eptagoni¹²⁶ et secundum angulum eiusdem et primum latus tertii eptagoni¹²⁷ et portionem circuli contingentem illos angulos depingatur una crux, in medio .S.¹²⁸ spacii illius. Et in bucca superiori a leua crucis scribatur hæc litera .a.¹²⁹ et super buccam crucis secundam a dextris hæc litera

¹¹³ R: "Grani."

¹¹⁴ Sloane 313, S: "et in alio ω ."

¹¹⁵ S: "est sub angulo primo 2ⁱ et 3ⁱ hexagonoru~."

¹¹⁶ S: "angulo."

¹¹⁷ S: "hexagonorum."

¹¹⁸ Deest R, Sl.313.

¹¹⁹ R, S: "itarum."

¹²⁰ R: "sequenti"; S: "5^{ta}."

¹²¹ R: "sequenti"; S: "6^{ta}."

¹²² R: "alio."

¹²³ S: "spaciolo."

¹²⁴ S: "claditur."

¹²⁵ Deest R.

¹²⁶ S: "hexagoni."

¹²⁷ S: "hexagoni."

¹²⁸ R: "scilicet"; S: "si."

¹²⁹ S: "A."

.g. Et sub bucca inferiori a dextris¹³⁰ scribatur hæc alia¹³¹ litera .a.¹³²
 Et sub quarta bucca hæc¹³³ litera .l. Deinde in alio spaciolo sequenti a [rR12r]
 dextris in medio scribatur hoc nomen¹³⁴ .ely.¹³⁵ et in alio hoc nomen
 .eloy.¹³⁶ et in alio .christos. et in alio .sother.¹³⁷ et in alio .Adonay.¹³⁸ et [S 3854
 in alio .Saday. Deinde scias qd in exemplaribus communiter¹³⁹ pen- col 2]
 tagonus fit de rubeo cum croceo in spaciis tincto. Et primus¹⁴⁰
 septagonus¹⁴¹ de azurio, secundus de croceo, tertius de purpureo, et [S 63r]
 circuli de nigro, et spacium inter circulos ubi est nomen de maximum.
 ac venerabile¹⁴² .schemhamphoras. tingitr croceo, omnia alia¹⁴³ spacia
 viridi habent tingi, Sed in operationibus aliter fieri debet, quia de san-
 guine aut. talpæ. aut .turturis. aut.¹⁴⁴vpupæ. aut .vespertilionis. aut
 omnium horum figuratur, et in pergameō virgineo vitulino,¹⁴⁵ vel¹⁴⁶

¹³⁰ S: "dexte=/is."

¹³¹ Deest R.

¹³² S: "A."

¹³³ S adds "alia."

¹³⁴ R adds "dei."

¹³⁵ S: "Ely."

¹³⁶ S: "Eloy."

¹³⁷ S: "Sother."

¹³⁸ R: "ADONAI."

¹³⁹ R: "quod communiter in exemplaribus."

¹⁴⁰ R: "primu~."

¹⁴¹ S: "hex^tagonus."

¹⁴² Sloane 313, Sl.3854 omit "de maximum ac venerabile."

¹⁴³ R: "alio."

¹⁴⁴ R, S: "at."

¹⁴⁵ R: "vituluio."

¹⁴⁶ Sloane 313: "aut."

equino, vel ceruino, et sic completur dei sigillum, Et per¹⁴⁷ hoc sanctum et sacrum sigillum quando erit sacratum poteris. facere operationes quæ postea dicentur¹⁴⁸ in hoc libro.¹⁴⁹ Modus autem sacrandi hoc sacrum sigillum talis¹⁵⁰ sicut sequitr¹⁵¹ debet esse.

[SS 313
fol 6.r]

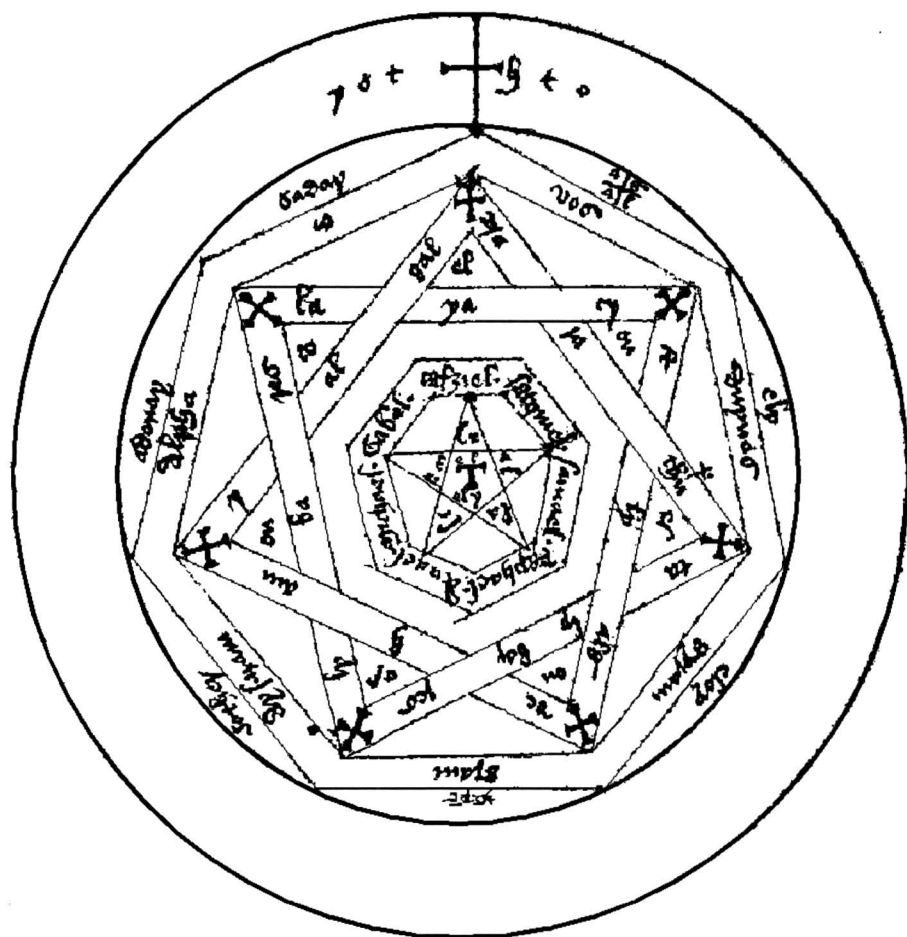


Figure 8. *Sigillum Dei Aemeth* from *Liber Juratus*.

¹⁴⁷ R: "par."

¹⁴⁸ S: "sequuntur."

¹⁴⁹ Sloane 3854: "libro sacro"; S: "saco"; Sloane 313: "libello \wedge sacro."

¹⁵⁰ S: "talitur."

¹⁵¹ S: "sequitur."

Inspirante domino dixit Salomon unus est solus deus, sola fides,[R12v] sola virt~s, quã dominus hominibus voluit revelari et distribui tali¹⁵² modo. Dixit¹⁵³ Angulus .Samael. Salomoni hic¹⁵⁴ dabis populo Israel qui et aliis similiter tribuent sic placuit creatori¹⁵⁵ et inbet ipsum Dominus¹⁵⁶ taliter consecrari.

Primo sit mundus operans non pollutus,¹⁵⁷ et cum deuocione faciat non astute, non commedat neque bibat, donec perfecerit opus, Et sanguis quo scriptu~¹⁵⁸ fuerit primo sit benedictus sicut postea dicetur, Deinde suffumigetur,¹⁵⁹ hoc sigillum ambra, musco, aloe, lapdano, albo, et rubeo, mastice, olibano, margaritis et thure. Invocando et orando dominum sicut postea de visione divina erudietur, Post¹⁶⁰ invocando angelos sicut etiam¹⁶¹ infra¹⁶² Dicetur, mutabitur tñ¹⁶³ peticio tali¹⁶⁴ modo,

S: Oratio

[S 3854

fol. 115v]

Ut tu domine per annunciationem conceptionem et citera. Hoc sacratissimum nomen ac sigillum tuum benedicere et consecrare

¹⁵² R: "hoc."

¹⁵³ R: "Dexit."

¹⁵⁴ R, S: "hoc."

¹⁵⁵ R omits "sic placuit creatori."

¹⁵⁶ S: "dominus ipsum."

¹⁵⁷ S: "polutus."

¹⁵⁸ R: "scriptus."

¹⁵⁹ R: "suffumigetr."

¹⁶⁰ S: "postea." In the margin of Sloane 313, there is a drawing of a hand pointing out the passage which is very similar to Dee's.

¹⁶¹ Deest S. In Sloane 313 it is written surpa linea.

¹⁶² Deest Sloane 3854.

¹⁶³ R: "tamen"; S: "tantum."

¹⁶⁴ R: "hoc."

digneris¹⁶⁵ ut per ipsum te¹⁶⁶ mediante possim vel possit talis¹⁶⁷ .N. celestes¹⁶⁸ coniungere¹⁶⁹ potestates aereas et terreas¹⁷⁰ cum infernalibus subingere, [S 63v] invocare, transmutare¹⁷¹ coniurare constringere, [S excitare, congregare,¹⁷² dispergere, ligare ac ipsos innocuos reddere homines placare, et ab eis tuas¹⁷³ petitiones graciosius¹⁷⁴ habere, inimicos pacificare, pacificatos disimigere, sanos insanitate custodire vel infirmare. infirmos curare. homines bonos a malis custodire. et distinguere, et cognoscere, omne corporale periculum euadere, Iudices in placito placatos reddere, victoriam in omnibus obtinere, peccata carnalia mortificare et spiritualia fugare vincere, et euitare, divitias in bonis augmentare et du~¹⁷⁵ in die iudicii apparebit. a dextris tuis cum sanctis et electis tuis tuam possit cognoscere¹⁷⁶ maiestatem

Et tunc illa nocte sub aere sereno¹⁷⁷ extra domum dimittat, Tunc habeas chirotecas¹⁷⁸ novas sine creace factas in quas quis numquam manum posuerit¹⁷⁹ in quibus signum glutetur, et sic complebitur hoc sacrum¹⁸⁰ sigillum, Cuius primus eptagonus¹⁸¹ .7. ordines, Secundus .7. Articulos Duplos tertius .7. sacramenta Designat¹⁸²

¹⁶⁵ R: "digue ris."

¹⁶⁶ R: "et."

¹⁶⁷ S: "tali"; Sloane 3854: "tal."

¹⁶⁸ S: "cælestes."

¹⁶⁹ S: "convincere."

¹⁷⁰ R: "terreac."

¹⁷¹ R: "transmittaere."

¹⁷² S: "congregare."

¹⁷³ R, S: "suas"; Sloane 313: "meas vel suas."

¹⁷⁴ S: "graciosi."

¹⁷⁵ R: "dum"; S: "domine" (?); Sloane 313: "deuiu~." (?)

¹⁷⁶ Sloane 3854: "agnoscere."

¹⁷⁷ Deest R.

¹⁷⁸ S: "chirothechas"; Sloane 313: "cirothecas."

¹⁷⁹ R: "posuit."

¹⁸⁰ Sloane 3854: "sacrosct~m"; S: "sacosctmus." (?)

¹⁸¹ S: "heptagonus."

¹⁸² S: "designant."

Appendix 2: Athanasius Kircher: *Oedipus Aegyptiacus*: Sigillum Aemeth (Rome, 1652–4)

Amuleti alterius Cabalistici heptagoni Interpretatio

Hoc amuletum heptagonum circulo inclusum Veneri dicatum est, vti in Arithmetica hieroglyphica ostendimus. In circuitu signatae sunt 72 litterae ex Cabala extractae, quarum vnaquaeque Angelum ex 72 indicat; de quibus vide Cabalam Hebraeorum fol. 275. Quis hic prima fronte non rideat maleferiatorum hominum stoliditatem, dum ineptijs huiusmodi Cabalisticis pessimé in Latinas literas transformatis, tantam tamen fidem habent, vt earum ope montes etiam se transferre posse, sibi persuadeant? Sed quoniam Diabolus humani generis hostis nihil agit, nisi quod in contumeliam Christi hominumque perniciem cedat; hinc ad Satanicam nequitiam tegendam, data opera, attributa Christi in cornibus heptagoni ponunt, id est, Angelus tenebrarum sub forma lucis sese exhibet; sunt autem sequentia attributa. Intra cornu AB, intra quadratum singulis Crucis angulis quatuor litterae insertae spectantur a.g.l.a. quod Hebraicum nomen est, & in Cabala celeberrimum **אגלא**, quod expansé idem significat ac, **אתה גבור לעולם אמי** Tu fortis in aeternum Domine: Si enim capitalis singularum vocum litteras in vnum iunxeris, prodibit nomen **אגלא** Agla, vti quadratum ostendit. Intra cornu BC ponitur **אלי** Eli, id est, Deus meus. Intra cornu CD ponitur **אלוי** Eloï, quod tametsi idem prorsus cum praecedente significet, tanquam diuersum tamen quidpiam posuerunt; vt vel hinc horum nebulonum supinam ignorantiam & inscitiam colligas. Intra DE Christus, deinde Sother, quod Graecé Saluatorem significat, né verminosum machinamentum Graeca voce carerer. Sequuntur postea Adonay & Sadai; illud Dominum, hoc Omnipotentem notat. Atque haec sunt septem attributa Christi, quibus subiungunt septem Veneris

Intelligentias, quae sunt Cafziel, Satquiel, Samael, Raphael, Mahel, Michael, Gabriel; quae vocabula Hebraica passim translata sunt; vt vel ex hoc ipso appareat, á Deo bonisque Angelis emanare minimé posse, quod tam turpiter, non nisi ab omnis turpitudinis Cacodaemone, transformatum est: talia sunt in heptagoni lateribus inscripta, verius ex culina Diaboli, quam ex Cabala translata vocabula. Inscribunt tandem huic heptagono pentagonum, in cuius centro litera T symbolum salutis; circa quod cum has literas **וְיָיָא** scribere debuissent, bestijs tamen inscitiores has supposuerunt e e e e y. Intra triangula vero ex Arabum amuletaria officina ponuntur yl, al, le, al, um, corruptissimé vti omnia alia; volebant enim illud Arabicum exprimere **لا اله الا الله** *la alla ella alla, non est Deus nisi Deus*, quod dum pronunciare nequirent, illorum loco dicta inconcinissima verba posuerunt, yl, al, le, al, um: sed quid sibi velint duo verba, um, explico. In dicto Arabum pronunciato semper hae voces sequuntur, **وهو محمد رسول الله** *Mahumet rassulalla*; atque harum capitales literas referunt um. Vt vel ex hoc colligas, quantis modis illudat Daemon incautis hominibus, vt dum Christiani esse volunt, occulte Mahumetanismum profiteantur; in hoc enim vnico Amuleto quatuor sectarum, Iudaicae, Christianae, Mahumetanae, Paganae, ab ijs, qui illud portant, fit professio, id que occulto pacto Daemonis, ad Christianae religionis contumeliam ea de causa instituto. Sed quid pentagonum sibi velit, expono. Pentagonum Veteres, vti in Arithmetica docuimus, Marti, vti & heptagonum Veneri dedicarunt; quo quidem indicabant, neminem Venerem possidere, qui priús Martem non attraxisset; de quibus in Astrologia Aegyptiaca susiús; hoc enim pentagono victoriam in omnibus sibi spondebant. Porró finis huius Amuleti erat, amorem & beneuolentiam omnium, & consequenter carnalium desideriorum plenam fruitionem, victoriamque contra omnia aduersa eius gestatione obtinere; quod ex adiuratione quam pronunciare solent, qua & Deum, & Angelos, veriús Caco-

daemones cum inuocatione Veneris aut Martis sacrilego & impio ritu sollicitare solent, patet, quam &, né Christianae aures vulnerentur, consultó omitto. Quicumque itaque huiusmodi possederit farinae Amuletum, illud non naturale, non Diuinum aut Angelicum, sed immediatum Diabolicae machinationis opus se possidere sibi persuadeat, non nisi cum aeterna animae ruina vsurpandum.

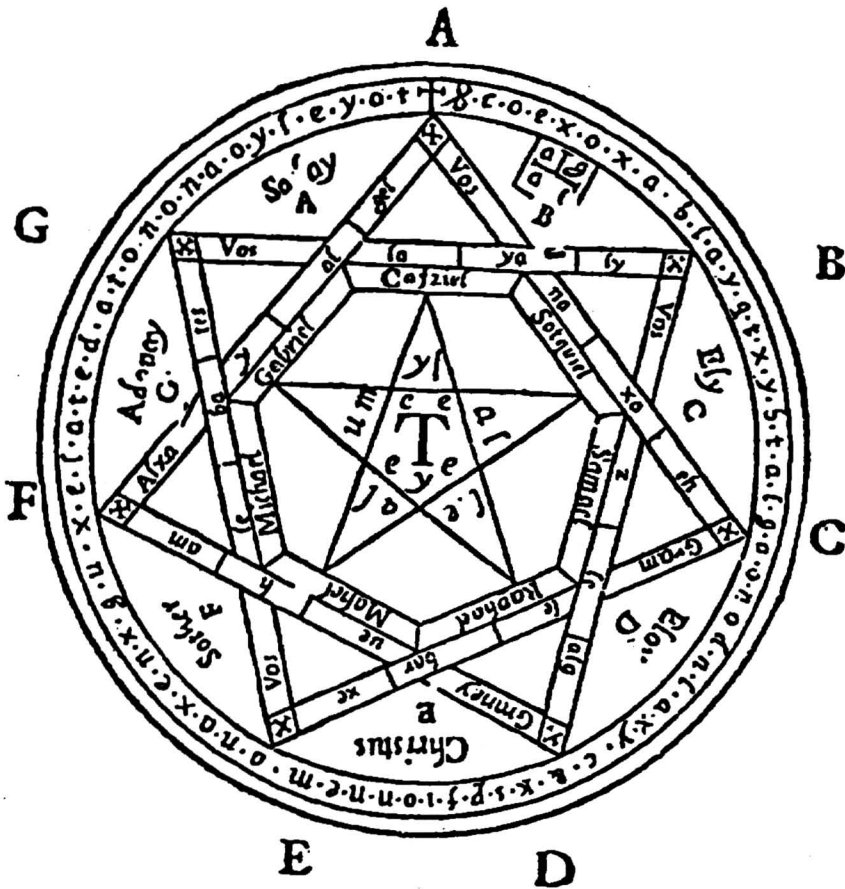


Figure 9. *Sigillum Aemeth* from Oedipus Aegyptiacus.

Appendix 3: *Theurgia Goetia*.¹

It deals with aerial spirits, whose nature is neither entirely good nor evil:

To call forth any of the aforesaid aerial spirits or their servants, choose the uttermost private, secret and most tacit room in the house or in some certain island, wooded grove, or the most occult and hidden place, removed from all comers and goers, that no one chance (if possible) happen that way into your chamber or whatsoever place else you act your concerns in. Observe that it be very airy because these spirits are of that nature.

You may call these spirits into a crystal stone or glass receptacle, this being the ancient and usual way of receiving and binding spirits. This crystal stone must be four inches diameter set on a table of art, made according to the following figure, which is truly called the secret table of Solomon, having his seal on your breast and the girdle about your waist as is shewed in the book *Goetia* and you cannot err. The form of the table is this:

¹ For a critical edition see Joseph Peterson, *The Lesser Key of Solomon* (York Beach, ME: Weiser Books, 2001), pp. 57–108.

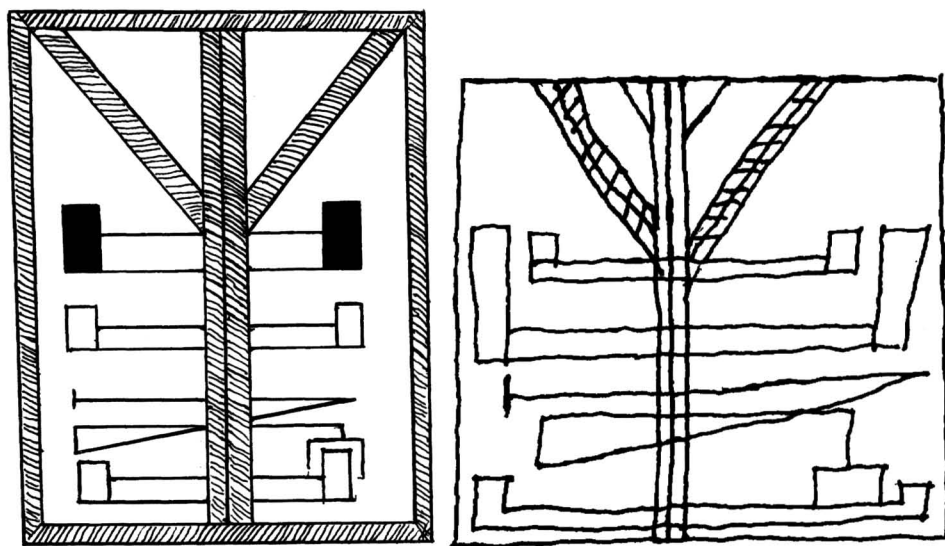


Figure 10. Seal of Solomon, from Harley 6483 (left); and from Sloane 3825 (right).

When you have thus got what is to be prepared, rehearse the conjuration following several times, that is, whilst the spirit comes, for without doubt he will come.

The Conjuration of the Aerial Spirits

I conjure thee O thou mighty and potent duke N. who ruleth under thy prince (or king) N. in the dominion of the East (or &c.) (Or, “I conjure thee o thou mighty and potent duke N. who wandereth here and there with thy prince N.”²)

I conjure thee N. that thou forthwith appear alone (or with thy servants) in this first (or second) hour of the day, here before me in this crystal stone (or here before this circle) in a fair and comely

² This form of the introduction is thus to be varied depending on the office, place and number thou wishest to conjure.

shape, to do my will in all things that I shall desire or request of thee. I conjure and powerfully command of thee N. by him who said the word and it was done, and by all the holy and powerful names of God and by the name of the only Creator of Heaven, Earth, and Hell, and what is contained in them : ADONAY, EL ELOHIM, ELOHE, ELION, ESCERIE ZEBATH, JAH, TETRAGRAMMATON, SADAY, the only Lord of God of Hosts, that thou forthwith appear unto me here in this crystal stone (or here before this circle) in a fair and comely human shape, without doing any harm to me or any other creature that JEHOVAH created or made, but come thee peaceably, visibly, and affably, now without delay manifesting what I desire, being conjured by the name of the eternal living and true God: HELIOREN, TETRAGRAMMATON, ANEPHEXETON, and fulfill my commands and persist unto the end. I conjure, command and constrain thee spirit N. by ALPHA & OMEGA, by the name PRIMEUMATON, which commandeth the whole host of heaven, and by all those names which Moses named when he by the power of those names brought great plagues upon Pharaoh, and all the people of Egypt: ZEBATH, ESCERIE, ORISTON, ELION, ADONAY, PRIMEUMATON, and by the name of SCHEMES AMATHIA which Joshua called upon and the sun stayed his course, and by the name of Hagios, and by the SEAL OF ADONAY and by AGLA, ON, TETRAGRAMMATON, to whom all creatures are obedient, and by the dreadful judgment of the high God and by the holy angels of heaven and by the mighty wisdom of the great God of Hosts, that thou comest from all parts of the world and make rational answers unto all things I shall ask of thee, and come thou peaceably, visibly and affably, speaking unto me with a voice intelligible and to my understanding. Therefore come, come thou in the name of ADONAY, ZEBATH, ADONAY, AMIORAM, come, why stayest thou, hasten: ADONAY SADAY, the King of kings commandeth thee!

When he is appeared show him his seal, and the pentacle of Salomon, saying as followeth:

The Address Unto the Spirit Upon His Coming

Behold the pentacle of Salomon which I have brought before thy presence. Behold the person of the Exorcist who is called OCTINOMOS, in the midst of the exorcism, who is armed by God and is without fear, who potently invocateth thee and called thee to appear. Therefore make rational answers to my demands and be obedient to me thy master in the name of the Lord: BATHAT rudhing upon ABRAC, ABEOR coming upon ABERER!

When thou hast had thy desire of the spirits, licence them to depart as is shewed in the first book *Goetia*, at the latter end of the conjurations.

Appendix 4: *Art Pauline*.¹

The second example comes from *The Art Pauline*, which describes calling forth spirits governing the hours, and spirits governing the signs of the zodiac:

First draw two concentric circles whereupon thou wilt draw the seal. In the center circle draw the ascendant to the right, and the lord of the ascendant to the left, then in the outer circle draw the rest of the planets in the following order: Moon, Mercury, Venus, Sun, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn.



The seal being thus made, lay it on the table of practise whose form we now show, on that part which is noted with the same character as the lord of the ascendant.

¹ For a critical edition see Joseph Peterson, *The Lesser Key of Solomon* (York Beach, ME: Weiser Books, 2001), pp. 109–45.

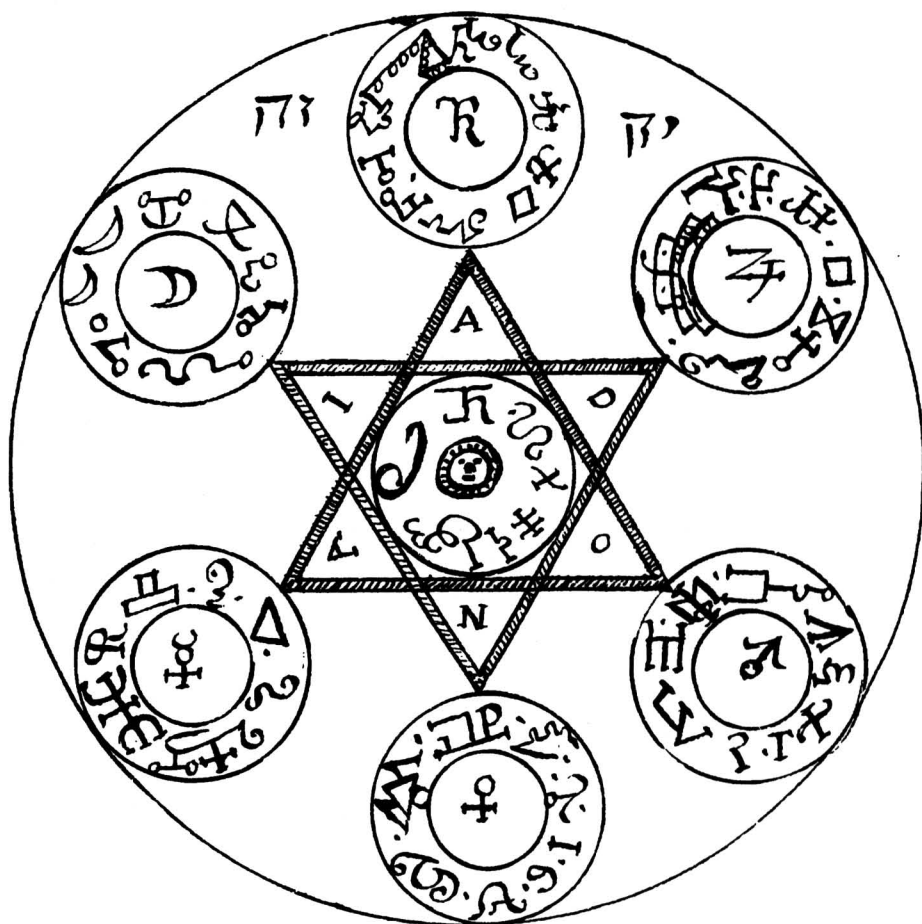


Figure 11. *Table of Practice from the Art Pauline.*

Perfume the seal with the thimmiamate proper to the planet, lay your hand upon it, and then say the following conjuration.

The Conjuration as Followeth:

O thou mighty, great and potent Angel N., who ruleth in the Nth. hour of the day, I the servant of the most high God do conjure and entreat thee in the name of the most omnipotent and immortal Lord God of

Hosts: JEHOVAH TETRAGRAMMATON, and by the name of that God which thou art obedient unto, and by the head of the hierarchy and by the seal or mark that thou art known in power by, and by the seven angels that stand before the throne of God and by the seven planets and their seals and characters, and by the angel that ruleth the sign of the twelfth house which now ascends in this Nth. hour, that thou wouldst be graciously pleased to gird up and gather thyself together and by divine permission to move and come from all parth of the world, wheresoever thou beest, and show thyself visibly and plainly in this crystal stone to the sight of my eyes, speaking with a voice intelligible and to my understanding and that thou wouldst be favorably pleased that I may have familiar friendship and constant society both now and at all tims when I shall call thee forth to visible appearance to inform and direct me in all things that I shall seem good and lawful uunto the creator and thee, O thou great and powerful angel N. I invoke, adjure, command and most powerfully call thee forth from thine orders and place of residence to visible appearance in and through these great and mighty signals and divine names of the great God, who was and is and ever shall be: ADONAY, ZEBAOTH, ADONAY AMIORAM, HAGIOS, AGLA, ON, TETRAGRAMMATON, and by and in the name PRIMEUMATON, which commandeth the whole host of heaven, whose power and virtue are most effectual for the calling and ordering of the creation, I do command thee to transmit thy rays visibly and perfectly unto my sight, and thy voice to my ears, in and through this crystal stone, that I may plainly see thee and perfectly hear thee speak unto me. Therefore move thee, O thou mighty and blessed Angel N., and in this potent name of the great God JEHOVAH, and by the imperial dignity thereof, descend and show thyself visibly and perfectly in a pleasant and comely form before me in this crystal stone to the sight of my eyes, speaking with a voice intelligible and to my apprehension, showing, declaring, and accomplishing all my desires that I

shall ask or request of thee both herein and in whatsoever truths or things else that is just and lawful before the presence of Almighty God, the giver of all good gifts, unto whom I beg that he wuld be graciously pleased to bestow upon me. I thou servant of mercy N., be thou therefore unto me friendly, and do for me as for the servant of the most high God, so far as God shall give thee power in office to perform, whereunto I move thee in power and presence to appear, that I may sing with his holy Angels, OMAPPA-LA-MAN, HALLELUJAH, AMEN.

Appendix 5: *The Art Almadel* (*Ars Almadel Salomonis*)¹

[Editor's note: A text of this name is mentioned in Trithemius, and R. Scot.]

By this art Salomon obtained great wisdom from the chief angels that govern the four altitudes of the world, for you must observe that there be four altitudes, representing the four corners of the world, East, West, North and South. The which are divided into twelve parts, that is, evert altitude into three, and the angels of every of these altitudes have their particular vertues and powers as shall be shewed in this following matter.

The Making of the Almadel

Make the Almadel of pure white wax, but coloured suitable to the altitude as will be shown. It is to be four square, and six inches over every way, and in every corner a hole, and write betwixt every hole, with a new pen, these words or names of God following, But this is to be done in the day and hour of Sol. Write upon the first part towards the East, ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, and upon the second towards the South, HELION, HELOI, HELI, and upon the West part: JOD, HOD, AGLA, and upon the fourt part which is the North write these names: TETRAGRAMMATON, SHADAI, JAH, and betwixt the first and the other quarters make the pentacle of Salomon thus , and betwixt the forst and the other quarters write this word, ANABONA, and in the middle of the Almadel make a Six-angled figure, and in the midst of it a triangle

¹ For a critical edition see Joseph Peterson, *The Lesser Key of Solomon* (York Beach, ME: Weiser Books, 2001), pp. 147–54.

wherein must be written these names of God, HEL, HELION, ADONAI, and this last name around the six-angled figure as well, as you may see in this figure, here made, it being for an example, &c.

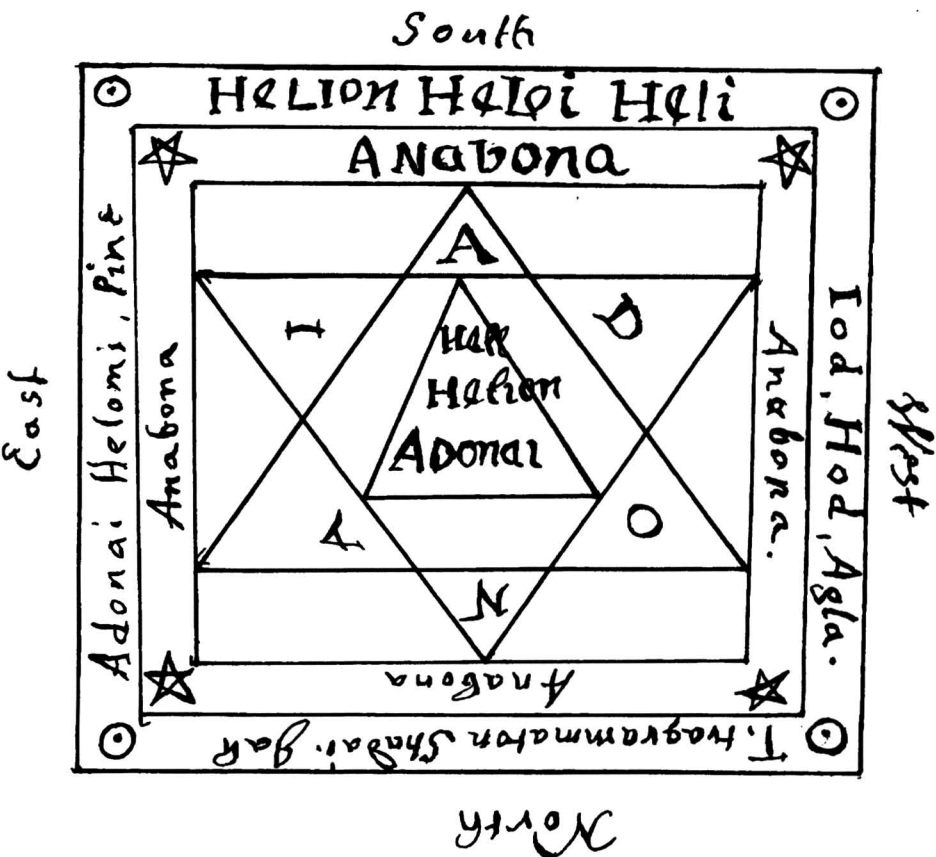


Figure 12. Almadel from Ars Almadel Salomonis.

And of the same wax there must be made four candles, and they must be of the same colour as the Almadel is of. You must divide the wax into three parts, one part for to make the Almadel of, and the other two parts for to make the candles of. And let there come forth

from every one of them a foot made of the same wax, for to support the almadel wth. This being done, in the next place you are to make a seal of pure gold or silver, but Gold is best, wherein must be engraven these three names: HELION, HELLUJON, ADONAY.

Note the first altitude is called Chora Orientis, or the East Altitude, and to make any experiment in this Chora, it is to be done in the day and hour of the Sun. The power and office of those angels is to make all things fruitful and increase, both animals and vegetables, in creation and generation, advancing the birth of the children, and making barren women fruitful, &c. Their names are these: Alimiel, Gabriel, Borachiel, Lebes and Hellison.

Note you must not pray for any angels but those that belong to the same altitude you have a desire to call forth. And when you operate, set the four candles upon four candle sticks, but be careful you do not light them before you begin to operate. Then lay the Almadel between the four candles upon the waxen feet that cometh from the candles, and lay the golden seal upon the Almadel. Then, having the invocation ready written on virgin parchment, light the candles and read the invocation as is set down at the latter end of this part.

And when he appeareth, he appeareth in the form of an angel carrying in his hand a fan or flag, having the picture of a white cross upon it. His body is wrapped round about with a fair cloud, and his face very fair and bright, and a crown of rose flowers is upon his head. He descends first upon the superscription of the Almadel, as if it were a mist or fog.

Then must the exorcist must have in readiness a vessel of earth, of the same colour that the Almadel is of, and the other of his furniture, it being in the form of a basin, and put therein a few hot ashes or coals, but not too much, lest it should melt the wax of the Almadel, and put therein three little grains of mastic in powder, so that it fumeth, and the smell may go upwards through the holes of the Almadel, when it is

under it, and as soon as the angel smells it he beginneth to speak with a low voice, asking what your desire is and why you have called the princes and governors of his Altitude. Then you must answer him, saying, I desire that all my requests may be granted, and what I pray for may be accomplished, for your office maketh appear and declareth that such is to be fulfilled by you if it pleases God, &c, adding further the particulars of your requests, praying with sincerity and humility for what is lawful and just, and that you shalt indeed obtain from him.

But if he doth not appear presently, you must then take the golden seal, and make with it three or four marks upon the candles, by which means the angel will presently appear as aforesaid, and when the angel departeth he will fill the whole place with a sweet and pleasant smell, which will be smelt a long time.

Note the golden seal will serve, and is to be used in the operation of all the altitudes. The colour of the Almadel belonging to the first chora is lily white; to the second chora a perfect red rose colour; the third chora is to be a green mixt with a white silver colour; the fourth chora is to be a black mixt with a little green of a sad colour.

Of the Second Chora or Altitude

Note that all the other three altitudes, with their signs and princes have power over goods and riches, and can make any man rich or poor, and as the first Chora giveth increase and maketh fruitful, so to these giveth decrease and barrenness, &c.

And if any have a desire to operate in any of the other three Choras or Altitudes, they must do it on Sundays in the manner as above is shewed, but do not pray for anything that is contrary to the nature of their office, or against God and his laws, but what God giveth according to the course of nature, that you may desire and obtain.

All the furniture that is to be used is to be of the same colour as the

Almadel is of, and the princes of this Second Chora are named as followeth: Alphariza, Genon, Geror, Armon, Gereinin.

When you operate, kneel before the Almadel with clothes of the same colour in a closet hung with the same colours also, for the holy apparation will be of the same colour. And when he is appeared, put the earthen bason under the Almadel with fire and hot ashes and three grains of mastic in powder, to fume as above written, and when the angel smelleth the perfume, he turneth his face towards you, asking the exorcist with a low voice why he called the princes of this Chora or Altitude. Then you must answer as before, saying: I desire that my request may be granted, and the contents thereof may be accomplished, for your offices make appear and declare that such is to be done by you if it please God, &c. You must not be fearful but speak humbly, saying: I recommend myself wholly into your office, and I pray unto your princes of this Altitude that I may enjoy and obtain all things according to my wishes and desires, &c. You may further express your mind in all particulars in your prayers. Do the like in the two other Choras that follow.

The angel of this second Altitude appeareth in the form of a young child with clothes of satin and of a red rose colour, having a crown of red gilly flowers upon his head, his face looking upwards to heaven; and is of a red colour and is compassed round about with a bright splendour, as the beams of the Sun. And before he departeth he speaks to the exorcist saying: I am your friend and brother. And he illuminateth the air round above with splendour, and he leaveth a pleasant smell, which lasteth a long time, &c.

Of the Third Chora or Altitude

In this Chora you are to do in all things as you are before directed in the other two. The angels of this Altitude are named as followeth:

Eliphamasai, Gelomiros, Gedobonal, Saranana, and Elomnia. They appear in the form of children or little women dressed in green and silver colours, very delightful to behold, and a crown of bay leaves, beset with flowers of white and green colours upon their heads. And they seem to look a little downwards with their faces, &c. They speak as the others do to the exorcist, and leave a mighty, sweet perfume behind them, &c.

Of the Fourth Chora or Altitude

In this Chora you must do as in the others, and the angels of this Chora are called Barchiel, Gediel, Gabiel, Deliel and Captiel. These appear in the form of little men or boys with clothes of a black colour, mixed with a dark green, and in their hands they hold a bird which is naked, and their heads are bear, only it is compassed round and beset with ivy and berries. They are all very beautiful and comely and are compassed round with a bright shining of divers colours. They leave a sweet smell behind them also, but it differeth from the others somewhat.

Of the Proper Times for Invoking These Angels

Note there are twelve princes ruling besides those in the four Altitudes, and they distribute their office amongst themselves, every one ruling thirty days, or thereabouts, every year. Now it will be in vain to call any of those angels unless it be those that then governeth, for every Chora or Altitude hath its limited time according to the twelve signs of the Zodiac, and in what sign the Sun is in, that angel or those angels that belong to that sign have the government. As, for example, suppose I would call the two first of those five that belong to the first Chora. Then choose the first Sunday on March, that is, after the Sun is entered Aries, and then I make my experiment. And so do the like if you will

the next Sunday after again. But if you will call the two second that belong to the first Chora, then you must take the Sundays that are in April, after the Sun is entered Taurus.

But if you call the last of the five, then you must take those Sundays that are in May, after the Sun is entered Gemini, to make your experiment in: do the like in the other Altitudes, for they have all one way of working. But the Altitudes have a name formed severally in the substance of heaven even as a character, for when the angels hear the names of God that are attributed to them they hear it by the vertue of that character. Therefore it is in vain to call any spirit or angel unless you know what names of God to call them by. Therefore observe the form of this following conjuration or invocation.

The Invocation for to Call Forth Any of the Foresaid Angels

O thou great, mighty, and blessed angel of God N, who ruleth as the chief and first governing angel in the first Chora or Altitude in the East, under the great prince of the East whom you obey, and who is set over you as king by the divine power of God, ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, who is the distributer and disposer of all things holy in Heaven, Earth, and Hell, I the servant of that God ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, which you obey, do invoke, conjure and entreat thee N, that thou forthwith appeareth. And by the vertue and power of the same God, ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, I do command thee forth by him whom you do obey and who is set over you as king by the divine power of God, that you forthwith descend from thy order or place of abode to come into me, and show thyself plainly and visibly here before me in this crystal stone, in thy own and proper shape and glory, speaking with a voice intelligible unto my understanding.

O thou mighty and blessed angel N, who art by the power of God ordained to govern all vegetables and animals, and causeth them and

all other creatures of God to spring, increase and bring forth according to their kinds and natures, I the servant of the same your God, do entreat and humbly beseech thee to come and show unto me all things that I shall desire of thee, so far as in office you can, or be capable to perform, if God permit to the same.

O thou servant of mercy N, I entreat thee and humbly beseech thee, in and by these three names of your true God, ADONAI, HELOMI, PINE, and do constrain thee in and by this powerful name ANA-BONA, that thou forthwith appeareth visibly and plainly in thy own proper shape and glory, in and through this crystal stone, that I may visibly see thee, and audibly hear thee speak unto me, that I may have thy blessed and glorious angelic assistance, familiar friendship and constant society, communication and instruction, both now and at all other times, to inform and rightly instruct me in my ignorance and depraved intellect, judgement and understanding; and to assist me both herein, and in all other truths, else what the Almighty Adonai, the king of kings, the giver of all good gifts, shall in his bountiful and fatherly mercy be graciously pleased to bestow upon me, Therefore O thou blessed angel N. be friendly unto me, and do for me so far as God hath given you power in office to perform, whereunto I move you in power and presence to appear that I may sing with his holy angels: O Mappala-man! Hallelujah! Amen.

Note this invocation is to be altered according to the Altitude and angel you wish to call forth.

When he is appeared, give him or them a kind entertainment, and then ask what is just and lawful, and that which is proper and suitable to his office, and you shall obtain it.

SO ENDETH THE BOOK
ARS ALMADEL SALOMONIS

Appendix 6: Excerpt from Sloane 3849

Manner of Proceeding in order to discover in the Crystall

Sic signum sancte Sanctis in fronte puery sic decendo In nomina pateris et filij et spiritus sancti amen dicat % paternoster / deinde istos spactanas o pater animary sequentes, viz t

Deus miserator¹ nostery et benedicat nobis illiminet vultum suum super nos et miseratas nostery ut Cognosamos in tarra viam tuam in omnibus gentibus salutarry tuum. Conficantur tibi populi deus Conficanter tibi populi omnes Litenter et exultent gentes quoniam iudicas populos iniquitate et gentes interra deriges Conficianter tibi populi deus Conficianter tibi populi omnes Terra dedit fractum suam

B

Benedicat nos deus deus noster
benedicat nos deua et metuante
eum omnes fines terra.

Gloria patri et fillio et Spiritu Sancto
Sicut erat in prinsipio et
secula seculorum amen

D

Deus² in nomine tuo salum me fac
et in vertute tua iudica me

D

Deus exoude orationem meum
auribus percipe verba oris mei

[f2v]

Quoniam aliena insurrexerunt aodversum me et fortes
que siderant animam meam et non proposuerunt deum ante

¹ Psalm 67.

² Psalm 54.

conspectum sum

Exe enim deus adiuuat me

et dominus susceptor est anime me

Avarta mala enemisis meis

et in veritate tua dispee illos

voluntary sacrificabo tibi et Confitebor

nomine tuo domine quoniam bonum est.

Quoniam Ex omni tribulatione eripaeisti me

et super inimicos meos dispecsit oculis meis

Glorie patrie

Misereri³ mei deus et secundum

magnam miserecordiam tuam

Et secundum multitudinem meserationem

tuarum deld in equitatem meam

dE (?)

Amptus Sana me abiniquitate mea

et apeccato mea mandame

Quoniam iniquitatem meame ego cognosco

et peccatum meam contra me est semper

Tibibi soli pecam et malim corum te fesient nist

insermonibus tuis et vnitas cumim dicaris

Exe emam iniquitatibus conseptus suam

et in peccatis conceptis me mater mea

Exe (?) enimam veritatatem delexisti in terta

et occulta sapientia manistastati mighi

Asparges me domine isopo et mundaborir

haenabis me et semper muem dealdabor
 Auditeiome dabis gouldinam et litia
 et extutabunt essa humilitata
 Cormandoem cre in me deus
 et spiritum nona in viseribus meis
 Me exrpissius mea sacie tua et
 Scriptum sanctum tuamene anseris ame
 Pedde mighi leticiam salataris tui
 et speritum principialis confirma me
 Docebo iniquos viuas tuas
 et impije adte conuertantur
 Libera mede sangunibus deus deus salutis
 me et exultabit lingua me Iusticiam tuam
 Domine labie me aparies
 et os meum ani**abit landem tuam
 Quoniam voluises sacri fissiam dedissem
 vtique holo castis non delectabris
 Sacrifitiam deo spritus contribulates
 cor Contrat et humilitatem deus non dispities
 Benin que sac domine in bona voluntate tua sion
 vt edificanter mari Jeruselem

[f3v]

tuncce acceptabis satis ficium iustisia obligationes
 et holocasta tunck imponetsuper altera
 tuim vertulos Amen. *****
 O Dominee Jesu cristie rex gloria mitte mihie
 trese angelos bono / ex parte tua dextra viz
 ancor annasor anelose qui dicante et ofendantie
 mihie veritatem sine falsetate et falatia de
 omnibus rebus quas interagabo domine Jesue
 cristi creator celie et tarra qui totam mundinum (?)

secistie exmihelo sac quod appariante isti angeli
boni prinsipialis palem puero / w: w: / exerdom (?)
nostrum Jesum cristium conceptus de spiritue
sancto vergine &c./

Sicat tues verus deus et homo mitte mihie
tres angelos bonos palem aparire ista cristalo
viz / Anser / annasor / Analos / admisu istris puerie
/ W: W: / per iste sacritissima nomina dei eloy tetera-
grammaton Saboth Alpha et omega principium
et finis expediatris vos angely dei per sanctam
mariam matrem domine nostri Jesu Cristy et per
nomen ordenes angelorum Cherubin Saraphin
tronos dominationes potestatis et principalis
et pervirtutem archangelius michalis gabrialis

qui non cestante clannary ante tronam dei semper
cantatis Sanctus Sanctus Sanctus dominus Deus
saboth quiest quierit et quiventurus / omnes reliquos qui
sunti? in est in decare mandum et pur puer celo et tarra
et parlac quod dominus noster Jesus cristus lactabit
ex manus beate maryu vergenis quanddo verus puer
erat elle in hac mundo et per vestem communam qua in dutus (?)
est Jesus et pervingen tam dequo sancta maria mageline
vnxit pedes Iesus et extarat eos calpilis cupitus suis
quando palem et sine mora comperiat ad visma istius
puery : N: / N: / ista cristalo *****

[f4r]

**(?) oher it will appeare as it weare a child in the Cristall
if hee doe not appeare begine againe and if hee had
apeared then spake to the first Angeli dei beni
venistie in nomini pateris et fillij et spiritus sanctus
pillam intencionem quam habuit dominus deus

noster Iesus Christus minente (?) quando deposuit
luisiseri mundecelom putrem serioris et eligit vos
probelantisiones angelis.

Then Cale for the second as you due for the first
so proside and begin againe vntill you haue them all
three and then say to the second Angell

Angeli dei beni venistis in nomine pateris et fillij et

[f4v]

Spiritus sancti per verginalem materis domine
nosteri Iesu Christie et per vergini tatem Johannes
baptisti et per capitutenis *

proceed to the theerd

Angeli dei beni venistis in nomine pateris et feillij et spiritis sancti
pre nerentiam passiones domine nostri Iesu Christi et per renerentiam
sacrimenti illiaris que dominus noster Iesus cristus fecit in send sua et
dedit desiputis suis dictus hoc est corpus meum hoc cessat * *

Then say this exortation ouer the cristall folowinge and mat this +
synd.

Quose Angeli + rogo vos presipio vobis vos exorsiso peromina prin-
cipialibe nomina qui noliset homin~ loqui nisi sp'us sancti + et per
reuerentiam sacrementy pasio dei nosteri Iesus Cristi et reuerentunam
sacromentie alteris q'd (?) deus noster Iesus cristus fecit cena sua et
dedid dicipulis suis dicence hoc este corpus meum q'd (?) mostratis
mihe sine salcitate vel fallatia petita et loquisita et petenta et reuerenda

Theise exortations you must repeate and let the child name them by
there names sainge ancor anasor anelos shew mee the persons and the
aparell of them that hath such a mans mony to this childe and the will
declare.

[f5r]

the pson or persons and the apparell of them that had such a mans
money [struck out: to this child] and if the Come not the first day folow

still to the Childe untill you may haue a sight of them for the will apeare
personalie as the to be knowne and the will declare how much of the
mony is spent and how much is unspente.

And the feror day the better and let the child sit with his face to
ward the sune lookinge in the cristal and euer aske him what hee seeth
as you Reade

Trantiatis angeli dei et lenam vbi deus nostr Jesus Christus vos
ordinauit et quoties cunque invocauero esto mihi parietis et ad measm
interrogationem et mandatum est mihi quoties cunque sine mora veni-
atis, In nomine patris et fillij et spiritus Sankti Amen +

Maim + fan + Abagarus +
Abrinon +

[5v, 6r
blank]
[6v]

Bibliography

- Abano, Peter de. *Heptameron: or Magical Elements*. London, 1655.
- Agrippa, Henry Cornelius. *De occulta philosophis Libri Tres*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1992, English translation by Robert Turner, published as *Three Books of Occult Philosophy*, London, 1651.
- . *The Fourth Book of Occult Philosophy*. Translated by Robert Turner. London, 1655.
- Anon. *Lemegeton, or, the Lesser Key of Solomon*, manuscripts in the British Library: Harley 6483, Sloane 2731 (incomplete), Sloane 3825.
- Anon. *Tractatus Varii Magici*, Sloane 3849.
- Arbatel. *De Magia Veterum*. Basel, 1575. English translation by Robert Turner, published as *Arbatel, Of Magic*, London, 1655.
- Barrett, Francis. *The Magus*. London, 1801. Reprint York Beach, ME: Samuel Weiser, 2000.
- Brahe, Tycho. *The Magical Calendar*, 1582. Reprint *Magnum Opus Hermetic Sourceworks*, Edinburgh, 1979.
- Bruno, Giordano. *De magia*, in *Jordani Bruni Nolani Opera latine conscripta*. Ed. Tocco. Neapoli, 1879–91. English translation in Robert De Lucca, Richard J. Blackwell, and Alfonso Ingegno, *Giordano Bruno, Cause, Principle and Unity: And Essays on Magic*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998.
- Calder, I. R. F. *John Dee Studied as an English Neoplatonist*, 2 vols. Ph. D. diss. The Warberg Institute, London University, 1952.

- Charlesworth, James H. *The Old Testament Pseudepigrapha*. New York: Doubleday, 1983.
- Clulee, Nicholas H. *John Dee's Natural Philosophy—between science and religion*. London and New York: Routledge, 1988.
- Couliano, Ioan P. *Eros and Magic in the Renaissance*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987.
- Davidson, Gustav. *A Dictionary of Angels Including the Fallen Angels*. New York: The Free Press, 1967.
- Dee, Dr. John. *General and Rare Memorials pertayning to the Perfect Arte of Navigation*. London, 1577.
- Dee, Dr. John and Edward Kelly. *Liber Mysteriorum Sextus et Sanctus*. 1583, manuscripts in the British Library: Sloane 3189 (original in Kelly's handwriting), Sloane 2599.
- . *Mysteriorum Libri Quinque*, 1581–1583. Sloane 3188 (original in Dee's handwriting), Sloane 3677 (copy by E. Ashmole).
- . *A True & Faithful Relation . . . between Dr. John Dee... and some Spirits*, Edited by Meric Casaubon. London, 1659.
- . *The Heptarchia Mystica of John Dee*. Introduced and annotated by Robert Turner. Edinburgh: Magnum Opus Hermetic Sourceworks, 1983.
- French, Peter J. *John Dee: The World of an Elizabethan Magus*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1972.
- Gollancz, Hermann. *Sepher Maphteah Shelomoh*. London: Oxford University Press, 1914.
- Halliwell, James O., ed. *The Private Diary of Dr. John Dee*. London: Camden Society Publications, 1842. Reprint: New York: AMS Press, 1968.
- Hay, George, ed. *The Necronomicon*. Jersey: Neville Spearman, 1978.
- Honorius of Thebes. *Liber Juratus, or the Sworne Book of Honorius* (13th century?). Manuscripts in the British Library, Royal 17AxlII, Sloane 313, 3849 (excerpts), 3854, 3885.

- Josten, C. H. *Elias Ashmole (1617–1692): His Autobiographical and Historical Notes, His Correspondence, and Other Contemporary Sources Relating to His Life and Work*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1966.
- , trans. *Monas Hieroglyphica*. AMBIX, XII, 1964, 84–221.
- Katz, David S. *Philo-Semitism and the Readmission of the Jews to England*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1982.
- Kieckhefer, Richard. *Forbidden Rites: A Necromancer's Manual of the Fifteenth Century*. University Park, PA: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1997.
- Kircher, Athanasius. *Oedipus Aegyptiacus*, 4 vols. Rome, 1652–1654.
- Laycock, Donald. *The Complete Enochian Dictionary, a Dictionary of the Angelical Language as Revealed to Dr. John Dee and Edward Kelley*. London: Askin Publishers, 1978.
- Lilly, William. *Worlds Catastrophe*. London, 1647.
- Moody, Raymond A. *Scrying—The Art of Female Divination*. Marietta: R. Bemis Publishing, Ltd., 1995.
- Pickering, Chris. "The Scryers of John Dee," *Hermetic Journal* 32, 1986, pp. 9–14.
- Postel, Guillaume. *De originibus*. Basel: Ioannem Oporinum, 1553.
- Peterson, Joseph H., ed., *The Lesser Key of Solomon*. York Beach, ME: Weiser Books, 2001.
- Reeds, Jim, "John Dee and the Magic Tables in the *Book of Soyga*," www.research.att.com/~reeds/soyga.html; to appear in a forthcoming book, *John Dee: Interdisciplinary essays in English Renaissance Thought*, Kluwer of Amsterdam (due to publish 2002).
- Regardie, Francis Israel, ed. *The Golden Dawn*, 4 vols., 1937–1940. St. Paul, MN: Llewellyn Publications, 1971.
- Roberts, Julian, and Andrew G. Watson. *John Dee's Library Catalogue*. London: The Bibliographical Society, 1990.
- Scot, Reginald. *The Discoverie of Witchcraft*. London, 1584.

- Sherman, William H. *John Dee, the Politics of Reading and Writing in the English Renaissance*. Amherst: University of Massachusetts Press, 1995.
- Tart, Charles. *Body Mind Spirit*. Charlottesville: Hampton Roads, 1997.
- Trithemius, Johannes. *Book of Secret Things, and Doctrine of Spirits*, in Francis Barrett's *The Magus*, London, 1801, p. 135bis.
- . *De Septem Secundeis*. Translation in William Lilly, *Worlds Catastrophe*. London, 1647.
- Turner, Robert, trans. *Ars Notoria*, London, 1657.
- Whitby, C. L. *John Dee's Actions with Spirits*. 2 vols. New York: Garland, 1991.
- Wilson, Colin. *Alien Dawn, An Investigation into the Contact Experience*. New York: Fromm International, 1998.
- . "Introduction to the Necronomicon," *Gnostica*, 48, Nov. 1978, p. 62.
- Yates, Frances Amelia. *The Rosicrucian Enlightenment*. Boulder, CO: Shambhala, 1972.
- . *The Art of Memory*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1966.

INDEX

- Aaoth, 115
Ab, 136
Abano, Peter de, 11, 26, 38, 81, 82, 84, 145
abductees, UFO, 39
Abraham, 58
Abulafia, Abraham, 13
actor, 165
Adam, 67, 262, 267, 354
ADAMS Treatise from Paradise, 113
adeptship, 6
Adle streete, 48
Adonay, 82, 126
Aemeth, 12-14, 22, 23, 40, 42, 70, 79-80, 89-91, 144, 145, 148, 162, 285, 367, 377, 395, 400, 404, 421-34, 435
Aethyrs, 32
AGLA, 10, 71
Agricola, *De Re Metallica*, 366
Agrippa, Henry Cornelius, 4, 10, 11, 16, 21, 22, 25, 26, 29, 34, 38, 56, 62, 76, 77, 80, 83, 84, 124
air, 168-70, 199, 213, 243
Akele, 133
alchemy, 6, 21, 30, 31, 33, 224, 346
Aldaraia sive Soyga, see *Soyga*
Almadel, 46, 445-52, 446
Alpha et Omega, 379
Alphabet, 379
Adamical, 373
Angelic, 32, 93, 269-71, 274, 282, 300, 331-3, 349, 400, 405
treasure map, 257, 265, 346

- America, 9, 263
 An (name of angel), 138, 145,
 186, 192, 247
 Anael (see also Annael), 20, 61,
 423
 Anchor, Anachor, Anilos, 12, 20,
 21, 26, 66-8, 456
 angelic language, see language,
 angelic
 angelic Tables, 391
 angels' voices, 352
 angels, wicked angel belonging
 to EK, 391
 animals, 169
 Ankwicz-Kleehoven, Hans, 7
 Annael (see also Anael), 25, 56,
 61, 64, 65, 84, 210, 213, 410
 Antichrist, 30, 197, 395
 Apocalyptic prophecies, 8
 Apocrypha, 31, 57
 Apostles, 272, 281
 apothecary, 22, 366
 apparel, 125
 Arabic, 1, 434
 book, 15, 40, 353
 ARARITA, 10
 Arbatel *of Magic*, 10, 11, 20, 83
 archangels, 25
 Aristotle, 10
 Armada, see Spanish Armada
Ars Almadel, 23, 45
Ars Notoria, 28-9
Ars Paulina, 23, 44
 art of memory, 16
 Arthurian legends, 9
 Ashmole, Elias, 21, 23, 30, 35-7,
 149, 253-5, 354
 *The Institution, Lawes &
 Ceremonies of the most
 Noble Order of the
 Garter*, 48
 Asmodeus, 72-3
 astrology, 1, 2, 8, 397, 398, 434
 astronomy, 1, 6, 8
 Ath, 136
 Aue (name of angel), 138, 145,
 192, 247
 Austria, House of, 416
 Azalus, 12
 Azdobn, 133
 Babalel (name of angel), 172,
 185, 232, 233, 236, 237,
 251, 402
 Bacon, Francis, 7
 Bacon, Roger, 4, 16
 *De mirabili potestate Artis et
 Naturae*, 60
 Bagenol, 172, 194, 243, 250,
 397
 Baginol, 249-50
 Bagonel, 194
 balance, 189
 Baligon, 167, 171, 172, 186,
 187, 191, 200, 202, 209,

- 213, 237, 243, 248-52, 397, 401
- Bamnode, 172, 251, 252
- Bapnido, 172
- Barashnum ceremony of purification, 394
- Barees, 188
- Barnes, Alderman, 245
- Barrett, Francis, 16, 25
- Basmelo, 172, 251
- Bathori, Stephen, King of Poland, 39, 416
- battles, 235, 267, 271
- beast(s), 103, 198
- Beelzebub, 60
- Befafes, 65, 172, 185, 196, 201, 233-6, 250, 251, 310, 401
- beheading, 404
- Beigia, 135
- Belmagel, 388, 391
- Ben (a spiritual creature), 264
- Bermale, 172, 251
- Bernole, 172, 251
- Besgeme, 172
- Bible, 10, 15, 25, 31, 56, 411
- birds, 396
- Black Raven, The, 363
- Blakley, 244
- blasphemers, 191, 390
- Blisdon, 172, 186, 192, 198, 201, 236, 240-1, 264, 385
- Blokley, 257, 344
- Blumaza, 172, 183, 187, 190, 191, 200, 201, 244, 251, 397-8
- Bnagole, 172, 251-2
- Bnapsen, 172, 186, 242, 398
- Bnaspol, 172, 186, 192, 240-1, 264, 265, 385
- Bobogel, 172, 183, 184, 190, 207, 208, 216, 217, 221, 222, 225, 227-30, 237, 248, 250, 252, 385, 397
- Bodleian, 14
- Bonefon, 172, 252
- Bonefor, 251
- Book of Consecrations*, 12
- Book of Saint Dunstan*, 257, 264, 346, 359, 403
- Book of This Prophecy*, 392
- book, covering, 324
- Book, the Holy*, see *Loagaeth*
- books, the holy, 395
- Bornogo, 172, 185, 195, 201, 222, 248, 385, 397
- bottomless pit, 197
- Bragiop, 172, 251
- Brahe, Tycho, 25, 57
- Bralges, 172, 187, 200, 201, 242, 244
- Branglo, 172, 251
- Brentford (Braynford), 359
- brimstone, 72, 73
- Brisfli, 172, 251

- Britannia, 5, 7, 347
 British Empire, 2, 7
 British Museum, 19, 23
 Brorges, 172, 186, 199, 201,
 241, 242
 Bruno, Giordano, 4, 10, 16
 Burghley, Lord (William Cecil,
 the Lord Treasurer), 7, 40,
 244-5, 282, 353
 Butler, E. M., 38
 Butmono, 172, 185, 192, 196,
 198, 201, 236, 237, 385
 Bynepor, 9, 172, 185, 237, 238,
 385
 Calder, I. R. F., "John Dee
 Studied as an English
 Neoplatonist" (1952), xiii, 9,
 39
 Calendar, Dee's proposal to
 reform, 40, 245, 282
 Call, 110
 Canapy, 414
 Carmara, 183, 184, 187, 188,
 191, 193, 200, 202, 203,
 207, 213, 230, 243, 247,
 248, 251, 401
 Casaubon, Meric, 5, 31, 32, 34,
 35, 47
 Casziel, 423
 Catholic Church, 5
 Cecil, William, see Burghley
 Cedar, 370
 cedarwood, 48
 chair, 70
 Chamber, 179, 403
 chaos, 228
 chaplet, 49
 Character, see lamine
 characters, 156, 247, 250
 Charles the 2nd, King, 48
 Charlesworth, James H., 24
 chest, 48
 Chirurgeon, 48
 Christ, 53, 58, 62, 112, 146,
 273, 323, 401, 433
 church, 72, 90
 of God, 226
 cipher, 346
 circle, 142, 230, 111, 229
 Cis, 58
 City, 297
Clavicula Salomonis, See *Key of
 Solomon*
 Clerkson, Mr., 18, 19, 113
 clothing, 21
 Clulee, Nicholas, 3, 19, 20, 30,
 38-9
 *John Dee's Natural
 Philosophy* (1988), xiii
 colonization, 2, 7, 263
 colors, 71
 comet, 8
 Conciliation, 156, 381
 contrition, 368

Cooper, Jane, 22
 copper, 134-5, 194
 Corabiel, 29, 139, 144-5
 corn, 178
 corpses, 197
 Cottonian Collection, 35, 65
 Cotton, John, 23
 Couliano, Ioan, 7, 16
 council, 168
 cross of olive wood, 49
 Crowley, Aleister, 3
 Crucifix, 146
 cryptography, 30
 crystal ball, 15, 19-21, 25, 37,
 61, and passim
 frame for the, 19, 63
 Cumael, 29, 124
 cup, 83
 cure, 333
 Danes, 347
 Daniel, 58, 92
 Daughters of Light, see *Filiae Bonitatis*
 David, King of Israel, 70, 283
 Davis, John, 7, 245, 263, 281
 dead raised, 177
 Death, Gate of, 199
 debt, 364
 Dee, John
 48 *Claves Angelicae*, 32, 47
 Book of Invocations, 47
 children, 407

Compendium Heptarchiae Mysticae, 20, 91, 183
De Bonorum Angelorum, 183
De Heptarchia Mystica, 20, 36, 37, 47, 183, 193
 diary, xiv, 37, 73, 180, 244
Famous and Rich Discoveries, 65
General and Rare Memorials (1577), 8
Liber Scientiae, Auxilij et Victoriae Terrestris, 47
Monas Hieroglyphica, 6
Propaedeumata Aphoristica, 6
Tabula bonorum angelorum invocationes, 20, 34
True and Faithful Relation, 23, 32-5
 Dee, Jane, 18, 72, 407, 409
 Dee, Katherine (John Dee's daughter), 72
 Dee, Rowland, 5
 demons, 17
 destruction, 212
 devil, 382, 387
 devils, 315, 363, 387-8, 391, 417
 Devonshire mines, 418
 Dignification, 381, 398
 Dionysius (Pseudo-), 10, 11, 29
 directions, cardinal, 24, 76, 445

- disease, 210
dissolution, key of, 197
Dmal, 135
dog, 62
dragon, 198, 260
Duke of Lauderdale, 354
Duling, D. C., 24
Dunstan, Book of Saint, see
Book of Saint Dunstan
E (name of angel), 192
eagle, 119
Earth, 168-70, 188, 196-7, 358,
380, 394
spirits of the, 240, 348
earths, 402, 406, 408, 412
Egyptians, 235
Ekiei, 136
El (see also rod), 29, 98, 99, 138,
139, 141, 142, 144, 145,
186, 352-3, 365, 367
Elias, 268
Elizabeth I, Queen, 2, 7, 33, 215,
244-5, 282, 329, 403
enchanters, 191, 417
End of all things, 209
England, 187, 194, 284, 359,
365
English language, 5, 411
Enoch, 58, 268, 354, 355
Book of, 31, 40
Enoch's Tables, 34-5, 162
Enochian, 23, 24, 32, 37
calls, 235
language, 3
magic, 2
ensignes of Creation, 23, 151,
399-400
entities, 37
eroticism, 16
Esdras, 31, 40, 58, 85, 355
Ese (name of an angel), 133, 152,
155
Esemeli, 136
etymology, 41, 56
Euclid, 5
Evans, John, 21
Eve, 354
evil spirits (see also devils), 40
Excise Office, 48
Experimenta de Speculo, 12
externa bibliotheca, 11
face bracket, 224
fairies, 315
fasting, 21, 64
feet, (placement during practise),
213
hollow feet of the holy table,
395-6, 404
Ficino, Marcilio, 10
filiae, 166
Filiae Bonitatis (Daughters of
Goodness) or Filiolae Lucis
(Little Daughters of Light),
132-3, 136, 141-2, 144, 166

- Filiae Filiarum Lucis, 136, 155
 Filii Filiorum, 188, 248
 Filii Lucis (Sons of Light), 134,
 142, 365
 filios filiorum (the sons of the
 sons), 137
 fire, 168, 169, 237
 great fire of London, 49
 inward, 262
 fish, 235
 flag, 187, 193-4
 Flesh, 380
 flood, 355
 food, 227
 forgery, 21
 Fornication, 417
 Fortitudo Dei, 83-6
 = Michael, 90
 Fotheringay Castle, 405
 frame, 66, 71, 349
 French, Peter. J., xiii, 6, 21
 Friday, 243
 Gabriel, 20, 25, 29, 53, 56, 76,
 83, 85, 120, 124, 423
 Galas, 114-15
 Galatinus, Petrus, 111
 Galethog, 115, 123
 Gardener, Robert, 180
 Gargat, 279
 Gariladrah, 356-7
 Gate of Death, 199
 gates of Nature, seven, 229
 Gedeon, 58
 Geller, Uri, 39
 gems, 414
 Genesis, 354
 geography, 1, 41
 Geometry, 190
 Geonic lore, 29
 George (a servant of Dee's), 73
 Gethog, 114-15, 161
 Gikatilla, Joseph, 79
 Gilbert, Adrian, 7, 40, 245, 263,
 272, 273, 280-2, 285, 352,
 372, 386, 401, 418
 ghosts, 237
 Globe (circular table), 158, 188,
 194, 202, 227, 228, 247,
 250, 252, 402, 183, 245,
 398-9, 402
 diaphonous, 162, 203, 205,
 207, 210, 217, 226, 229,
 239, 299
 Gnostic, 30
 Goethe, 7
 Goetia, 24
 gold, 22, 134-4
 Golden Dawn, 3, 34-5
 Goliath, 283
 Gollancz, Hermann, 24, 46
 Gordanil, 347
 governors, 146
 Governors of the Earth, 192
 Government, new, 239

- grace, 60, 364, 377, 391
 God's, 387
 heavenly, 286
 Greek, 5, 39, 127, 356, 359,
 367, 411, 433
 Grimoires, 11, 13, 21, 23
 gryphon, 119
 Hagonel (name of angel), 138,
 186, 187, 188, 191, 192,
 194, 203, 204, 208, 213
 hairy spirit, 257, 275
 Hamuthz Gethog, 161
 Haniel, 29, 57, 124
 Harkness, Deborah E., 14
 haunting, 72
 Haward, Francis, 40, 329
 heart, 224, 380
 Hebrew, 5, 13, 25, 29, 56-7,
 112, 139, 148, 411,
 433
 Heeoa, 135
 hell, 273, 323, 390
 Henry VIII, King, 5
 Heptagon (heptagonum stellare),
 194-6, 199, 203, 230, 234,
 241-2, 244, 247-8, 250, 349,
 365-6, 397, 423
Heptameron or Elements of
 Magic (Peter de Abano), 11,
 24, 26, 82, 84, 145
 Heptarchic magic, 2
 herbs, 164, 169, 224
 Heremita, Marcus, *De Lege*
 Spirituali, 367
 Hermeticism, 2
 Hersham, 48
 hexagram, 23, 24
 Hilton, Robert, 73
 history, 1
 Holy Ghost, 316
 holy table, see Table, the Holy
 Honorius of Thebes (see also
 Liber Juratus), 12
 Horlun, 114-15
 Hudson, Mr., 245
 Huets cross, 346
 Hunnis, William, 386
 Husey, John, 257, 279, 344, 359
 Hyde, Mr., 18
 hypnagogic images, 15
 hypnotism, 39
 I (name of an angel), 135
 Iamblicus, 10
 Iana (name of an angel), 133,
 152
 Idolatry, 90
 Ih, 135
 Il (angel), 14, 17, 247, 352, 365-
 7, 373, 380-3, 389
 Ilemese (name of an angel), 138,
 187, 192, 367
 illuminate, 390
 Illuminati, 5
 Illumination, 272

- Ilr, 135
 Impura, 189
 infidels, 273
 Innon, 114-15
 Inquisition, 4, 33
 Invocating, 170
 iron, 134-5
 Isaac, 58
 Islam, 22
 Israel, 60, 106, 114, 137, 195,
 296, 415
 Ive, Mr., 18
 Ized, 136
 Jacob, 58
 James, 58
 James I, King, 33
 Jekyll, Sir Joseph, 35
 Jesus, 8
 Jews, 6, 9, 13, 31, 39, 319, 355,
 434
 John the Baptist, 268
 Johnson, Ben, 12
 Jones, Robert, 48-9
 Jones, Susanna, 48
 Joshua, 58
 Josten, C. H., 3, 30, 38
 Jove, 366
 joy, 391
 Judaism, 6
 Jude, Epistle of, 31, 354
 judge, 414
 Jupiter, 134, 139, 165
 Kabballah, 2, 3, 6, 9, 13, 79,
 111-12, 433
 Kelley, Edward, 13, 18, 21, 38,
 180 and passim
 Kelley, Joanna, 386
 Kelley, Thomas, 22
 Kelly's sister, 21
 key of Prayer, 129
Key of Solomon (Clavicula
 Salomonis), 24-6, 394
 key, holy, 393
 Kieckhefer, Richard, 12, 16
 kings, 156, 168-9, 184, 188,
 189, 191, 192, 206, 213,
 230, 232, 233, 236-7, 240,
 247, 249-50, 253, 382, 385,
 397, 398, 401
 Kircher, Athanasius, 22, 421,
 433-5
 knowledge, 367
 universal, 9
 Krakow, 403
 lamb, 95
 lamb's head, 261, 265
 lamin (character of conciliation,
 a sigil of gold), 14, 24, 68,
 72, 73, 85, 151, 179, 192,
 214, 381, 384, 385, 386,
 387, 395, 398
 counterfeit, 388
 false, 69
 Lancaster, 21, 125

- languages, 297
- language, angelic, 3, 31, 93, 267, 297, 306, 354, 402, 411
- Laski, Albrecht (Albertus), 9, 39, 40, 244, 403, 413, 416
- Latin, 39, 411
- Laycock, Donald, 37
- lead, 134-5, 224
- Lemegeton (Lesser Key of Solomon)*, 24, 27
- Leowitz, Cyprian, *De coniunctionibus magnis*, 8
- leprosy, 105
- Lesser Key of Solomon*, See *Lemegeton*
- Levanael, 29, 139, 144-6
- Liba (name of angel), 138, 192, 247, 402
- Liber Creationis*, 230, 248
- Liber Juratus* (Honorius of Thebes), 12, 13, 22, 25, 27-9, 57, 421-432
- Liber Loagaeth*, see *Loagaeth*
- library, 6
- Dee's, 281
- license (legal permission to dig for treasures), 358
- light, 89
- Lilly, William, 8, 19, 21, 48, 57
- linguistics, 6
- liquor, eternal (or heavenly), 264
- little Ned, 363
- Loagaeth, Liber*, 3, 14, 31-2, 263, 268, 269, 286, 287, 291-3, 296-7, 299, 303, 305, 325, 327, 329, 343, 350-1, 371, 382, 393, 395, 399, 402, 405, 406, 408, 411
- Locke, George, 48
- London, 48, 89, 244, 275, 359, 403, 405, 412
- love, 176, 234, 261, 265, 391, 418
- of God, 170
- lucid dreaming, 16
- Lucifer, 310
- Lumbardstreet, 48
- Lundrumguffa, 72, 74-5
- Luther, Martin, 5
- Lyne, Master, 373
- Macedonian, 344, 356, 358
- Madimi, 136
- Madimiel, 29, 139, 144-5
- Madoc, Owen, 9
- magi, 394
- magic, 6, 10, 20, 66, 346
- Magical Calendar* (Tycho Brahe), 25, 57
- magicians, 198
- Magus, 4
- Maherion, 73
- maid, 49
- Mamon, 82
- marble, 260

- Mares, 234
 maritime power, 7
 Marmara, 248, 401
 marriage, 89, 171, 174
 Mars, 134, 139, 165, 434
 Mary, Queen of Scots, 11, 39, 404
 mathematics, 1, 6, 13, 383
 McGregor Mathers, S. L., 26, 27, 34
 Me (name of an angel), 133, 273-8, 280-98
 mechanics, 6
 Medicina Dei, 9, 83, 273
 medicine, 1, 85, 90, 260-2, 274, 283-5, 311
 memory, 261, 355
 Menabon, 347
 Menasseh Ben Israel, 319
 Mensa faederis (see also Table, the Holy), 192, 385
 merchants, 168-9
 Mercury, 134-5, 139, 165
 mercy, 30
 metals, 195, 224
 Michael, 9, 20, 21, 24, 25, 29, 53, 55, 56, 63, 67, 68, 70, 75-9, 83, 85, 89-137, 139, 142, 146, 151-2, 154, 164-6, 168, 171, 174-6, 178-9, 183, 193, 214, 243-5, 413-14, 423
 mineral, 224
 Mines Royall, 413
 mnemonics, 16
 Moldavia, 39, 416
 Monday, 145, 230
 money, 408, 412
 monsters of the sea, 235
 Moody, Raymond A., 15
 Moon, 21, 126, 134, 139, 162, 165
 Moorefields, 49
 Morley, Lord, 180
 Mortlake, 2, 18, 89
 Mort, Mr., 125
 Moses, 58, 195, 204
 Mountegle, Lord, 125, 180
 Multin, 233
 Munsteris, Latin, Greek and Hebrew, 356
 music, 1, 6, 221, 223, 292, 303
 Myniver, Doctor, 180
 NA, 78
 Nalvage, 250
 names (sacred), 72
 Nariel, 76
 natural philosophy, 224
 Nature, 107, 158, 190, 192, 204, 205, 213, 223-4, 236, 261, 280, 281, 399, 401
 navigation, 1
 Necromancer, 12, 180
Necronomicon, 3, 37
 Neoplatonism, 5, 10, 30

- new age, 2, 8, 9, 32
 New World (America), 7-9, 273
 colonizing, 263
 New World(s), 2, 239, 262
 Newberry, 403
 nine days preparation, 394
 Noah's flood, 401
 nobility, 168-70
 Nogahel, 29, 139, 144-5
 Northwest Passage, 40, 245, 281
 Northwik hill, 257
 North, Mr., 244-5
 oath, 90
 Obelison, 65, 201, 234, 235
 obsidian mirror, 19
 occultism, 1
 Och, 83
 oil, 72, 198
 olive beads, 49
 optics, 6
 Owen, Mr., 18
 Oxford, 21
 pagans, 6, 9, 434
 painting, 1
 Palatinate, 7
 papal nuncio, 10, 33
 Paracelsus, 4
 Paradise, 354
 Paris, 5
 Pavorinus, Varinus, Greek
 Lexicon, 356
 Peace of God, 200
 Pele, 78-80, 152
 pelican, 120
 penitence, 226
 Pentacle, 145-6
 Pentecost, Goodman, 412
 Peterson, Joseph H., *Lesser Key
 of Solomon*, 27, 29, 437, 441
 Phanael, 126
 phantasms, 17
 Pharaoh, 195
 Philip II, King of Spain, 213,
 214, 405
 philosophers, 190, 205, 234
 phoenix, 120
 Pickering, Chris, 17
 Pico, Giovanni della Mirandola,
 10
 pies, 49
 pigeon, 117
 pillars of brass, 92
 pillory, 21
 plagues, 268
 planets, 16, 24, 139, 165
 Plato, 10
 Plotinus, 10
 Plow, the, 48
 Poland, 39, 244, 416
 POLIPOS, 83
 Pompilius, 12
 Pontano, Giovanni, *Urania sine
 de stellis*, 366
 Pontois, John, 15, 19

- Pope Gregory XIII, 282, 405
 Porphyry, 10
 Postel, Guillaume, 31
 powder, red (of transmutation),
 31, 359, 403
 powers (forty-nine), 297
 Prague, 33, 38
 prayer, 64, 129
 pride, 273, 417
 priests, 137
 high, 58
 Primus et quartus (name or title
 for angel Hagonel), 190
 Prince(s), 156, 168, 184, 188,
 190, 194, 207, 210-12, 215,
 222, 223, 230, 233, 236-7,
 240, 247, 249-50, 264, 378,
 382, 385, 397
 Prince of Darkness, 407
 Proclus, 10
 Profession, Angel of, 77
 prophecy, 326, 392, 394, 417
 Prospero, 11
 Psalms, 21, 60, 70, 81, 96, 97,
 109, 114, 286, 318, 364,
 373, 386, 410, 412, 453
Pseudepigrapha, 24
 quicksilver, 134
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 7, 263
 Raphael, 19, 20, 25, 29, 53, 55,
 56, 67, 72, 76, 83, 83, 85,
 124, 243-4, 258, 260, 277,
 284, 297, 310-12, 357, 413-
 14, 423
 Reeds, Jim, 14
 Regardie, Israel, 3
 Reuchlin, Johann, 11, 13, 22, 38,
 78
 Artem Cabalisticam, 79
 de Verbo Mirifico, 78
 Richard of St. Victor, 11
 Ring of Solomon, 14, 24, 78, 79,
 85, 152, 179, 214
 Rivius, J., 12
 Roberts, Julian and Andrew
 Watson, 3
 Rocle (name of angel), 138, 192,
 247
 rod, 193, 245, 246, 269, 288,
 292-3
 'el', 14, 266
 Roman, 19, 253
 Rome, 8-10
 Rosicrucian, 5, 33
 Rudolph, 10, 21, 33, 39
 S (name of an angel), 136
 Sabathiel, see Zabathiel
 Sabbath, 64
 saints, 90, 170
 Salamian, 81-4
 Salomon, 78
 Samael, 423
 Samuel, 58
 Sanford, Mr., 344, 358

- Satan, 128, 374, 390, 433
 Saturday, 243
 Saturn, 134, 139, 165, 224
 Saul (Biblical figure), 58
 Saul, Barnabas, 11, 17, 18, 20,
 60-2, 70, 72, 85, 210, 359
 Scalinger, 11
 scarf, 152
Schemhamphoras, 22, 422
 scholars, 137
 sciences, 213
 Scientism, 2
 scotchons, 156
 Scotland, 353
 Scotus, 234
 Scot, Reginald, 16, 21, 445
 scroll (treasure map), 257
 scroll, book, and powder, 31
 scrying, 9, 11, 12, 15-19, 25, 26,
 33, 60, and passim
 seal(s), 24, 85, 94, 107, 404
 seas, 195, 235
 secrecy, 64, 90
 Semiel, 29, 139, 144-5
 Semiael, 108
 Semiel, 91, 92
 Semyeil, 109
 seven, 24
Seven Sobs of a Sorrowful Soul
 for Sin (William Hunnis), 386
 sex, 409
 shadow, 21
 Shakespeare, 5, 11
 Sherman, William H., xiii, 3, 4,
 7, 9, 33, 224
 Shew-stone, 58
 Shippen, William, 30
 Ships, 235
 Shumaker, Wayne, 3
 Sidney, Sir Philip, 403
 Defence of Poesia, 366
 Sieradz, Poland, 403, 416
 sigil, 22
 silk, 71, 396
 silver, 134-5
 skin, 380
 skulls, 62
 Skullthorp, Mr., 18
 Sled, Charles, 319
 smokes, 200
 solar eclipse, 8
 solgars, 333
 Solomon, King of Israel, 24, 59,
 78, 84, 234, 437
 Seal of, 438
 Testament of, 24-4
 Sons of Light, see Filii Lucis
 Sons of Men (aka children of
 men), 276, 280, 296, 326-7,
 389-90
 Sons of Sempiternitie, 192
 soul, 90
 language of, 17
 Soyga (*Aldaraia sive Soyga*), 12,

- 14, 15, 24, 31, 40, 43, 67,
 69, 113, 353, 354, 379
 Spanish Armada, 30, 39, 404-5
 sparrow, 175
 spirit of God, 355
 spirit of Understanding, 327
 Spirits of Destruction, 208
 Spirits of perdition, 240
 Sponheim, Germany, 6
 squares, magic, 10, 12, 13
 Staff, 184
 Stanley, William, 125
 stars, 126, 162, 177
 stenography, 30
 Stimcul, 133, 135
 stolen goods, 11
 stone, 253
 stone (brought by angels), 19,
 253, 395
 Story, Samuell, 47
 St. Bride's Church, London, 372
 sulfur, see brimstone
 Sun, 126, 134, 139, 162, 165,
 307, 417
 Sunday, 82, 230
 Superaltare, 174
 supernova, 8
 superstition, 15
 Surrey, 48
 swan, 120
Sworne Book of Honorius, see
Liber Juratus
 Synfulla, 356
 Syngolla, 356
 Tabernacle, 134, 258, 411
 Table, 75, 76, 79, 89, 107, 374,
 397, 403
 infernal, 252
 of Covenant, 245
 the Holy (aka Table of
 Practise, and also Mensa
 Faederis) , 14, 23-4, 43,
 70-2, 72, 73, 165, 378,
 179, 214, 285, 324, 375,
 376-7, 395, 398, 402, 442
 feet, 395-6, 404
 scrying, 16
 tables, 156, 382
 Tablet, 94
 Tabula collecta, 171, 172, 200,
 207, 208, 237, 241, 249, 397
 Tabulae Creationis, 230
 Talbot, Edward (aka Edward
 Kelley), 18, 19, 66, and pas-
 sim
 Tart, Charles, 2
 tassels, 71
 temperance, 368
 Temple, 265, 389
 temptation, 30, 90, 137, 390,
 392, 407
 tennis, 178
Testament of Solomon, 24-5
 Thaoth, 110, 114-15

- Theurgia Goetia*, 23
 thorny path, 415
 Thrones, 126, 414
 Thursday, 239
 time, 266, 273
 of governing, 235
 tin, 134-5, 400
 Tobias, 25, 58, 73, 85
Tobit, Book of, 57, 72, 73, 85
 tongue, 408
 Tower of Babel, 354
 Tower of London, 48
 Townson, Mr., 245
 Trade, 168
 traditions, 355
 traitors, 275
 transmutation, 22
 Transposition of letters, 373, 378
 treasure, 11, 40, 62, 197, 240,
 264, 279, 347, 357-9, 402
 in the seas, 236
 map (scroll), 257, 265, 279,
 345, 359, 403
 Treasurer, Lord, see Burghley
Treatise on Angel Magic, 165
 Tree, 259
 triangular stone, 226
 Trinity, 91, 122, 126, 146, 258-
 9, 310
 Trithemius, Johannes, 4, 6, 7, 16,
 20, 25, 38, 57, 445
 De Septem Secundeis, 8
 trumpet, 106-9, 125-6
 Tuesday, 235
 Turner, Robert, 3
 UFO, 21, 39
 Uriel, 9, 20, 25, 53, 56, 67, 69,
 73, 74, 76-8, 84, 91, 92, 96,
 104, 107, 108, 113, 114,
 116, 120, 122-7, 132, 139,
 141, 146, 165, 170, 171,
 174-5, 183, 184, 193, 243,
 326-9, 352, 357, 368-9, 381,
 389, 392, 393, 396-404, 406,
 407, 410, 413-14
 Vallee, Jacque, 39
 Vasedg, 160
 vegetable, 224
 Venus, 57, 65, 134, 139, 165,
 434
 Vera, 189
 Virgil, *Eclogues* III, 366
 Wale, Thomas, 48-9
 Walmesley, 18
 water(s), 168-70, 195, 233,
 235-6
 king of the, 231
 wax, 22, 71, 165, 179, 445
 weapons (spiritual), 191,
 285
 Wednesday, 243
 Weever, 180
 Welsh, 9
 Westminster, 363

Whitby, Christopher, 4, 19, 20,
30, 36-7
Wilby, Christian, 34
Wilson, Colin, 3, 37, 39
winds, 25, 76
witch, 162
Witchcrafts, 353
witches, 191, 241, 417
Woodall, John, 48
Woodall, Thomas, 48

Worcester, 21-2
wrath of God, 208, 391
Yates, Francis A., 2-3, 33
Yong, Mr., 245
Zabathiel, 139, 144-5
Zadkiel, 29, 124
Zaphiel, 29
Zaphkiel, 124
Zedekiel, 29, 139, 145
Zoroastrianism, 394

JOHN DEE'S FIVE BOOKS OF MYSTERY

ORIGINAL SOURCEBOOK OF ENOCHIAN MAGIC

JOSEPH H. PETERSON, EDITOR

This first published edition of *John Dee's Five Books of Mystery* is by far the most accessible and complete book on John Dee's magic to date, and even rivals facsimile editions of Dee's *A True & Faithful Relation of What Passed Between Dr. John Dee and Some Spirits* in importance and certainly ease of use.

Discovered in a hidden compartment of an old chest long after his death, the secret writings of John Dee—which he swore to angels never to reveal to anyone not sanctioned by them—record in minute detail his research into the occult. Dee concealed his treatises on the nature of humankind's contact with angelic realms and languages throughout his life. This book, originally in five separate parts, details his system for communicating with the angels—where *A True & Faithful Relation* details his advanced studies in Enochian magic, the *Five Books of Mystery* predate this final evolution and present his original system of magic, which led to such angelic conversation.

Editor Joseph H. Peterson has updated the text in a more modern and readable English, yet still remains faithful to Dee's original manuscript, currently in the British Museum Library. He has translated Latin terms and added copious footnotes, putting the instructions and references into context for the contemporary reader.

In his brief biography of John Dee, Joseph H. Peterson calls him a “true Renaissance man,” detailing his work in astronomy, mathematics, navigation, the arts, astrology, and the occult sciences. He was most famously favored as scientific advisor and astrologer to Queen Elizabeth of England and was even thought to be the model for Shakespeare's Prospero.

The *Five Books of Mystery*, revealed and transcribed between March 1582 and May 1583, at the height of his mystical career, bring to light mysteries and truths that scholars and adepts have been struggling to understand and use ever since. While Dee's influence was certainly felt in his lifetime, his popularity has continued to grow. His magical system was used and adapted—some would say corrupted—by the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn, and subsequently by Aleister Crowley.

Joseph H. Peterson has translated many esoteric and religious sourceworks. He has amassed a large collection of copies of rare and occult tracts for comparative research from the British Museum and other institutions, which he shares at his award-winning website, www.avesta.org. He contributed to *Scriptures of the World's Religions* and is the editor of *The Lesser Key of Solomon*. Peterson is an active member of the American Academy of Religion and the Society for Biblical Literature. He lives in Kasson, Minnesota.

ISBN 1-57863-178-5



WEISERBOOKS

US \$55.00

